

Contents

0.1 Alphabetical Index	2
1.1 Maintenance	40
1.2 USA Warranty	69
2.1 Safety First	108
3.1 Controls and Operating Equipment	169
3.4 Sound System	311
3.4 Tips and Advice	341
3.5 Technical Data	453
Tether Strap Installation	466



Volkswagen

Owner's Manual



0.1 2004 Jetta Wagon
Alphabetical Index

Dear User

Enclosed you'll find an extensive and comprehensive alphabetical index of all manuals supplied with your vehicle. This index will help you to find information quickly by using key words. The index also contains references to Booklet 4.1 (OWNER INFORMATION) which is provided with vehicles sold in the U.S.A. but not with those sold in Canada.

The title of each booklet provided by Volkswagen is highlighted with capital letters, for example WARRANTY.

A

ABS Anti-Lock Brakes)	3.4	8
Accessories – What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle?	3.4	60
Adding		
– Brake fluid	3.4	52
– Engine coolant	3.4	50
– Engine oil	3.4	45
– Windshield washer fluid	3.4	59
Additional accessories	3.4	60
Additional emission control maintenance	1.1	5
Adjustable steering column	3.1	73
Adjustable steering wheel	3.1	73
Adjusting		
– Climate controls	3.1	92
– Head restraints	2.1	49
– Head restraints	3.1	62
– Mirrors	3.1	58
– Seats	2.1	50
– Seats	3.1	64
– Washer jets	3.4	59
Adjustments		
– Climate controls	3.1	99
– Head restraints	3.1	62
– Mirrors	3.1	58
Address change (notice of)	1.2	
Airbag indicator light	3.1	17
Airbag system – Seating position	3.1	64
Airbag system	2.1	17
– Care	2.1	29
– Child safety	2.1	22
– Disposal	2.1	29
– Front air bags	2.1	17, 23
– Head airbags	2.1	28
– How it works	2.1	24
– How many airbags does my vehicle have?	2.1	17
– How the airbag system works?	2.1	24
– Importance of proper seating position	2.1	19
– Indicator light	3.1	17
– Seating position	2.1	19
– Service	2.1	29
– Side air bags	2.1	25

– Side Curtain Protection™	2.1	28
----------------------------------	-----	----

Key words	Booklet	Page
- System components	2.1	18
- Use of child restraints	2.1	22
- What happens when the airbag deploy?	2.1	19
- When must the system be inspected?	2.1	18
- Where are my airbags located?	2.1	17
Air circulation,	3.1	79
- luggage compartment	3.1	79
Air conditioning	3.1	91
- Air recirculation	3.1	92
- Defogging windshield and side windows	3.1	94
- Defrosting windshield and side windows	3.1	94
- ECON cooling	3.1	96
- Fan switch	3.1	92
- Heating interior quickly	3.1	95
- Keeping interior comfortable	3.1	95
- Maintenance	3.1	97
- Maximum cooling	3.1	96
- Normal cooling	3.1	95
- Temperature control	3.1	92
- Ventilation (fresh air)	3.1	96
- Vents	3.1	94, 102
Air outlets	3.1	94, 102
Air recirculation		
- Air conditioning	3.1	92
- Climatronic	3.1	101
Air vents		
- Air conditioning	3.1	94
- Climatronic	3.1	102
Anchors for a child restraint system	2.1	39
Alarm system	3.1	34
Alarms		
- Anti-theft system	3.1	34
- Operation	3.1	34
- Setting	3.1	31
Alternator	3.1	21
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	3.1	19
Anti-lock brake system	3.4	8
Anti-Lock Brakes (ABS)	3.4	8
- How they work?	3.4	8
- Warning light	3.1	19

– What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal?	3.4	8
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)	3.4	11
– Indicator light	3.1	18
– When would I switch it off?	3.1	48
Anti-slip regulation (ASR)		
– Switch	3.1	48
– Warning light	3.1	18
Anti-slip regulation	3.4	11
Anti-theft alarm system	3.1	34
Anti-theft wheel bolts	3.4	86
Armrest	3.1	75
– Storage bin	3.1	75
Ashtrays	3.1	89
Assist handles	3.1	90
ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation)	3.4	11
Auto Safety Hotline	2.1	21
Automatic car wash	3.4	26
– Precautions when taking your vehicle to the car wash	3.4	26
– Should I remove the roof antenna?	3.4	26
Automatic locking	3.1	37
Automatic seek	3.3	9
Automatic track scanning	3.3	19
Automatic transmission (4-speed)	3.1	105
– Back-up lights	3.1	107
– Emergency start	3.1	110
– Ignition key safety interlock	3.1	105
– Kick-Down	3.1	108
– Towing	3.1	110, 116
Automatic transmission (5-speed)	3.1	111
– Back-up lights	3.1	114
– Ignition key safety interlock	3.1	111
– Kick-Down	3.1	115
– Tiptronic	3.1	112
– Towing	3.1	110, 116
Automatic tuning	3.3	10
Average driving speed indicator	3.1	11
Average fuel consumption indicator	3.1	11

B

Back-up lights		
– Automatic transmission (4-speed)	3.1	107
– Automatic transmission (5-speed)	3.1	114
– Manual transmission	3.1	117
Backrest folding	3.1	77
Backward adjustment of seats	3.1	66
Battery	3.4	53
– Battery acid level – checking	3.4	55
– Charging	3.4	56
– Connecting charger cables	3.4	57
– Disconnecting – What you must do after you reconnect the battery!	3.4	58
– How often should I replace my auxiliary battery?	3.4	56
– How often should I replace my engine battery?	3.4	56
– Important information to know before you disconnect the battery!	3.4	58
– Location	3.4	55
– Precautions	3.4	53
– Replacing	3.4	58
– Slow charging	3.4	57
– Winter operation	3.4	54
BBB Auto Line	1.2	25
BBB AUTO LINE Mediation / Arbitration Program	4.1	5
Belt tensioner	2.1	13
– What happens when the belt tensioner is activated?	2.1	13
Beverage holder	3.1	86
Body cavity sealing	3.4	30
Booster seat	2.1	33
Brake booster	3.4	8
Brake fluid	3.4	51
– How often should the brake fluid be changed?	3.4	52
– What is the correct brake fluid level?	3.4	51
– What kind of brake fluid should I use?	3.4	52
– What should I do if the brake warning light comes on?	3.4	52
Brake fluid reservoir	3.4	51
Brake system	3.4	7
Brakes	3.4	7
– How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes?	3.4	7
– Overheating	3.4	8
– Pads	3.1	24

Key words**Booklet Page**

– Warning light	3.1	20
– Wear indicator	3.1	24
– What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal?	3.4	8
Braking	3.4	7
Break-in period	3.4	13
Break-in period, – What is the right way to break-in my vehicle?	3.4	13
Break-warning light	3.1	20
Bulb replacing	3.4	88
Buzzer	3.1	21

C

Canadian emissions warranties	1.2	13
Capacities	3.5	4,6,8
Capacities		
– Fuel tank	3.4	2
– Windshield washer fluid container	3.4	59
Care of		
– Exterior	3.4	26
– Interior	3.4	31
– Tie-down hooks	3.1	80
Catalytic converter	3.4	18, 19
Cassette mode	3.3	17
CB radios	3.4	61
CD changer	3.3	4, 23
Center safety belt on the rear seat	2.1	14
Central locking system	3.1	36
– Rear lid	3.1	39
Changing a tire	3.4	80
Changing a wheel	3.4	80
Changing engine oil	3.4	46
Checking		
– Battery acid level	3.4	55
– Brake fluid level	3.4	51
– Engine coolant level	3.4	49
– Engine oil level	3.4	45
– Fuses	3.4	87
– Tires / Wheels	3.4	69
– Windshield washer fluid level	3.4	59

Checking engine oil level	3.4	45
Child restraint (CR) Anchors	2.1	39
Child restraint anchorages	2.1	43
Child restraints		
– Important information about child restraints and the front seat	2.1	22
– Securing on the rear seat using the center safety belt	2.1	38
Child safety	2.1	30
Child safety lock for rear doors	3.1	38
Child seats	2.1	30
– Booster seats	2.1	33
– Convertible seats	2.1	32
– Infant seats	2.1	31
– Installing a rear facing child seat	2.1	22
– Older children	2.1	35
Chime	3.1	28,47,120
– Door	3.1	28
– Ignition	3.1	120
– Oil	3.1	23
– Safety belt	3.1	21
Chrome parts – Taking care of chrome parts	3.4	31
Cigarette lighter	3.1	88
Cleaning	3.4	25
– Alloy wheels	3.4	30
– Automatic car wash	3.4	26
– Body cavity sealing	3.4	30
– Bright metal trim	3.4	28
– Chassis	3.4	31
– Dull finishes and plastics	3.4	29
– Engine compartment	3.4	34
– Exterior	3.4	26
– Glass	3.4	31
– Inside of vehicle	3.4	31
– Interior	3.4	31
– Interior chrome parts	3.4	31
– Interior fabric	3.4	31
– Interior leather	3.4	32
– Interior plastic and vinyl	3.4	32
– Interior plastic parts	3.4	32
– Leather upholstery	3.4	32

Key words**Booklet Page**

- Light alloy wheels	3.4	30
- Outside of vehicle	3.4	26
- Polishing	3.4	27
- Safety belts	3.4	33
- Steel wheels	3.4	30
- Touch-up paint	3.4	28
- Trim strips	3.4	28
- Using a power washer	3.4	27
- Washing your vehicle	3.4	25, 26
- Waxing your vehicle	3.4	28
- Weatherstrips	3.4	29
- Windows	3.4	29
Cleaning and protection	3.4	25
Climate controls	3.1	91
Climatronic	3.1	98
- Air recirculation	3.1	101
- Air vents	3.1	98, 102
- AUTO operation	3.1	100
- Automatic control	3.1	98
- ECON cooling	3.1	103
- Maintenance	3.1	104
- Manual control	3.1	98
- Manual operation	3.1	100
- Operating controls	3.1	99
- Switching between Fahrenheit and Centgrade	3.1	100
Clock	3.1	10
- Setting	3.1	10
Coat hooks	3.1	90
Comfort clips	2.1	8
Compartment floor	3.1	81
Compliance sticker	3.5	3
Controls		
- Climate	3.1	91
- Interior light	3.1	56
- Locks	3.1	35
- Remote	3.1	30
- Unlocking window	3.1	41
CONTROLS AND EQUIPMENT	3.1	
Convertible child seats	2.1	32
Convertible locking feature	2.1	9
Convertible locking retractor	2.1	36
- Activating	2.1	37

- Deactivating	2.1	37
Convertible seats	2.1	32
Coolant losses	3.4	49
Coolant, - See engine coolant	3.4	48
Cooling system	3.4	48
- Expansion tank	3.4	49
Coolant temperature	3.1	9
Coolant temperature light	3.1	21
CR (Child Restraint)	2.1	39
Cruise control	3.1	125
- Activating	3.1	125
- Changing speed	3.1	126
- Turning off, - Completely	3.1	127
- Turning off, - Temporarily	3.1	126
Cup-holder	3.1	87
Curb weight	3.5	2
Customer relations		
- Canada	1.2	21
- United States of America	1.2	23

D

Dashboard	3.1	3
Data	3.5	3
Data Link Connector (DLC)	3.1	25
Day-night mirror	3.1	58
Daytime running light	3.1	47
Dealer Service	1.1	3
Defogger for rear window	3.1	49
Defogging - Windshield and side windows	3.1	94
- Rear window switch	3.1	49
- Side windows	3.1	94
- Windshield	3.1	94
- Windshield and side windows	3.1	94
Defrosting - Windshield and side windows	3.1	94, 101
- Rear window	3.1	49
- Side windows	3.1	94
- Windshield	3.1	94
- Windshield and side windows	3.1	94, 101
Diesel engine		
- Empty fuel tank	3.1	123
- Starting	3.1	122

Diesel fuel	3.4	5
– Winter operation	3.4	6
Differential lock	3.4	12
Difficult operating conditions	3.4	15
Digital clock	3.1	10
Dimensions	3.5	2
Dimmer switch, dashboard lights	3.1	47
Displays	3.1	11
Distance driven indicator	3.1	14
DLC	3.1	25
Do-it-yourself service	3.4	62
Doors	3.1	35
– Automatic locking	3.1	37
– Child safety lock, rear doors	3.1	38
– Closing	3.1	35
– Fuel filler flap release	3.1	50
– Locking with key	3.1	35
– Locking with remote	3.1	31
– Opening	3.1	35
– Power locking switch	3.1	36
– Power locks	3.1	35
– Rear lid release	3.1	50
– Unlocking with key	3.1	35
– Unlocking with remote	3.1	31
Dirty safety belts	2.1	9
Driver's position	3.1	64
– Adjustments	3.1	66
Driver's seat	3.1	66
– Adjusting	2.1	20
– Memory	2.1	58
– Proper position	2.1	51
Driver's seat	3.1	66
Seat adjustments, manual	3.1	66
– Forward and backward	3.1	66
– Height	3.1	66
– Lumbar support	3.1	66
– Seatback	3.1	66
Seat adjustments, electrical	3.1	68
– Backrest	3.1	67
– Forward and backward	3.1	67
– Height	3.1	67
– Raise and lower	3.1	67
– Memory	3.1	68

Driving economically	3.4	16
Driving in foreign countries	3.4	97
Driving outside of the U.S.A. or Canada, – Precautions ..	3.4	97
Driving under difficult conditions	3.4	15
Duplicate key	3.1	29

E

ECON cooling	3.1	96
EDL (Electronic Differential Lock)	3.4	12
Electrical / Electronic		
– Heated driver's seat	3.1	48
– Heated passenger seat	3.1	49
– Power locks	3.1	35
– Seat adjustment	3.1	67
Electrical socket	3.1	88
Electrical / Electronic, seat adjustment	3.1	67
Electrically heated driver's seat	3.1	48
Electrically heated passenger seat	3.1	49
Electronic differential lock (EDL)	3.1	19
Electronic immobilizer	3.1	19, 120
Electronic power control (EPC)	3.1	18
Electronic Stability Program	3.1	18, 48
– Indicator light	3.1	18
– Switch	3.1	48
Ejecting a cassette	3.3	13
Electrical outlet	3.1	88
Electrically heated mirrors	3.1	58
Electrically heated seats	3.1	48, 49
Electromagnetic interference compliance	3.5	3
Emergency		
– Closing sunroof	3.1	46
– Flasher	3.1	49
– Off (seat memory)	3.1	71
– Starting	3.4	89
– Towing	3.4	92
Emergency brake	3.1	118
Emergency flasher switch	3.1	49
Emergency triangle	3.4	62
Emission control maintenance	1.1	4
Emission control system	3.4	18
– Malfunction indicator	3.1	25
– Malfunction indicator light	3.1	25

Emission control system	3.4	18
Engine		
– Compartment	3.1	124
– Compartment	3.4	40
– Coolant level	3.1	21
– Coolant temperature light	3.1	21
– Coolant temperature gauge	3.1	9
– Cooling	3.4	48
– Data	3.5	3
– Hood	3.4	39
– Oil	3.4	42
– Starting	3.1	121
– Stopping	3.1	123
Engine battery	3.4	53
Engine compartment, – Precautions you should take when working inside the engine compartment	3.4	40
Engine compartment, – Precautions you should take before cleaning the engine compartment	3.4	34
Engine coolant		
– Additives	3.4	48
– Can I add plain water to the engine coolant?	3.4	48
– Coolant loses	3.4	49
Engine hood, – How do I unlock the engine hood?	3.4	39
Engine Oil		
– Adding	3.4	45
– Additives	3.4	46
– Changing	3.4	46
– Checking	3.4	45
– Checking oil level	3.4	45
– Grades	3.4	42
– How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming?	3.4	43
– What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? ..	3.4	42
– When should I check the engine oil level?	3.4	44
– Where is the oil dipstick?	3.2	45
Engine oil level, – When should I check the engine oil level?	3.4	44
 Environment		
– Battery	3.4	53
– Brake fluid	3.4	52
– Cleaning and protection	3.4	25
– Cleaning the engine compartment	3.4	34

- Coolant	3.4	50
- Correct tire pressure	3.4	70
- Disposing of old engine oil and other engine fluids	3.4	38
- Driving at high speeds	3.4	16
- Driving to minimize pollution and noise	3.4	16
- Engine leaks	3.4	41
- Engine oil	3.4	47
- Fuel	3.4	3
- How can I drive my vehicle and not pollute the environment?	3.4	16
- Letting the vehicle stand and warm up	3.4	16
- Maintenance	3.4	36
- Starting procedures	3.1	121
- Tire pressure	3.4	70
- Traffic jams	3.4	17
- Unleaded fuel	3.4	4
- Upshifting early	3.4	16
- Washing	3.4	26
- Washing your vehicle	3.4	26
- What should I do with an old battery?	3.4	58
- What should I do with drained coolant?	3.4	50
- What should I do with used brake fluid?	3.4	52
- What should I do with old engine oil?	3.4	47
ESP (Electronic Stability Program)	3.4	10
Exhaust system	3.4	18
Expansion tank	3.4	48
Extenders for the safety belt	2.1	15

F

Fahrenheit to centigrade, setting	3.1	100
Fan		
- Air conditioning	3.1	92
- Climatronic	3.1	98
- switch, air conditioning	3.1	91
Fastening and unfastening		
- Booster seats	2.1	33
- Center safety belt on the rear seat	2.1	9, 14
- Child seat on the center position on rear seat	2.1	38
- Child seats on the outer rear seat position	2.1	36
- Convertible child seats	2.1	32
- Infant seats	2.1	31
- LATCH system	2.1	39
- Safety belt extender	2.1	16
- Safety belts	2.1	10, 13

Fastening eyes	3.1	80
Fastening the safety belt	2.1	10
Fastening your safety belt	2.1	10
Federal emissions warranties	1.2	13
Filler cap	3.4	3
Filling		
– Brake fluid	3.4	52
– Engine coolant	3.4	49, 50
– Engine oil	3.4	45
– Portable fuel container	3.4	3
– Windshield washer fluid	3.4	59
First aid kit	3.4	62
– Checking the expiration date	3.4	62
First oil change	1.1	6
First oil filter change	1.1	6
Flasher, emergency	3.1	49
Floor jack	3.4	94
Floor mats	3.1	76
Fluid		
– Brake	3.4	51
– Coolant	3.4	48
– Windshield washer tank	3.4	59
– Capacities	3.5	4, 6, 8
Fog lights	3.1	47
Folding luggage compartment cover	3.1	83
Folding outside mirrors	3.1	60
Folding the backrest forward	3.1	77
Folding the seatbench back into place	3.1	78
Folding the seatbench forward	3.1	77
Forward adjustment of seats	3.1	66
Forward facing child seat, – Precautions	2.1	22
Fresh air	3.1	96
Front air bags	2.1	23
Front armrest	3.1	75
Front axle load	3.3	5, 7, 9
Front door panel light	3.1	57
Front doors	3.1	35
Front fog lights	3.1	47
Front interior light	3.1	56
Front map lights	3.1	56
Front passenger position	3.1	65

Front passenger's seat, – Proper position	2.1	50
Front passenger's seat	3.1	65
Front seats	2.1	50
– How to adjust?	2.1	50
Front seats	3.1	64
Fuel		
– Diesel	3.4	5
– Gasoline	3.4	4
– Lock fuel tank	3.4	2
– Tank capacity	3.4	2
Fuel consumption, – How can I save fuel?	3.4	16
Fuel Consumption indicator	3.1	11
– Momentary consumption, average consumption	3.1	13
Fuel container	3.4	3
Fuel containers, – How to fill and transport properly	3.4	3
Fuel economy	3.4	16
Fuel filler flap release	3.1	50
Fuel gauge	3.1	10
Fuel pump nozzle, – What does it mean when the fuel pump nozzle switches off by itself?	3.4	3
Fuel supply	3.4	4
– What does "engine knock" mean?	3.4	4
– What kind of fuel does my vehicle take?	3.4	4
Fuel tank	3.4	2
– Capacity	3.5	4,6,8
– Filling	3.4	2
– How many gallons (litres) does my fuel tank hold? ...	3.4	2
– Refuelling	3.4	2
Fuses	3.4	87
– Where can I find the fuse listing?	3.4	87

G

Gas cans, – Filling correctly	3.4	3
Gasoline		
– Additives	3.4	5
– Blends	3.4	4
– Containing alcohol	3.4	4
– Does my vehicle take regular or premium?	3.4	4
– Premium	3.4	4
– Regular	3.4	4
– Unleaded	3.4	4

- What if I purchase poor quality fuel?	3.4	6
- What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my vehicle?	3.4	4
- Winter tips	3.4	5
Gasoline engine, - starting	3.1	121
Gauge		
- Coolant temperature	3.1	9
- Engine coolant temperature	3.1	9
- Fuel	3.1	10
- Odometer	3.1	10
- Speedometer	3.1	10
- Tachometer	3.1	8
Gearshift lever	3.1	117
General illustration	3.1	3
Generator	3.1	21
Glove box light	3.1	57
Glove compartment	3.1	86
- Owner's literature storage	3.1	86
Glow plugs indicator light	3.1	17
Gross axle weight rating	3.5	2
Gross vehicle weight rating	3.5	2
Guaranteed mobility		
- Canada	1.2	12
- United States of America	1.2	12
Guide fixtures	2.1	46

H

Handbrake	3.1	118
Head airbags	2.1	28
Head restraints	2.1	49
- Proper position for maximum protection	2.1	49
- Removing and Installing	2.1	49
Head restraints	3.1	62
- Height adjustment	3.1	62
- Installing	3.1	62
- Removing	3.1	62
Headlight	3.1	51
- Dimmer switch	3.1	51
- Flasher	3.1	51
Headlight dimmer switch lever	3.1	51

Headlight flasher	3.1	51
Heated outside mirrors	3.1	59
Heated		
– Driver's seat	3.1	48
– Passenger's seat	3.1	49
– Outside mirrors	3.1	59
– Rear window	3.1	49
Heated seats	3.1	48, 49
Heating	3.1	91
Heating and ventilation		
– Air recirculation	3.1	92
– Fan switch	3.1	92, 98
Heating interior quickly	3.1	95
Heating system	3.1	92, 98
Heavy clothing and safety belts	2.1	8
Height adjusters	2.1	11
Height adjustment of seats	3.1	66
High beam	3.1	18
High beam lever	3.1	51
High voltage label	3.5	3
Holder		
– Ashtray	3.1	89
– Beverage holder	3.1	87
– Sunclass	3.1	90
Hood release	3.4	39
Hooks	3.1	80
Hooks, tie-down	3.1	80
How can I adjust the height of my safety belt?	2.1	11
How can I tell when the safety belt is securely locked? ..	2.1	10
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? ..	3.4	43
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes?	3.4	7
How often should I check my tire pressures?	3.4	70
How many airbags does my vehicle have?	2.1	17
How to attach the tether strap on the Wagon model? ...	2.1	42
How to fasten the rear center safety belt?	2.1	9
How to use this Manual	2.1	
How to use the air conditioning more economically	3.1	96
How to use this Manual	3.1	
How to use this Manual	3.4	
How to wear safety belts properly?	2.1	8
Horn	3.1	3
Hydroplaning	3.4	15

Identification label	3.5	3
Identification number	3.5	3
Ignition	3.1	119
– Key safety interlock	3.1	105, 111
– Switch	3.1	119
Ignition key safety interlock	3.1	105, 111, 119
Immobilizer	3.1	19, 120
Important information about this Manual	2.1	
Important information about this Manual	3.1	
Increasing size of luggage compartment	3.1	79
Indicator, multifunction (MFA)	3.1	11
Indicator light		
– Airbag system	2.1	18
– What should I do if the airbag indicator light comes on and stays on?	2.1	18
Indicator lights	3.1	17
– Airbag system	3.1	17
– Anti-Lock brake system	3.1	19
– Brake	3.1	20
– Door / Rear lid open	3.1	24
– Electronic immobilizer	3.1	19, 120
– Electronic power control	3.1	18
– Electronic Stability Program	3.1	18
– Engine coolant temperature	3.1	21
– Engine coolant temperature level	3.1	21
– Engine oil pressure	3.1	23
– Front brake pads worn	3.1	24
– Fuel level too low	3.1	24
– Generator	3.1	21
– Glow plug	3.1	17
– High beam	3.1	18
– Malfunction indicator lamp	3.1	25
– Safety belts	3.1	21
– Trunk / rear lid open	3.1	24
– Turn signals	3.1	18
– Windshield washer	3.1	24
– Windshield washer fluid level too low	3.1	24
Infant seats	2.1	31
Inside day–night mirror	3.1	58
Installing a radio	3.4	61
– Booster seats	2.1	33

– Child seat on the outer rear seat position	2.1	36
– Child seat to LATCH system	2.1	48
– Child seat to lower anchorage point	2.1	43
– Child seat using the LATCH system	2.1	39
– Child restraint	2.1	39
– Convertible child seats	2.1	48
– Infant seats	2.1	31
– Roof rack	3.1	84
– Tether strap to anchorage point on the Wagon model	2.1	42
– Wiper blades	3.1	55, 56
Instrument cluster	3.1	8
– Engine coolant temperature gauge	3.1	21
– Instrument illumination	3.1	47
Instrument illumination	3.1	47
Instrument panel	3.1	3
– Cleaning	3.4	32
– Digital clock	3.1	10
– Display, multifunction indicator	3.1	11
– Engine coolant temperature gauge	3.1	9
– Fuel gauge	3.1	10
– Odometer	3.1	10
– Speedometer	3.1	10
Interior light control	3.1	57
Interior lights	3.1	56
– Front map light	3.1	56
– Light control	3.1	57
Intro scan (SCAN)	3.3	15

J

Jack	3.4	83
– Where do I place the jack under my vehicle?	3.4	83
Jack and tool kit	3.4	63
– Components	3.4	64
– Location and stowing	3.4	63
Jack and tools	3.4	63
Jack support positions	3.4	83
Jumper cables	3.4	89
– Starting engine	3.4	91
– What is the correct way to connect jumper cables?	3.4	91

K

Keeping interior comfortable	3.1	95
Key	3.1	28
– Coding	3.1	32
– Duplicate	3.1	29
– Ignition, safety interlock	3.1	105, 111
– Master with remote	3.1	28
– Remote release	3.1	28
– Replacement	3.1	29
– Tag	3.1	29
– Valet	3.1	29
Key for remote release	3.1	28
Kick-down	3.1	108, 115

L

Lane changer	3.1	51
Lap-shoulder belt	2.1	9
LATCH (Lower Anchor and Tether for Children)	2.1	39
LATCH system	2.1	48
– Attaching a child restraint to the LATCH system	2.1	48
– Seat markings	2.1	45
Leather, – How to clean	3.4	32
LED	3.3	6
Lifting		
– Floor jack	3.4	94
– Jack	3.4	80
– Workshop hoist	3.4	94
Lifting point		
– Front	3.4	95
– Rear	3.4	95
Lifting vehicle	3.4	94
Light bulbs	3.4	88
– Precautions when replacing	3.4	88
– Replacing	3.4	88
Light switch	3.1	47
Lighter	3.1	47
Lights	3.1	47
– Backup	3.1	107, 114
– Brake warning	3.1	20
– Daytime running	3.1	47
– Fog, front	3.1	47

- Front door panel	3.1	57
- Glove compartment / box	3.1	57
- Hazard	3.1	49
- Indicator	3.1	6, 16
- Interior control	3.1	56
- Interior front	3.1	56
- Luggage compartment	3.1	57
- Map	3.1	56
- Storage compartment	3.1	57
- Trunk / Rear lid	3.1	57
- Warning	3.1	16
Limited new vehicle warranty	1.2	2
Limited powertrain warranty	1.2	6
Limited warranty against corrosion perforation	1.2	9
Locking retractor	2.1	36
Loading a roof rack	3.1	86
Lock positions of trunk lock cylinder	3.1	39
Locking retractor	2.1	36
Locking switch, - Power	3.1	36
Locking the vehicle	3.1	35
Locks		
- Doors	3.1	35
- Fuel tank	3.4	2
- Rear lid	3.1	39
- Trunk / Rear lid	3.1	39
- Glove box / compartment	3.1	86
Low beam	3.1	51
Lower Anchor and Tether for Children (LATCH)	2.1	39
Lower anchorages	2.1	43
- Guide fixtures	2.1	46
- Seat markings	2.1	45
Lubricants	3.4	42
Luggage compartment	3.1	79
- Air circulation	3.1	79
- Cover	3.1	84
- Electrical socket	3.1	88
- Floor	3.1	81
- Light	3.1	57
- Increasing size of compartment	3.1	79
- Tie-down hooks	3.1	80
- Transporting heavy objects	3.1	79

Luggage compartment cover	3.1	83
Luggage compartment lid	3.1	39
Luggage compartment light	3.1	57
Luggage compartment socket	3.1	88
Luggage space	3.1	79
Lumbar support	3.1	66

M

MAINTENANCE	1.1	
Maintenance	3.4	36
Maintenance intervals	1.1	5
Maintenance records	1.1	10
Maintenance service	1.1	6
Malfunction indicator lamp	3.1	25
Manual air conditioning	3.1	91
Manual transmission	3.1	117
– Back-up lights	3.1	117
– Gearshift lever	3.1	117
Master key	3.1	28
– With remote	3.1	28
Mats, floor	3.1	76
Maximum cooling	3.1	96
Memory		
– Retrieving	3.1	70
– Setting	3.1	68
Memory for driver's seat and outside mirrors	3.1	68
Memory for outside mirrors	3.1	60
Memory functions		
– Driver's seat	3.1	68
– Emergency off, seat	3.1	71
– Outside mirrors	3.1	68
Memory functions	3.1	68
– Emergency Off, seat	3.1	71
– Multi-Function indicator (MFA)	3.1	11
Miles per gallon / Liters per 100 km	3.1	13
Miles / kilometers per hour	3.1	14
Mirrors	3.1	58
– Outside	3.1	59
– Outside, – Memory	3.1	68
– Retrieval	3.1	70
– Tilt position	3.1	69
Mobile telephones	3.4	61

Modifications	3.4	60
Momentary fuel consumption indicator	3.1	13
Multi-function steering wheel	3.1	26
Multi-Function Indicator (MFA)	3.1	11
– Average driving speed	3.1	14
– Average fuel consumption	3.1	13
– Driving time	3.1	14
– Erasing the settings	3.1	12
– Momentary fuel consumption	3.1	13
– Outside temperature	3.1	13
– Time driven	3.1	14
Multi-function steering wheel	3.1	26
– Cruise control	3.1	26
– Lighting	3.1	26
– Radio system	3.1	26, 27
Music Seek System (MSS)	3.3	14

N

New vehicle warranty	1.2	2
Normal cooling	3.1	95
Notice of address change	1.2	
Notice to purchasers of New Volkswagen vehicles	1.2	
Nozzle, – Fuel pump	3.4	3
Number of seats	2.1	9

O

OBD II	3.1	25
Octane rating	3.4	4
Odometer	3.1	10, 15
Oil		
– Additives	3.4	46
– Change	3.4	46
– Pressure	3.1	23
– Specification	3.4	42
– What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? ..	3.4	42
– What kind of oil should I put in my engine?	3.4	42
Oil dip stick	3.4	45
Oil for my engine	3.4	42
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD II)	3.1	25
One-touch down feature	3.1	41
One-touch up feature	3.1	41
Opening the hood	3.4	39

Opening the vehicle	3.1	35
Operating controls		
– Air conditioning	3.1	92
– Climatronic	3.1	99
Outside air	3.1	94
Outside mirrors	3.1	59
– Folding mirrors	3.1	60
– Synchronized adjustment	3.1	60
Outside mirrors memory	3.1	68
Outside temperature indicator	3.1	13
Owner's literature storage	3.1	86
OWNER INFORMATION	4.1	
Oxtane rating	3.4	4

P

Padded head restraints	3.1	62
Panic button / switch	3.1	32
Parking	3.1	110, 116
Parking brake lever	3.1	118
Parts replacement	3.4	60
Passenger's seat, – Proper position	2.1	52
Passenger's seat, – Front	3.1	64
– Foreward and backward adjustment	3.1	66
– Heated seat switch	3.1	49
– Height adjustment	3.1	66
– Lumbar support	3.1	66
Pedals	3.1	76
Pinch protection		
– Power roof	3.1	45
– Windows	3.1	43
Plastic parts, cleaning	3.4	32
Portable fuel container	3.4	3
Power		
– Locking switch	3.1	36
– Locks	3.1	35
– Mirrors	3.1	59
– Windows	3.1	41
Power locking switch	3.1	36
Power locks	3.1	35
Power outside mirrors	3.1	59
Power roof	3.1	45
– Closing	3.1	45

– Convenience closing	3.1	46
– Emergency closing	3.1	46
– Opening	3.1	45
Power windows	3.1	41
– Pinch protection	3.1	43
Power roof – Pinch protection	3.1	45
Power washer	3.4	27
Power windows – Pinch protection	3.1	43
Pregnant women, – Special considerations when wearing a safety belt	2.1	12
Premium gasoline	3.4	4
Protecting your vehicle	3.4	25

R

Radiator fan	3.4	51
Radio	3.3	
– Control on multifunction steering wheel	3.1	27
– What should I know before I install a radio in my vehicle?	3.4	61
Radio card	3.3	28
Radio mode	3.3	9
Rain sensor	3.1	53
Rear axle load	3.3	5,7,9
Radio	3.4	61
Rear		
– Doors, – Child safety lock	3.1	38
– Lid	3.1	39
– Seatback	3.1	77
– Trunk lid	3.1	39
– Window defogger / defroster	3.1	49
– Window washer container	3.4	59
– Wiper / washer	3.1	53
Rear center safety belt	2.1	14
– How to fasten?	2.1	9
– Making sure the rear seatback is securely latched	2.1	9
– Precautions	2.1	14
Rear-facing child seat, – Precautions	2.1	22
Rear lid / Trunk lid	3.1	39
– Closing	3.1	39
– Locks	3.1	39
– Opening	3.1	39

Key words	Booklet	Page
Rear seat	3.1	77
Rear view mirror	3.1	58
Rear window defogger	3.1	49
Rear window washer container	3.4	59
Recirculation air	3.1	92
Refuelling the vehicle	3.4	2
Regular gasoline	3.4	4
Release button on the buckle	2.1	13
Releases		
– Fuel filler flap	3.1	50
– Trunk / Rear lid	3.1	39
Remote control	3.1	28, 30
– Battery replacment	3.1	28
– Locking	3.1	30
– Manual programming	3.1	33
– Operating range	3.1	30
– Rear lid release	3.1	32
– Release	3.1	32
– Resetting	3.1	32
– Unfolding / Folding master key	3.1	31
– Unlocking and locking vehicle	3.1	31
– Unlocking driver's door	3.1	31
Remote locking / unlocking	3.1	30
Repair manuals	3.4	97
Repair manuals, – Ordering on the Web	3.2	97
Replacement of keys	3.1	29
Replacing		
– Batteries, remote control	3.1	28
– Batteries, vehicle battery	3.4	58
– Fuses	3.4	87
– Keys	3.1	29
– Radio	3.4	61
– Wiper blades	3.1	55
Replacing a fuse	3.4	87
Replacing a radio	3.4	61
Replacing bulbs	3.4	88
Replacing		
– Batteries of remonte control	3.1	28
– Wiper blades	3.1	55
Reporting safety defects	3.4	96
Restraint system, head restraint	3.1	62

Restraints		
– Adjusting seating position	3.1	64
– Head restraints	3.1	62
Retractors	2.1	9
Reverse automatic transmission	3.1	107, 114
Reverse manual transmission	3.1	117
Reporting safety defects	3.4	96
Reverse		
– Automatic transmission (4-speed)	3.1	107
– Automatic transmission (5-speed)	3.1	114
– Manual transmission	3.1	117
Roadside Assistance (24 hours)	1.2	13
Road salt, – Removing from wheels	3.4	7
Roof	3.1	45
Roof, – Power		
– Closing	3.1	45
– Convenience closing	3.1	46
– Lowering	3.1	46
– Opening	3.1	45
– Raising	3.1	46
Roof rack	3.1	85
– Installing	3.1	85
– Loading	3.1	85
Roof weight	3.5	2

S

Safe driving hints	3.4	14
Safety belt	2.1	3
– Belt tensioner	2.1	15
– Fastening	2.1	10
– Lap-shoulder belt	2.1	9
– Unfastening	2.1	13
– Warning light	2.1	7
Safety belt extenders	2.1	15
– Fastening	2.1	16
– Precautions your should take when using	2.1	15
– Use with a child restraint	2.1	15
Safety belt height adjustors	2.1	11
Safety belt warning light	2.1	7
Safety belt warning light	3.1	19
Safety belts	3.4	14
– Cleaning	3.4	33

Safety belts	2.1	3
– Adjusting seating position	3.1	64
– Extender	2.1	15
– How can I adjust the height of my safety belt?	2.1	11
– How can I tell when the belt is securely locked?	2.1	10
– How to fasten?	2.1	10
– How to wear properly?	2.1	8
– Making sure all passengers are correctly restrained ..	2.1	9
– Older children	2.1	35
– Precautions	2.1	8
– Retractors, – how they work	2.1	9
– Special considerations for pregnant women	2.1	12
– Torn or frayed	2.1	8
– Unfastening	2.1	13
– Warning system	2.1	7
– What can happen if you do not wear your safety belt?	2.1	4
– What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose?	2.1	12
– When must safety belts be replaced?	2.1	9
– When would a safety belt lock up?	2.1	9
– Why safety belts protect?	2.1	6
Safety compliance sticker	3.5	3
Safety defects, – Reporting	3.4	96
SAFETY FIRST	2.1	2
Seat belts	2.1	3
Seatbelts and older children	2.1	35
Seatback adjustment	3.1	66
Seating capacity of your vehicle	2.1	9
Seating position		
– Distance between the driver and the steering wheel	2.1	21
– Driver	3.1	64
– Front passenger	3.1	65
Seating capacity	2.1	9
Seat markings for lower anchorages	2.1	45
Seats electrical adjustment	3.1	66
– Foreward and backward	3.1	66
– Height	3.1	66
– Raising and lowering	3.1	66
– Memory	3.1	67
Seats manual adjustment	3.1	66
– Foreward and backward	3.1	66
– Height	3.1	66

- Lumbar support	3.1	66
- Seatback adjustment	3.1	66
Secondary key	3.1	29
Securing a child seat	2.1	36, 38
Securing luggage	3.1	80
Selector lever display	3.1	106, 113
Selector lever position display	3.1	15
Self-dimming mirror	3.1	58
Sensor, rain	3.1	53
Service information	1.1	3
Service kit	3.4	62
Settings		
- Clock	3.1	10
- Odometer	3.1	10
- Outside mirrors	3.1	68
- Seat memory	3.1	68
Side airbags	2.1	17, 25
Side Curtain Protection™	2.1	17, 28
Signals, turn	3.1	18, 51
Snow chains	3.4	79
- On which wheels can I use snow chains?	3.4	79
Snow tires	3.4	77
Socket	3.1	88
Socket - Electrical	3.1	88
SOUND SYSTEM	3.3	
Spare wheel	3.4	63, 65
- 16" spare wheel and 17" spare wheel	3.4	65, 66
- On which wheels can I use snow chains?	3.4	79
- Securing	3.4	65
- Vehicle with sport suspension	3.4	66
Speed range	3.4	13
Speedometer	3.1	10
Starter switch	3.1	119
Starting		
- Diesel engine	3.1	122
- Gasoline engine	3.1	121
Starting engine	3.1	121
Starting procedures	3.1	121
Starting with jumper cables	3.4	89
Steel wheels, - Cleaning	3.4	30
Steering lock	3.1	119
Steering wheel	3.1	73
- Cruise control	3.1	26

– Lighting	3.1	26
– Multi-function	3.1	26
– Sound System	3.1	27
Stopping engine	3.1	123
Storage bin	3.1	86
– Armrest	3.1	75
– Box / compartment	3.1	86
– Compartment light	3.1	57
Storage compartment light	3.1	57
Stuck in mud or snow	3.4	68
Summer tires	3.4	74
Sun roof	3.1	45
Sun visors	3.1	61
Switches	3.1	47
– Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)	3.1	48
– Daytime running lights	3.1	47
– Electronic Stability Program (ESP)	3.1	48
– Emergency flasher	3.1	49
– Fog lights, front	3.1	47
– Fuel filler flap release	3.1	50
– Heated seat, driver's	3.1	48
– Heated seat, passenger's	3.1	49
– Instrument illumination	3.1	47
– Light switch	3.1	47
– Panic button switch	3.1	32
– Power locking switch	3.1	36
– Rear lid release	3.1	50
– Rear window defogger	3.1	49
Synchronised mirror adjustment	3.1	60

T

Tachometer	3.1	8
Tag key	3.1	29
Tape head	3.3	17
TECHNICAL DATA	3.5	
Telephones – Using	3.4	61
Tensioner for the safety belt		
– Function	2.1	13
Tether anchors	2.1	40
Tether strap	2.1	41
– How to attach on the Wagon model	2.1	40
– Distance between the driver and steering wheel	2.1	21

Temperature control		
– Air conditioning	3.1	92
– Climatronic	3.1	98
Temperature indicator, outside	3.1	13
Theft protection – Alarm system	3.1	34
Tie-down hooks	3.1	80
Tilt and telescopic steering wheel	3.1	73
Time driven indicator	3.1	14
Tiptronic	3.1	112
– Top speed	3.1	114
TIPS AND ADVICE	3.4	
Tire		
– Pressure	3.4	70
– Quality grading	3.4	75
– Replacement	3.4	73
– Rotation	3.4	72
– Specification	3.4	74
– Wear	3.4	71
Tire designation code	3.4	74
Tire manufacturers	1.2	28
Tire pressure	3.4	70
– Where can I find the tire pressures for my vehicle	3.4	70
Tire quality grading	3.4	75
Tires	3.4	69
Tires / Wheels		
– All season tires, – Factory equipped	3.4	75, 77
– Anti-theft wheel bolts	3.4	86
– Changing a wheel	3.4	80
– Changing a wheel, – Precautions	3.4	80
– How often should I check my tire pressures?	3.4	70
– How often should I check the condition of my tires?	3.4	69
– M+S tires	3.4	78
– New tires, – Breaking in	3.4	70
– Replacement	3.4	73
– Replacing, – Precautions	3.4	73
– Rotation	3.4	72
– Snow chains, – Correct use	3.4	79
– Spare tire	3.4	63
– Specifications	3.4	74
– Summer tires	3.4	74
– Tire pressures	3.4	70
– Uniform tire quality grading	3.4	75
– Vehicle jack mounting points	3.4	82

– What can contribute to tire wear?	3.4	70
– What sort of things can affect the lif of my tires?	3.4	70
– Winter tires	3.4	77
Tools	3.4	63
Torn safety belts	2.1	8
Towing	3.4	92
– Distance	3.4	92
– Speed	3.4	92
– With a commercial tow truck	3.4	92
Towing	3.1	110, 116
Towing a trailer	3.4	20
– Bumper hitches	3.4	20
– Driving instructions	3.4	22
– Driving tips	3.4	23
– Engine cooling	3.4	21
– Technical requirements	3.4	20
– Tips	3.4	23
– Tire pressure	3.4	22
– Tongue load	3.4	22
– Trailer brakes	3.4	21
– Trailer weights	3.4	21
Towing eye	3.4	68
– Attaching	3.4	68
Trailer weights	3.5	4,6,8
Traffic jams, – Switching off the engine when caught in a traffic jam	3.4	17
Transmission	3.1	107, 117
Transporting heavy objects	3.1	79
Trip odometer	3.1	15
Trunk, light	3.1	57
Turn signals	3.1	18, 51
– Indicators	3.1	18
– Operation	3.1	51

U

Undercoating	3.4	19, 31
Unfastening the safety belt	2.1	13
Uniform tire quality grading	3.4	75
Used car purchasers (notice of)	1.2	
Using the air conditioning more economically	3.1	96
Unleaded fuel	3.4	4, 18
Unleaded gasoline	3.4	17
Unlocking the vehicle	3.1	35

V

Valet key	3.1	29
Valve extenders	3.4	70
Variable luggage compartment floor	3.1	81
Vehicle battery	3.4	55
Vehicle care		
– Exterior	3.4	26
– Instrument panel	3.4	32
– Interior	3.4	31
– Windows	3.4	29
Vehicle identification	3.5	3
Vehicle identification label	3.5	3
Vehicle identification label	1.1	
Vehicle jack	3.4	64
Vehicle identification number	3.5	3
Ventilation	3.1	91,96,101
Volkswagen Customer Relations	4.1	3
Volkswagen repair manuals, – Ordering	3.4	97
Voltage warning label	3.5	3
Volume control	3.3	6

W

Warning and indicator lights	3.1	6
Warning lights	3.1	6, 16
Warning / Indicator lights		
– Airbag system	3.1	17
– Alternator / generator	3.1	21
– Anti-lock brake system	3.1	19
– Anti-Slip Regulation	3.1	24
– Brake	3.1	20
– Coolant level	3.1	21
– Coolant temperature	3.1	21
– Door / Rear lid open	3.1	24
– Electronic power control	3.1	18
– Electronic Stability Program	3.1	18
– Engine coolant level	3.1	21
– Engine coolant temperature	3.1	21
– Engine oil pressure	3.1	23
– Front brake pads	3.1	24
– Fuel level	3.1	24
– Generator	3.1	21
– Glow plug	3.1	17
– High beam	3.1	18

– Malfunction indicator light	3.1	25
– Rear lid open	3.1	24
– Safety belts	3.1	21
– Trunk / Rear lid open	3.1	24
– Turn signals	3.1	18
– Washer fluid	3.1	24
Warning triangle	3.4	62
Warning system	2.1	7
Warranties on your vehicle	3.4	20
WARRANTY	1.2	
Warranty booklet	3.4	20
Warranty coverages	3.4	20
Warranty voucher	1.1	
Washer	3.4	59
Washer fluid	3.1	24
Washer jets, – Adjusting	3.4	59
Washer reservoir	3.4	59
Washer system	3.1	52
Waxing your vehicle		
– How often should I wax my vehicle?	3.4	28
– Where not to use car wax	3.4	28
What can happen if you do not wear your safety belt? ...	2.1	4
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? ...	2.1	12
What happens when the airbags deploy?	2.1	19
What happens when the belt tensioner is activated?	2.1	13
What is the correct brake fluid level?	3.4	51
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle?	3.4	42
What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle?	3.4	60
What should I do if the airbag indicator light comes on and stays on?	2.1	18
What should I do if the brake warning light comes on? .	3.4	52
What should I do with an old battery?	3.4	58
When must safety belts be replaced?	2.1	9
When would a safety belt lock up?	2.1	9
Where are my airbags located?	2.1	17
Wheel bolts		
– Removing anti-theft wheel bolts	3.4	86
Why safety belts protect	2.1	6
Wheels	3.4	69
– valve extenders	3.4	70
Wheels replacement	3.4	73
Why maintenance	1.1	5

Window / windshield		
– Pinch protection	3.1	41
– Rear defogger	3.1	49
– Rear window wiper / washer	3.1	53
– Wiper blades	3.1	55
Windows	3.4	29
Windows	3.1	41
– Cleaning	3.4	29
– Defogging	3.1	94
– Defrosting	3.1	94, 101
– Ignition off	3.1	44
– Ignition on	3.1	44
– Pinch protection	3.1	43
Windshield washer container	3.4	59
– Capacity (quarts / litres)	3.4	59
Windshield washer container capacity	3.5	4, 6, 8
Windshield wiper	3.1	52
Winter operation		
– Battery	3.4	53
– Cooling system	3.4	48
– Diesel fuel	3.4	6
– Snow chains	3.4	79
– Tires	3.4	77
– Vehicle care	3.4	26
– Windows	3.4	29
– Windshield washer system	3.4	59
Winter tires	3.4	77
Wiper	3.1	52
Wiper blades	3.1	55
Wiper / washer system	3.1	52
– Blades	3.1	55
– Rain sensor	3.1	53
– Rear window	3.1	53
– Windshield	3.1	52
Workshop hoist	3.4	94

© VOLKSWAGEN AG

All rights reserved

**May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part
without consent of VOLKSWAGEN AG.**

Specifications subject to change without notice.

Printed in Germany



1.1 **2004 Volkswagen**
Maintenance

Warranty Voucher

for the new Volkswagen automobile.

Present this voucher to an authorized dealer if warranty service is required.

Warranty begins on the month of first use of the vehicle or its delivery to the first retail purchaser, namely on:

6 17 04
Month Day Year

(to be filled in by authorized Volkswagen Dealer)

*Tynan
Volkswagen
420-113*

Stamp of authorized
Volkswagen Dealer

WVWSR61J X 4W182494

1J6 538

JETTA VARIANT GLs

74 KW AG5

1. BEW GPC
LD1W----- VH

2.

3. B0D C2S G0F H5B J0R MS7 Q2J

4. -- 1AT 1G2 2ZB 1NL 5RR 5SH T5X

0BC 3S2 3U2 QG0 0G7 BUS 8GD 8L3

1H0 1KX 1ZP 3FE 3YR G09 0GM

4UB 4XB 4R4 4K0 N5U 5MA

Vehicle Identification Label

1. 9VG 2JC E0A 0AE 0BC

2. 1JH L39 0YZ

3. Transmission Code / Paint No. / Engine / Engine Code

4. Optional Equipment

Air Conditioner
Warranty Registration Certificate
(except factory installation)

Attach here
(for dealer use only)

Federal Law requires that a label be affixed
to the left door frame when the replacement odometer
does not indicate the actual vehicle mileage (kilometers)
after repair or replacement.

Genuine Volkswagen replacement odometers
are supplied with a label

**Odometer
Replacement**

Month Day Year

(to be filled in by authorized
Volkswagen Dealer)

At mileage / km

Stamp of authorized
Volkswagen Dealer

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Warranty Voucher / Vehicle Identification Label	previous pages
--	----------------

Service Information

Dealer Service	3
Do-It-Yourself Service	3
Emission Control Maintenance	4
Why Service?	4

When do I bring my car in for service?

1.8L Turbo or 2.8L V6 Gasoline Engines

If your car has a 1.8L Turbo or 2.8L V6 Gasoline engine, then this is your Service Schedule	5
--	---

2.0L, 2.8L VR 6 , 4.0 L W8, 3.2L VR6 and 4.2L V8 Gasoline Engines or 1.9L TDI Diesel Engines

If your car has a 2.0L, 2.8L VR6, 4.0L W8, 3.2L VR6 and 4.2L V8 Gasoline engine or a 1.9L TDI Diesel engine, then this is your Service Schedule	6
--	---

**If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask
your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.**

Service Schedule

Delivery Inspection	7
Service Schedule	7 - 24

Brake Fluid Replacement Record

Brake Fluid Replacement Record	25
--------------------------------------	----

Dealer Service

There are nearly 800 authorized Volkswagen dealers in North America. They have Volkswagen trained technicians, proper workshop equipment and parts to give you expert service.

Volkswagen dealers are committed to quality service.

- 1 Your authorized Volkswagen dealer offers many services for your convenience, such as extended service hours, early bird service, body repairs, to name just a few. Ask about them.
- 1 Arrange your service with your dealer when it is convenient for you.
- 1 Ask your Service Advisor about the service you need and discuss the cost involved.
- 1 Leave word where you can be reached during the day and when you would like to pick your car up.
- 1 Keep all receipts of maintenance and repairs performed. Your service record is important when making use of your warranty.
- 1 Maintenance services performed by your authorized dealer at the intervals specified, will also be documented in this booklet.
- 1 Automobile technology changes continuously. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer always has the most current Service and Maintenance information for your Volkswagen model. It is possible that this information may differ from the check points listed in this booklet. Your Volkswagen Service Advisor can answer any questions you may have.

Do-It-Yourself Service

Your Owner's Manual contains many helpful hints on what you can service yourself.

- 1 You can check tires for wear or damage and correct tire pressure, including the spare.
 - 1 You can check the windshield washer container.
 - 1 You can check your car's interior and exterior lighting system for correct functioning.
 - 1 You can check the engine oil level with every fuel filling.
 - 1 You can perform these simple checks once a week.
- They save time, trouble and expense later.

Your technician will not check the above mentioned items in each case during regular service and maintenance visits.

Emission Control Maintenance

- 1 - A clean environment is of concern to all of us. Volkswagen has built into your vehicle an efficient emission control system, using genuine Volkswagen parts, in conformance with the Federal Clean Air Act in the United States and Canadian Emission Standards, respectively. To help keep our air clean, you can do your part by providing regular maintenance for the emission control system in your vehicle.
- 2 - **Maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components may be performed by any qualified automotive service and repair establishment or individual without affecting the Emission Control System Warranty, provided that such repairs are performed to manufacturer's specifications, and that replacement parts are at least equivalent to genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability. Warranty repairs and replacements, however, must be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.**
- 3 - If other than genuine Volkswagen replacement parts are used, the owner should make sure that such parts are warranted by their manufacturer and that they are at least equivalent to genuine Volkswagen replacement parts in emission performance and durability.

To be certain that the emission control system functions as designed, regular maintenance is necessary for all components of the vehicle which influence exhaust emissions.

Why Service?

- 1 An untuned engine wastes fuel.
- 1 An un-serviced emission control system can increase pollution.
- 1 A minor adjustment now may prevent a repair later.
- 1 Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and make in-between checks. This way you help keep your car dependable and safe.
- 1 The intervals shown in the table on the following pages are based on vehicles operating under normal conditions. In the case of severe conditions, such as extremely low temperatures, excessive dust etc., it is necessary for certain operations to be carried out in between the given intervals. This applies particularly to engine oil changes and the cleaning or replacing of the air cleaner filter element.
- 1 If you have questions about how to maintain your vehicle or about your Maintenance Services, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers are ready to serve you and are committed to quality service and customer care.

If your vehicle has one of these engines, then this is your Service Interval Schedule.

- 1.8L Turbo Gasoline Engine (Golf, Jetta, New Beetle, Passat)**
- 2.8L V6 Gasoline Engine (Passat),**

If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Oil Change Service
10,000 miles (16,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
15,000 miles (24,000 km)	Oil Change Service
20,000 miles (32,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
25,000 miles (40,000 km)	Oil Change Service
30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
35,000 miles (56,000 km)	Oil Change Service
40,000 miles (64,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
45,000 miles (72,000 km)	Oil Change Service
50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
55,000 miles (88,000 km)	Oil Change Service
60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service

Services should be performed at the scheduled mileage (kilometre) intervals, or 12 months after the last Service, whichever occurs first.

Your Service advisor will fill in the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance booklet each time you bring in your vehicle for Service.

At this time, the Service advisor will also inform you when the next Service is due. Therefore, it is important that you follow the Service schedule.

The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometres).

WHEN DO I BRING MY CAR IN FOR SERVICE?

If your vehicle has one of these engines, then this is your Service Interval Schedule.

- 2.0 L Gasoline Engine (Golf, Jetta, New Beetle, Passat)**
- 2.8L VR6 Gasoline Engine (Golf, Jetta)**
- VR6 4-valve Gasoline Engine (Jetta)**
- 4.0L V8 Gasoline Engine (Passat)**
- 1.9L TDI Diesel Engine (Golf, Jetta, New Beetle),**
- 3.2L VR6 or 4.2L V8 Gasoline Engine (Touareg)**

If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Oil Change Service
10,000 miles (16,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
20,000 miles (32,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
40,000 miles (64,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
70,000 miles (112,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
80,000 miles (128,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service

Services should be performed at the scheduled mileage (kilometre) intervals, or 12 months after the last Service, whichever occurs first.

Your Service Advisor will fill in the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance booklet each time you bring in your vehicle for Service.

At this time, the Service Advisor will also inform you when the next Service is due. Therefore, it is important that you follow the Service schedule.

The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometres).

Delivery Inspection

- 1 Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will fill out the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance book to confirm that the necessary services have been performed.
- 1 Automobile technology changes continuously. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer always has the most current Service and Maintenance information for your Volkswagen model. It is possible that this information may differ from the check points listed in this booklet. Your Volkswagen Service Advisor can answer any questions you may have.
- 1 If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

Delivery Inspection

Before your vehicle is delivered to you, it is inspected according to factory guidelines.

The Delivery Inspection was performed on: 6-17-04

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km: ... 5000

or 12 months
whichever occurs first

Tynan
Volkswagen
420-113

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

First Service at 5,000 miles (8,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- 1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- 1 Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)

Next Service:

Date: ... 3-10-05

Miles / km: ... 10498

whichever occurs first

420  155
Ehrlich
Greeley, CO

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 10,000 miles (16,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- 1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- 1 Water separator: Drain water (***TDI engine only***)
- 1 Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- 1 Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- 1 Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- 1 Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- 1 Rear spoiler: Lubricate (***New Beetle only***)
- 1 Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- 1 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (***where applicable***)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 15,000 miles (24,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

- 1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 20,000 miles (32,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- I Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- I Engine: Check for leaks
- I Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- I Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- I Fuel filter: Replace (**TDI engine only**)
- I Battery: Check electrolyte level (**Passat**)
- I Battery: Check (**Golf, Jetta, New Beetle**)
- I Door check straps: Lubricate
- I Dust and pollen filter (where applicable): Replace
- I Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- I Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- I Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- I Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- I Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- I Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- I Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- I Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- I Drive shafts: Check boots
- I On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- I Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- I Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints and tie rod ends; check tie rods
- I Headlights: Adjust
- I Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- I 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)
- I Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- I Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 25,000 miles (40,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine **ONLY**.

I Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 30,000 miles (48,000 km) – **ALL MODELS**

I Engine: Change oil and oil filter

I Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)

I Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary

I Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch

I Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level

I Wheels: Rotate from front to rear

I Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)

I Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)

I 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 35,000 miles (56,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

I Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 40,000 miles (64,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- | Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- | Engine: Check for leaks
- | Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- | Fuel filter: Replace (**TDI engine only**)
- | Water separator: Drain (**TDI engine only**)
- | Battery: Check electrolyte level (**Passat**)
- | Battery: Check (**Golf, Jetta, New Beetle**)
- | Door check straps: Lubricate
- | V-belt: Check tension and condition; adjust if necessary
- | Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- | Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- | Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- | Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- | Automatic transmission final drive oil: Check level and for leaks; add if necessary
- | Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- | Headlights: Adjust
- | Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- | Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- | Brake fluid: Replace every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- | Spark plugs: Replace (**except Touareg V8**)
- | Interior and exterior lights: check function
- | Air suspension: check for damage/leaks (**Touareg**)
- | Underbody: check for damage (**Touareg**)

Continued on next page

Service at 40,000 miles (64,000 km) – continued

- I Air cleaner: Replace filter element
- I Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- I Dust and pollen filter (where applicable): Replace
- I Ribbed belt: Check condition
- I Power Steering: Check fluid level
- I Drive shafts: Check boots
- I Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints, tie rod ends; check tie rods
- I On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- I Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- I Automatic transmission: Check ATF
- I Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- I Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- I Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- I 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)
- I Convertible top: Check function and check roll-over protection with convertible top open (**New Beetle Convertible only**)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 45,000 miles (72,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 50,000 miles (80,000 km) – ALL MODELS

1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter

1 Water separator: Drain water (***TDI engine only***)

1 Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary

1 Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch

1 Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level

1 Wheels: Rotate from front to rear

1 Rear spoiler: Lubricate (***New Beetle only***)

1 Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)

1 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (***where applicable***)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 55,000 miles (88,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

I Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- | Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- | Engine: Check for leaks
- | Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- | Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- | Fuel filter: Replace (**TDI engine only**)
- | Battery: Check electrolyte level (**Passat**)
- | Battery: Check (**Golf, Jetta, New Beetle**)
- | Door check straps: Lubricate
- | Dust and pollen filter (where applicable): Replace
- | Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- | Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- | Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- | Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- | Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- | Timing belt: Check condition (**4 cylinder gasoline engine only**)
- | Automatic transmission final drive: Check fluid level and for leaks
- | Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- | Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- | Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- | Drive shafts: Check boots
- | On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- | Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- | Front axle: Check dust seal on ball joints and tie rods; check tie rods
- | Headlights: Adjust
- | Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- | Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- | Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- | 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)
- | Spark plugs: replace (**Touareg V8 only**)

Continued on next page

Service at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) – continued

Next Service: Date: Miles / km: whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp
---	---

Service at 65,000 miles (104,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter	
Next Service: Date: Miles / km: whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 70,000 miles (112,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- 1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- 1 Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- 1 Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- 1 Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- 1 Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- 1 Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- 1 Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- 1 Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- 1 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 75,000 miles (120,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

- 1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 80,000 miles (128,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- | Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- | Engine: Check for leaks
- | Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- | Fuel filter: Replace (***TDI engine only***)
- | Water separator: Drain (***TDI engine only***)
- | Battery: Check electrolyte level (***Passat***)
- | Battery: Check (***Golf, Jetta, New Beetle***)
- | Door check straps: Lubricate
- | Spark plugs: Replace (***except Touareg V8***)
- | Air cleaner: Replace filter element
- | Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- | Dust and pollen filter (where applicable): Replace
- | Timing belt: Check condition (***4 cylinder gasoline engine only***)
- | V-belt: Check tension and condition; adjust if necessary
- | Ribbed belt: Check condition
- | Timing belt: change (***Touareg V8 only***)
- | Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- | Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- | Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- | Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks

Continued on next page

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 80,000 miles (128,000 km) – continued

- I Automatic transmission final drive oil: Check level and for leaks; add if necessary
- I Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- I Headlights: Adjust
- I Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- I Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- I Power steering: Check fluid level
- I Brake fluid: Replace every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- I Drive shafts: Check boots
- I Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints, tie rod ends; check tie rods
- I On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- I Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- I Automatic transmission: Check ATF
- I Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- I Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- I Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- I 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)
- I Convertible top: Check function and check roll-over protection with convertible top open (**New Beetle Convertible only**)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 85,000 miles (136,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 90,000 miles (144,000 km) – ALL MODELS

1 Engine: Change oil and oil filter

1 Water separator: Drain water (***TDI engine only***)

1 Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary

1 Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch

1 Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level

1 Wheels: Rotate from front to rear

1 Rear spoiler: Lubricate (***New Beetle only***)

1 Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)

1 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (***where applicable***)

1 Timing belt: Replace (***TDI engine only***)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 95,000 miles (152,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

I Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 100,000 miles (160,000 km) – ALL MODELS

- | Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- | Engine: Check for leaks
- | Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- | Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- | Fuel filter: Replace (**TDI engine only**)
- | Battery: Check electrolyte level (**Passat**)
- | Battery: Check (**Golf, Jetta, New Beetle**)
- | Door check straps: Lubricate
- | Dust and pollen filter (where applicable): Replace
- | Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- | Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- | Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- | Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- | Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- | Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- | Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- | Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- | Drive shafts: Check boots
- | On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- | Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- | Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints and tie rod ends; check tie rods

Continued on next page

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Service at 100,000 miles (160,000 km) – continued

- I Headlights: Adjust
- I Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- I Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- I Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- I Timing belt: Replace (**TDI engine only**)
- I 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 105,000 miles (168,000 km) – Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY.

- I Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- I Timing belt and timing belt tensioning roller: Replace (**Passat 2.8L V6 5-valve engines only**)
- I Timing belt and timing belt tensioning roller: Replace (**Passat, Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 1.8 T engine only**)

Next Service:

Date:

Miles / km:

whichever occurs first

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Brake fluid replacement record

The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometres).

1 The first brake fluid replacement was performed on _____

Next Brake Fluid Replacement:

Date:

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

1 A brake fluid replacement was performed on _____

Next Brake Fluid Replacement:

Date:

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

1 A brake fluid replacement was performed on _____

Next Brake Fluid Replacement:

Date:

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

SERVICE SCHEDULE

Brake fluid replacement record

The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometres).

1 The first brake fluid replacement was performed on _____

Next Brake Fluid Replacement:

Date:

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

1 A brake fluid replacement was performed on _____

Next Brake Fluid Replacement:

Date:

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

1 A brake fluid replacement was performed on _____

Next Brake Fluid Replacement:

Date:

Today's date and
Volkswagen Dealer stamp

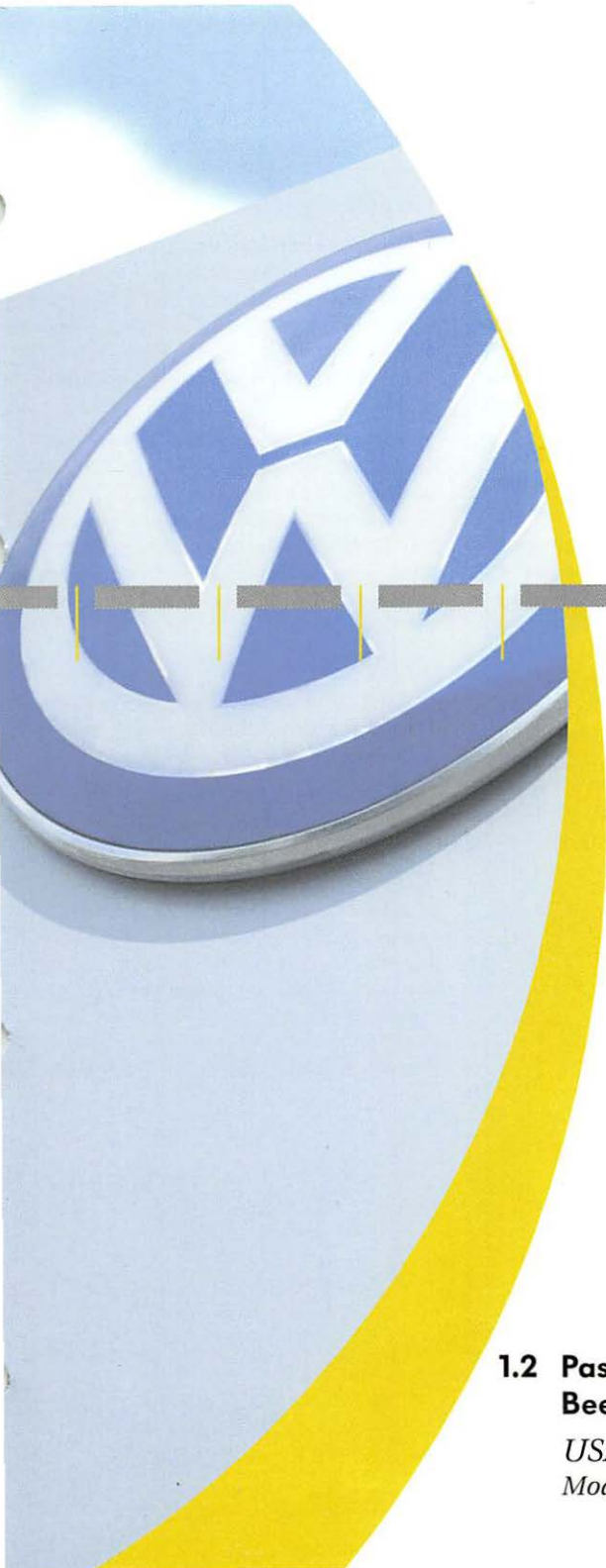
© 2003 VOLKSWAGEN of America, Inc.

All rights reserved

**May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part
without consent of VOLKSWAGEN of America, Inc.**

Specifications subject to change without notice.

Printed in Germany



1.2 Passat, Jetta, Golf, New Beetle

*USA Warranty
Model year 2004*

Dear Owner,

This booklet contains the warranties applicable to your new Volkswagen. Please read these warranties carefully to determine your warranty rights and obligations.

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty includes virtually bumper to bumper coverage for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first and limited powertrain coverage for 5 years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. Your vehicle is also warranted against corrosion perforation for a period of 12 years irrespective of mileage.

In addition, your vehicle is covered by emissions warranties mandated by Federal law. If you are a resident of California, Massachusetts, Vermont, or Maine and have purchased a California emissions equipped vehicle, you may also have rights under California mandated emissions warranties. Please consult these warranties whenever a repair to your emission control system is required to determine whether it is covered by warranty. Your satisfaction in understanding the warranties that apply to your Volkswagen is important to us. Any questions concerning warranty coverage should be directed to:

This booklet contains the warranties applicable to your new Volkswagen. Please read these warranties carefully to determine your warranty rights and obligations.

**Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309**

Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you have a concern or you are not satisfied with the service that you receive from your dealer, we suggest that you discuss it with the Service Manager at your dealership. If it is not resolved through your dealership, you may call or write to the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a mediation and arbitration service for the resolution of disputes arising under this Limited New Vehicle Warranty. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

**Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Arlington, VA 22203-1804**

Notice of Address Change Notice of Used Car Purchase

The "National Traffic & Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966" requires manufacturers to be in a position to contact vehicle owners if a correction of a product defect becomes necessary. If you change your address or buy a used Volkswagen, complete one of the postcards in the middle of this booklet. You need not use this card if you purchased your Volkswagen through an authorized Volkswagen dealer.



Table of contents

Limited New Vehicle Warranty	2	California Emissions Warranties	20
What is covered	2	California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement	20
What is not covered	4	CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT	20
Limited Powertrain Warranty ..	7	Emissions Performance Warranty	24
What is covered	7	Customer CARE	28
What is not covered	8	Dealer assistance	28
Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation	10	When to notify the manufacturer	28
What is covered	10	Repairs not covered by warranty	29
What is not covered	11	BBB AUTO LINE	30
24 Hour Roadside Assistance ..	13	BBB AUTO LINE dispute settlement services	30
The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program	13	Service Publications	31
Federal Emissions Warranties ..	14	Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center	31
General	14	Tire Manufacturers	32
Emissions Control System Warranty ..	14	List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles	32
Emissions Performance Warranty	16		
Additional Information	19		



Limited New Vehicle Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The New Vehicle Warranty period is 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in

duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship except wheel alignment, tire balance, and the repair or replacement of tires. The repair or replacement of wear and tear items, such as manual transmission clutch friction material, brake pads worn below manufacturer specifications, light bulbs (excluding Halogen headlights, instrument panel bulbs, and Xenon headlights, unless damaged by outside influences), seat covers, carpeting and replacement of rubber wiper

blade inserts, replaced for wear and tear, are covered up to one year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Batteries are covered 100% parts and labor for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, for defects in material or workmanship.

Mechanical adjustment not associated with a defect in material and workmanship, are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United

States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀



When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited New Vehicle Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with

a new or remanufactured genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

Emergency repairs

If an emergency repair was performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility, keep all receipts, repair orders, and parts removed from your Volkswagen.

You will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer.

A statement of the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer, together with the paid receipts, repair orders, and replaced parts must be submitted to your authorized Volkswagen dealer in order to be considered for reimbursement. ◀

BBB AUTO LINE dispute settlement services

If you are not satisfied with the warranty service you receive, you may wish to follow the steps set forth ⇒ page 30.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a mediation and arbitration service for the resolution of warranty and other product related disputes. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, you may call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

We encourage you to use BBB AUTO LINE before you decide to seek remedies in a court of law

In some states you may be required to use BBB AUTO LINE before you can assert your rights in a court of law.

The BBB AUTO LINE service is free of charge and permits you to present your case without an attorney. Additional information on BBB AUTO LINE can be found ⇒ page 30. ◀



What is not covered

Tires

Tires are not covered by this warranty, but are separately warranted by the tire manufacturer. To assist you in obtaining related Warranty information, a list of tire manufacturers

and addresses is provided at the end of this booklet. Verify with the tire manufacturer what is covered under their warranty. ◀

Maintenance services and mechanical adjustments

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants, fluids, or air conditioner refrigerant charge, unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component.

Mechanical adjustments not associated with a defect in material or workmanship are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). This warranty does not cover wheel alignment or tire balancing. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems; or
- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to ac-

commodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations; or

- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including, but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or
- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of ▶



aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total

loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet.

Your dealer will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of Service or Repair Orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, floodwater,

windstorms, tree sap or other similar occurrences. ◀

Glass

This warranty does not cover glass breakage, unless due to a defect in manufacturer's material or workmanship. ◀

Odometer tampering

These warranties do not cover repairs on an Volkswagen on which the odometer has been altered or on which the actual mileage cannot readily be determined.

If the speedometer unit is replaced, a "Speedometer Replacement Record" must be filled out by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Other expenses:

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging¹⁾.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state. ◀



Other terms:

This warranty is issued by Volkswagen of America, Inc. (VWoA). This warranty does not apply to Volkswagen vehicles or parts and accessories not imported or distributed by Volkswagen.

This warranty, the Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation, and the Emissions Warranties are the only express warranties made in connection with the sale of this Volkswagen. Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so, the above limitation may not apply to you.

Volkswagen of America, Inc. reserves the right to make improvements or change the design of any Volkswagen model at anytime with no obligation to make similar changes on vehicles previously sold.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

¹⁾ Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state.



Limited Powertrain Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for 5 years or 60,000 miles whichever occurs first, from the date the vehicle was first placed in service.

This warranty does not apply to vehicles used for commercial purposes such as taxi, limousine and rental vehicles.

If a commercial vehicle is sold to a subsequent retail owner, this warranty still does not apply.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

The Limited Powertrain Warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship for the following Volkswagen parts and components:

Engine

Cylinder block and all internal parts, cylinder head and all internal parts, valve train, spur belt, flywheel, oil pump, water pump, manifolds, all related seals and gaskets.

Transmission

Case and all internal parts, torque converter, all related seals and gaskets.

Drivetrain

Differential and all internal parts, drive shafts and constant velocity (CV) joints. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United

States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected only under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀



When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company car", on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

The Limited Powertrain Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with

a new or remanufactured genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

What is not covered

Maintenance services

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service. Scheduled maintenance services are described in your Volkswagen Maintenance Booklet.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants or fluids unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by

Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems;

- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to accommodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations;
- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including ▶



but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen;

- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or

- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Wear and tear items

This warranty does not cover the replacement of any powertrain components that

wear as a result of normal use or deterioration. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions which are due to failure to follow recommended maintenance requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet. Your dealer

will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of service or repair orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, tree sap, stones, flood

water, windstorm or other similar occurrences. ◀

Other expenses

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, or out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging²⁾.

The "Other Terms" Presented in The Limited New Vehicle Warranty Also Apply to This Warranty. ◀

²⁾ Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.



Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for 12 years without mileage limitation.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations

on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair or replacement of body sheet metal panels that have been perforated by rust. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United

States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀



When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. The authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part.



Tips

Your Volkswagen is corrosion protected at the factory. You do not need to purchase rust-proofing when you buy your Volkswagen in order to keep this warranty in effect. ◀

What is not covered

Surface corrosion without perforation

Repairs are covered under this warranty only if there is rust-through condition in the body

sheet metal not caused by outside influences. ◀

Perforation of sheet metal due to accident, lack of care, or failure to repair or modifications to the paint/painted surface

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the failure to promptly repair paint damage, damaged undercoating, or surface corrosion.

It does not cover damage due to failure to wash or otherwise regularly care for the ve-

hicle as described in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual.

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from unrepaired collision damage or improper collision repair. ◀



Special exclusion for any aluminum portions that may be part of your Volkswagen vehicle

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation due to failure to perform body repairs in accordance with Volkswagen's specified repair procedures, including use of **non-aluminum alloy parts**.

It does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the use of any inferior rust-proofing agent or method.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealership will do its best to match your vehicle's original finish, but this warranty does not cover the cost of painting the entire vehicle solely for paint matching. ◀

Environmental damage

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, flood water,

wind storms, tree sap or other similar occurrences ◀

Corrosion perforation because of failure to rustproof when collision damage is repaired

Body parts that have been repaired or newly installed after a collision must be treated with a rustproofing agent that is compatible with Volkswagen's own factory corrosion protection. If you fail to have your vehicle treated in this way after a collision, Volkswagen will not

be responsible for the repair of any resulting rust-through.



Tips

The "Other Terms" presented in the Limited New Vehicle Warranty also apply to this warranty. ◀



24 Hour Roadside Assistance

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program is your assurance that help will be there should your **model year 2004 Volkswagen** have a mechanical breakdown under normal³⁾ driving conditions. Whether this happens thousands of miles from home (anywhere in the U.S. or Canada), or in your own driveway, you only have to call one toll-free number and help will be on the way.

1 (800) 411-6688

To identify yourself as a member, simply quote your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This number can be found on your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance membership card, or you can find it on the driver's side of the dashboard visible through the windshield. 24 Hour Roadside Assistance is available to you

for the **first four years of your new vehicle ownership or 50,000 miles**, which occurs first.

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Program includes the following emergency roadside services: emergency towing, battery jump start, flat tire change, emergency fuel service, lock-out service and extrication/winch service.

Other services and benefits include: trip routing services and trip interruption benefits throughout the U.S. and Canada.

Please refer to your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Owner's Guide for specific details on the services provided. ◀

³⁾ Coverage does not include service to any vehicle wilfully driven into non-regularly travelled areas such as unassumed roads, open fields, construction sites, beaches, mud-filled driveways/laneways/concession roads, vacant lots, or any other area that is inaccessible or hazardous for the Service Operator's vehicle to reach.



Federal Emissions Warranties

General

The Emissions Warranties set out on the following pages are warranties which the manufacturer is required by law to furnish to you at the time you take delivery of your new vehicle.

The warranties required by Federal law apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen of America, Inc. ("Volkswagen") for sale in the United States, including California. The warranties required by California law apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale and registration in the State of California.

The Commonwealth of Massachusetts and the States of Vermont and Maine have adopted warranty requirements that are identical to the California warranties.

The owner of a vehicle certified for sale and registered in California, Massachusetts, Vermont or Maine, may, therefore, have warranty rights under both Federal and State mandated emissions warranties. The State

of New York has adopted emissions warranty requirements identical to California mandated emissions warranties **ONLY** for vehicles equipped to meet California's Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV) emissions requirements.

The owner of a new Volkswagen vehicle imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale in states other than California, Massachusetts, Vermont, Maine or New York (as set forth in the above paragraph) has rights only under the Federal Emissions Warranty.

Please read these warranties carefully. If you have any questions concerning the applicability of each warranty to your vehicle or want to know whether a particular repair will be performed free of charge pursuant to these warranties, please write to or telephone:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
Volkswagen of America, Inc.
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

Emissions Control System Warranty

For 2 years or 24,000 miles

Emissions Control System Warranty⁴⁾

Volkswagen of America, Inc. ("Volkswagen"), the authorized United States importer of Volkswagen vehicles, warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every

model year 2004 Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform at the time of sale with all applicable regulations of the United States Environmental Protection Agency ("EPA"), and

⁴⁾ These coverages are also included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty.



• is free from defects in material and workmanship which causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations for 2 years after the date of first use or delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee or until the vehicle has been driven 24,000 miles, whichever comes first. The following parts listed, if defective, could cause the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations:

- EVAP Canister
- Mass Air Flow Sensor Assembly
- Three-Way Catalytic Converter
- Engine Electronic Control Module and Power Supply Relay
- Electronic Feedback Controls, Sensors, Switches and Valves
- EVAP Canister Purge Valve
- Exhaust Manifold and Gaskets
- Exhaust Pipe Up to Catalytic Converter
- Fuel Filler Neck Restrictor
- Fuel Filler Cap and Gasket
- Fuel Injectors, Fuel Injector Lines and Gaskets and Pressure Regulator
- Fuel Tank

- Gravity Check Valve
- Knock Sensor
- Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)
- OBD System
- Camshaft Adjuster
- OBD Data Link Connector
- Oxygen Sensor
- PCV Valve
- EVAP Leak Detection Pump
- Secondary Air Injection Pump and Associated Controls
- Emission-Related Hoses, Gaskets, Clamps and other accessories used with the above components

The obligation of Volkswagen under this warranty is limited, however, to the following: If within this period a defect in material or workmanship causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations and the vehicle is brought to the workshop of any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii or Canada, the dealer will make repairs as may be required by these regulations free of charge. ◀

For 8 years or 80,000 miles

If the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, your Volkswagen dealer will repair or replace free-of-charge the following major emission control components only:

- Catalytic Converter
- Engine Electronic Control Module
- On Board Diagnostic Device ◀



Emissions Performance Warranty

For 2 years or 24,000 miles and 8 years or 80,000 miles

Emissions Performance Warranty⁵⁾

Volkswagen of America, Inc., ("Volkswagen") warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee of a **model year 2004** Volkswagen vehicle and any subsequent purchaser or lessee of the vehicle that if the following conditions are met, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii or Canada will remedy any nonconformity, as determined below, free-of-charge, under the following conditions:

- the vehicle fails to conform at any time during 24 months or 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first, to applicable emission inspection standards as determined by an EPA Ap-

proved State Inspection and Maintenance Test ("I/M Test"), or

- if the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, the vehicle fails an I/M Test resulting from a malfunction of a catalytic converter, engine electronic control module or on-board diagnostic device (OBD), and
- the failure of the I/M Test requires the vehicle owner to bear any penalty or other sanction, including the denial of the right to use the vehicle under local, state or federal law, and
- the vehicle has been maintained and operated in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions for proper maintenance and use. ◀

Instructions for proper maintenance and use

Instructions for proper maintenance are contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance Booklet. Time and mileage intervals at which maintenance is to be performed, may vary

from model to model. Instructions for proper use of the vehicle are contained in your Volkswagen Owner's Manual. ◀

Use of EPA certified replacement parts

Volkswagen may deny an emission performance warranty claim on the basis that a non-EPA certified replacement part was used in the maintenance or repair of the vehicle if Volkswagen can prove that the non-certified part is either defective in materials or work-

manship, or not equivalent from an emission standpoint to the original part, and you are not able to offer information that the part is either not defective or equivalent to the original part with respect to its emission performance. ◀

⁵⁾ These coverages may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty.



Warranty coverage for parts not scheduled for replacement

Any part which is not required to be replaced at maintenance intervals specified in the Volkswagen Maintenance Booklet is covered

by this warranty for the full warranty period. ◀

When to claim

You may raise a claim under this warranty immediately after your vehicle has failed an I/M Test if, as a result of that failure, you are required by law to repair the vehicle to avoid imposition of a penalty or cancellation of

your right to use the vehicle. You need not actually suffer the loss or lose the right to use your vehicle or pay for the repair before presenting your claim. ◀

Acceptance or denial of claim within 30 days

Claims may be presented only by bringing your vehicle to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, its territories or Canada. The dealer will honor or deny your claim within a reasonable time, not to exceed thirty (30) days, from the time at which your vehicle is presented for repair or within any time period specified by local, state or federal

law, whichever is shorter, except when a delay is caused by events not attributable to Volkswagen or the dealer. If the dealer denies your claim, you will be notified in writing of the reasons for rejecting the claim. If you do not receive notice of denial of your claim within the above time period, Volkswagen is required by law to honor the claim. ◀

Denial of claim for failure to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance or proper use

Under certain circumstances, your claim may be denied because you have failed to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. In determining whether you have complied with the instructions for scheduled maintenance and proper

use, Volkswagen may require you to furnish proof of compliance only with those maintenance instructions which Volkswagen has reason to believe were not performed and which could be the cause of the I/M Test failure. ◀



Record of scheduled maintenance

Volkswagen recommends that you keep a record of scheduled maintenance by making sure that the Maintenance Record contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet is validated at the approximate time or mileage intervals by the authorized Volkswagen dealer or other service facility which per-

formed the maintenance, or by furnishing proof upon request that you have performed the maintenance yourself at the approximate time or mileage intervals, that you have used proper parts, and that you were able to perform the maintenance properly yourself. ◀



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT 107 PONTIAC, MI

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC.
ATTENTION: RECALL
P.O. BOX 217022
AUBURN HILLS, MI 48321-7022





Complete Vehicle Identification Number

Last NameFirst NameInitialNumber

Street

Apt. No.CityStateZip Code

Please **PRINT** and give complete information



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT 107 PONTIAC, MI

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE



VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC.
ATTENTION: RECALL
P.O. BOX 217022
AUBURN HILLS, MI 48321-7022



Complete Vehicle Identification Number

Last Name

First Name

Initial

Number

Street

Apt. No.

City

State

Zip Code

Please **PRINT** and give complete information



Additional Information

Denial of warranty claim for other reasons

Additional information about the Federal Emissions Control Systems and the Federal Emissions Performance warranties.

Volkswagen may deny a claim on the basis that:

- the vehicle was abused, or
- the vehicle was maintained or used in a manner which included the improper installation of a component or the adjustment of parameters substantially outside the manufacturer's specifications for proper maintenance, or
- unscheduled maintenance was performed on your vehicle and in the course of such maintenance, components affecting your vehicle's emissions were removed or rendered inoperative, or
- contaminated fuel or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth in your Owner's Manual was used

Volkswagen will not deny a claim relating to:

- warranty work or pre-delivery service performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, or
- work performed in an emergency to rectify an unsafe condition attributable to Volkswagen, provided you have taken steps in a timely manner to put the vehicle back into a conforming condition, or
- the use of an uncertified part or to non-compliance with the instructions for proper maintenance and use which is not related to the I/M Test failure.



Tips

Maintenance, Repair or Replacement of Emission Control Devices and Systems may be Performed by any Automotive Service and Repair Establishment or Qualified Individual Using any Part Certified by the Environment Protection Agency (EPA).

- Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties.
- Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.
- These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, including loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.
- Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.
- You may obtain further information regarding the Emissions Performance Warranty or report violation of the terms of the Emissions Performance Warranty by contacting: Manager, Certification and Compliance Division (6405J), Warranty Claims, Environmental Protection Agency, Ariel Rios Building, 1200 Pennsylvania Avenue NW, Washington, DC 20460 ◀



California Emissions Warranties

California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

Your warranty rights and obligations:

The California Air Resources Board is pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your **model year 2004** vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Volkswagen must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Volkswagen will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

Manufacturer's warranty coverage:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.⁶⁾

If your vehicle fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test, all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Volkswagen to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your Emission Control System **PERFORMANCE WARRANTY**.

If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your short-term Emission Control System **DEFECTS WARRANTY**.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first

If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your long-term Emission Control System **DEFECTS WARRANTY**.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

⁶⁾ These coverages may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty



Some Volkswagen models with 2.0L engines may be specially equipped to meet California Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV) requirements. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of retail delivery of your vehicle. This represents your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY and DEFECTS WARRANTY.

Owner's warranty responsibilities:

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's Maintenance booklet. Volkswagen recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Volkswagen cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance.

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Volkswagen dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Volkswagen may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS REGARDING YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES, YOU SHOULD CONTACT VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC., CUSTOMER CARE CENTER AT 1 (800) 822-8987 OR THE

CALIFORNIA AIR RESOURCES BOARD AT P.O. BOX 8001, EL MONTE, CA 91734-2302.

Emissions Control System Defects Warranty:

Warranty for 3 years / 50,000 miles

Volkswagen of America, Inc., ("Volkswagen"), warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every model year 2004 Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen and certified for sale and registered in California:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform with all applicable requirements of the California Air Resources Board ("CARB") and
- is free from defects in material and workmanship which cause the vehicle to fail to conform with CARB requirements, including any defect which would cause the vehicle's on-board malfunction indicator to illuminate, for 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever comes first.

A warranted part is any part installed on a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine by the vehicle or engine manufacturer, or installed in a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle or engine which is subject to California emission standards.

Warranty for 7 years / 70,000 Miles Covering Certain Emission System Parts

The following emissions control system parts marked with "yes" are covered for 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever comes first.

Those marked with "no" are covered for 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

	Passat 1.8L	Passat 2.8L V6	Passat 4.0L W8	Passat TDI
Camshaft adjuster	yes	yes	yes	no
Fuel tank	yes	yes	yes	yes
Turbo charger	yes	no	no	yes
Charge air cooler	no	no	no	no



	Passat 1.8L	Passat 2.8L V6	Passat 4.0L W8	Passat TDI
Fuel injection pump	no	no	no	yes
Fuel injector with lift sensor	no	no	no	no
Power train control module (Diesel engine)	no	no	no	yes
Throttle body	yes	yes	yes	no
Air mass sensor	no	no	no	yes
Intake manifold	no	yes	yes	no
Front oxygen sensor	no	no	yes	no
Powertrain control module (gasoline engine)	yes	yes	yes	no
Rear oxygen sensor	no	no	yes	no
Exhaust manifold	yes	yes	yes	no
Front exhaust pipe	no	no	no	no
Secondary air injection pump	no	no	yes	no
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	yes	yes
Powertrain control module (transmission)	yes	yes	yes	yes

	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.0L	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 1.8L	Jetta, GTI VR6 2.8L	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle TDI
Camshaft adjuster	no	yes	yes	no
Fuel tank	yes	yes	yes	yes
Turbo charger	no	yes	no	yes
Charge air cooler	no	no	no	no
Fuel injection pump	no	no	no	yes
Fuel injector with lift sensor	no	no	no	no
Power train control module (Diesel engine)	no	no	no	yes
Throttle body	no	yes	no	no
Air mass sensor	no	no	no	yes
Intake manifold	yes	no	yes	no
Front oxygen sensor	no	no	no	no
Powertrain control module (gasoline engine)	yes	yes	yes	no
Rear oxygen sensor	no	no	no	no



	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.0L	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 1.8L	Jetta, GTI VR6 2.8L	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle TDI
Exhaust manifold	yes	yes	yes	no
Front exhaust pipe	no	no	no	no
Secondary air injection pump	no	no	no	no
Catalytic converter	yes	yes	yes	yes
Powertrain control module (transmission)	yes (New Beetle Con- vertible only)	yes	yes	yes



Emissions Performance Warranty

General

California maintains a mandatory emissions Inspection and Maintenance (I/M test) program requiring motor vehicles to be smog tested at regular intervals. If your vehicle fails to pass an I/M test performed by a Licensed I/M test station pursuant to the California Inspection and Maintenance Program within 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever comes first, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii or Canada, will perform free of charge any repairs necessary for the vehicle to pass the smog test. These repairs include diagnosis, replacement, repair, and adjustments. After the 3 year / 50,000 miles performance warranty has expired, an I/M test failure due to a

defect in a part which is warranted for 7 years / 70,000 miles is covered.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

Some Volkswagen models with 2.0L engines may be specially equipped to meet California **Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV)** requirements. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an I/M test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of retail delivery of your vehicle. This represents your Emission Control System **PERFORMANCE WARRANTY** and **DEFECTS WARRANTY**. ◀

Additional information about the California Emissions Control System and the California Emissions Performance Warranties

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to the original purchaser or the original lessee, if the vehicle is first

placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car prior to delivery, on the date it is first placed in service. ◀



Maintaining your vehicle

Volkswagen recommends that you use and maintain your vehicle in accordance with the instructions set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and Volkswagen Maintenance booklet and that you keep a record of your maintenance. Failure to maintain your vehicle according to the required maintenance schedule may cause the vehicle to exceed applicable emissions standards and

could result in denial of warranty coverage. However, Volkswagen will not deny a warranty claim solely on the basis of your failure to maintain the vehicle in accordance with these instructions or your failure to keep a record of your maintenance of the vehicle. We also recommend that you provide your maintenance records to the new owner whenever you sell your vehicle. ◀

Warranty coverage for diagnostic services

Repair and diagnostic services related to any repair covered by this warranty will be performed free of charge, if the vehicle is deliv-

ered to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii or Canada. ◀

Use of Genuine Volkswagen parts

Volkswagen recommends that Genuine Volkswagen parts be used as replacement parts for the maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control systems. Use of replacement parts which are not equivalent to Genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability may impair the effec-

tiveness of emission control systems. Although use of parts other than Genuine Volkswagen parts does not invalidate these warranties, Volkswagen assumes no liability under these warranties for failure of such parts and damage to other parts caused by such failure. ◀

Warranty coverage for parts not scheduled for inspection or replacement

Any warranted part which is not scheduled for inspection or replacement is covered for the warranty period. Any such parts repaired

or replaced under warranty are warranted for the remaining warranty period. ◀

Warranty coverage of parts scheduled for replacement

A part which is installed in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is warranted until the next

scheduled replacement interval or until the vehicle has been driven 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first. ◀



Warranty coverage for parts scheduled for inspection

A part which is scheduled only for inspection in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions for scheduled maintenance of the ve-

hicle is covered for the duration of these warranties. ◀

Maintenance and repairs performed by independent service shops

Without invalidating these warranties, you may choose to have maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components performed by any automotive service establishment or individual qualified to perform such services. However, the cost of such services is not covered by these warranties except in emergencies. If the independent

service establishment finds a warrantable defect, you may deliver the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer and have the defect corrected free of charge. Volkswagen will not be liable for any expenses which you have incurred at the independent service establishment, except for emergency repairs. ◀

Emergency repairs

In an emergency when an authorized Volkswagen dealer is not reasonably available to perform a warranty repair, the repair may be performed at any available service establishment, or by the owner, using any replacement part. Volkswagen will reimburse the owner for expenses including diagnosis not to exceed Volkswagen's suggested retail price for the warranted part and a labor charge based upon Volkswagen's recommended time allowance for the warranty repair multiplied by the labor rate per hour appropriate for the area where the warranty repair was

performed. In order to receive reimbursement of such expenses, you must keep all replaced parts and receipts and present them to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in support of your claim. These emergency warranty service procedures also apply in the event the servicing Volkswagen dealer does not have replacement parts available within a reasonable time not to exceed 30 days, in order to perform the warranty repair or, if the servicing Volkswagen dealer is unable to complete the repairs within 30 days from the time you present the vehicle for repairs. ◀

Coverage of non-warranty parts

If failure of a warranted part causes damage to a part not covered by warranty, the non-

warranted part will also be replaced free of charge. ◀



Damage caused by tampering, use of improper fuel, abuse, neglect and improper maintenance are not covered

These warranties do not cover any damage to the vehicle caused by tampering with emission controls, use of fuel containing lead, or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth

in the Owner's Manual, and abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. Diagnosis and repair of such damage are at the expense of the owner. ◀

Notice of denial of warranty claim

If you are not notified within 30 days that a performance warranty claim is not valid,

then Volkswagen is required to repair the vehicle free of charge. ◀

Implied warranties

Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Incidental and consequential damages

These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, such as loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential

damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

In the event you have not received the services promised in these warranties, please follow the procedures described in this brochure under the title "Customer CARE". ◀



Customer CARE

Dealer assistance

If you have questions about the service you have received, we suggest that you first discuss them with the service personnel at your authorized Volkswagen dealer. You may want to speak to the Service Manager or directly to the owner of the dealership.

It is their business to be concerned about your satisfaction and goodwill. Since they are closest to the situation, they are in the best position to quickly resolve any concerns you may have. ◀

When to notify the manufacturer

Your satisfaction with our product is very important to us, and we would like to make certain that we have had the opportunity to work with you and your dealer to resolve your concerns.

If your concerns are not resolved to your satisfaction by the dealer, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc., immediately by calling our toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you prefer to write, please use the following address:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309

You can also contact us using our Internet address:

www.vw.com.

Simply click on "Contact Us".

When you call or write, please provide the following information:

- Your name, address and telephone number
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage
- Dealer's name and location
- Nature of complaint or problem
- Original repair order (retain a copy for your records) or pertinent documents if you are writing to us

A Customer CARE Representative will gather and carefully review all facts relating to your request for assistance. After this review is completed, the Customer CARE Representative will inform you of any assistance that the company will be able to provide.

Please note that as part of our continuing effort to maintain the highest quality of service to our Customers, supervisors will occasionally monitor the quality of telephone calls between our Customers and representatives. We hope you understand our interest in providing the best possible service. ◀



Repairs not covered by warranty

In some circumstances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer financial assistance toward repairs or expenses not covered by Volkswagen of America, Inc.'s Limited New Vehicle Warranties.

In certain instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may pay for such repairs in accordance with the terms of service action campaigns it will conduct from time to time. In the event of a service action, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will notify you by mail and request that you bring your vehicle to your nearest dealer for repair free of charge.

If you have not recently changed your address and Volkswagen United States has your current address on file, you will receive notification automatically. If you are concerned that you may not have received notice concerning a particular service action, please check with your dealer to determine whether

your vehicle is eligible for any repair free of charge.

In other instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer assistance with a repair beyond warranty on a case-by-case basis. If you believe that your vehicle needs a repair not covered by warranty which Volkswagen of America, Inc. should pay for in part or in whole, please discuss the request with your dealer. If you are not satisfied with your dealer's decision, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc. Customer CARE by telephone or in writing. Your request should provide the vehicle identification number, the mileage, maintenance history and an explanation of why you believe that the repair should be performed free of charge. Your request should be accompanied by all available maintenance and repair records which you have retained. A Customer CARE Representative will review your request and advise you of our decision. ◀



BBB AUTO LINE

BBB AUTO LINE dispute settlement services

If your dealer or Customer CARE Representative does not resolve your product concern to your satisfaction or if you do not wish to present your concern to either of them, you may take advantage of the mediation and arbitration services of the Better Business Bureau. This program is called BBB AUTO LINE and is available to you free of charge, on a nationwide basis as long as your vehicle has been driven less than 24,000 miles and has not been in use for more than 2 years. Not every claim is eligible; there are some age and mileage limitations, so please check with your local Better Business Bureau ("BBB") regarding your claim.

The BBB AUTO LINE program has two parts. The first part is mediation. Mediation means that the BBB staff will facilitate negotiations between the parties in an effort to bring your claim to a mutually acceptable resolution. You do not have to participate in mediation if you would rather proceed immediately to arbitration. Arbitration is the other part of BBB AUTO LINE. Arbitration is a process by which an impartial person makes a decision on your claim. The arbitrators are not connected with the automobile industry and serve on a voluntary basis.

If you do not agree with the mediated resolution and/or have opted to arbitrate, an arbitration hearing will be scheduled. You may attend the hearing in person, be represented by an attorney, bring witnesses, and give supporting evidence. Instead of appearing personally, you may request a written or even a telephone arbitration hearing.

If you wish to use BBB AUTO LINE, please call the following toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 955-5100

When you call the local office of the "BBB", its staff will need the following information:

- Your name, address and telephone number
- Make, model and Vehicle Identification Number of your vehicle (VIN)
- Delivery date and current mileage
- Nature of complaint or problem

The "BBB" will follow-up on your complaint; and if it cannot be mediated, they will arrange an arbitration hearing.

A decision will be made by the arbitrator within 3 days of the hearing (typically a decision is made 40 days from the date you filed your claim with "BBB").

You then have the opportunity to accept or reject the decision. If you accept the decision, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will be bound by the decision and fulfill its obligation within the time specified by the arbitrator.

If you reject the decision:

- 1 - You are free to pursue other legal remedies available under state and federal law.
- 2 - The manufacturer will not have to comply with any part of the decision.

California residents

Additional information relating to your rights to arbitrate warranty claims under the BBB AUTO LINE Arbitration Program is provided in the Owner Information about Consumer Protection Laws booklet which is presented to you by your dealer when you take delivery of your new vehicle. ◀



Service Publications

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

Updated service information you can obtain

Volkswagen monitors product performance in the field and regularly sends dealers the latest service information about Volkswagen vehicles. Now you too, can get these bulletins.

Bulletins cover a wide variety of subjects: the proper use and care of your car, costly repairs, inexpensive repairs or adjustments which, if done early, may avoid costly future repairs. Some bulletins describe repairs about new or unexpected conditions. Others describe improved repair procedures or parts improvements. All of this information can also help a qualified technician better service your vehicle.

Most bulletins apply to conditions affecting a small number of vehicles. Your dealer or a qualified technician may have to determine if a specific bulletin applies to your vehicle. You can order Volkswagen bulletins, Volkswagen repair information and Volkswagen Owner's Literature 24 hours / 7 days a week on the Internet from the Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.vw.dds1td.com

Or if you prefer, you can contact our literature distribution service at:

Telephone: 1 (800) 544-8021

Fax: 1 (800) 572-1438

What you will also find on the website

- A list of Volkswagen bulletins for 1985 and later model years, covering all North American specification Volkswagen models.
- Ordering and pricing information on how to buy specific bulletins.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Repair Manuals on paper format or CD ROM.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Electrical Wiring Diagrams.
- Owner's Manuals
- Maintenance Booklets
- Warranty Manuals
- Sound System Manuals



WARNING

These bulletins are intended for qualified technicians. They are not meant for the CASUAL do-it-yourselfer. Qualified technicians have the equipment, tools, safety instructions, and know-how to do a job properly and safely. Improperly performed repairs or maintenance can adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, possibly leading to accident or injury. They may also impair the economy, durability or reliability of your vehicle and may void the warranty of your car. If you are not sure that you can perform a job properly and safely, you should not risk trying to do so.



Tire Manufacturers

List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act of 1975 and regulations issued pursuant to the act require that a tire warranty pamphlet be placed in every new vehicle prior to sale.

To assist you in obtaining the related warranty information, the following list of tire manufacturers and addresses is being provided.

Tire Manufacturers

Dunlop Tire Corp.

1144 East Market Street

Akron, OH 44316

Tel.: 1 (800) 548-4714

Bridgestone/Firestone Inc.

1 Bridgestone Park

Nashville, TN 37214

Tel.: 1 (800) 356-4644

Goodyear Tire & Rubber Co.

1144 East Market Street

Akron, OH 44316

Tel.: 1 (800) 321-2136

Continental General

1800 Continental Blvd.

Charlotte, NC 28273

Tel.: 1 (800) 847-3349

Michelin Tire Corp.

P.O. Box 19001

Greenville, SC 29602-9001

Tel.: 1 (800) 887-0662

Pirelli Tires North America

300 George Street, 5th Floor

New Haven, CT 06511

Tel.: 1 (800) 747-3554

Uniroyal Goodrich Tire Co.

P.O. Box 19001

Greenville, SC 29602-9001

Tel.: 1 (800) 521-9796

Afterword

It has always been Volkswagen's policy to continuously improve its products. Volkswagen, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

All rights reserved.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Volkswagen of America, Inc. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Text and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without consent of Volkswagen AG.

Printed in Germany

© 2003 Volkswagen AG



For the sake of environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).



2.1 2004 Jetta Wagon

Safety first
Important Information
about the
-Safety belts
-Airbags
-Seats
-Child safety

Please read this important information before reading your booklet.

Vehicle Equipment

This manual describes all the equipment intended to be offered at the time of printing. Some of the equipment may be available at a later date or not at all.



Please note that items marked with an asterisk may be standard on certain models, optional on others or not available on your model.

Illustrations

Each illustration in the manual shows a feature and / or equipment which your vehicle may or may not have, depending on the model. The illustrations are simply to show you how a feature looks and its function.

Indication of directions

Whenever a direction is specified (for example: left, right, forward, backward, etc.), you should imagine yourself as sitting in the vehicle facing in the driving direction. If something is explained which is different from this position, it will be clearly identified.

Table of Contents

On the following page, you will find the Table of Contents which describes all the features of your vehicle in the order they appear in this manual.

WARNINGS



WARNINGS

concern safety and are highlighted like this throughout this manual.

Texts printed in bold type refer to possible damage to your vehicle, or to other important information.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Welcome	2
Safety first	2
Safety belts	3
Airbag system	17
Child safety	30
Head restraints	49
Front seats	50
Alphabetical Index	53

Welcome

Dear Volkswagen Owner,

This booklet contains important information, tips and suggestions on occupant safety.

We've prepared this booklet in order to summarize what you need to know about such topics as safety belts, airbags, seats for children and infants, child safety and head restraints.

Please make certain that you follow the suggestions and WARNINGS in this booklet – it's in your own interest and in the interest of all your passengers.

However, please note, that important safety information regarding your vehicle and its operation will also be found in all other booklets.

Please be sure that this manual always remains with your VOLKSWAGEN whenever you lend your vehicle to another person or if you sell it so that this and other important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.

Remember – safety first!

Safety first

Your safety and the safety of your passengers shouldn't be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident. The following is a listing of just a few of the safety features in your Volkswagen:

- sophisticated safety belts with tensioners
- optimized safety belt geometry through safety belt anchorages on front seats
- safety belt height adjusters
- front airbags
- side airbags in the front seats
- Side Curtain ProtectionTM*
- special seat pan structure
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features can't work as a system if they are not always properly adjusted and properly used!

The following sections provide important information about why these features are important, how they work to help protect you and your passengers and how they must be adjusted and used to get the greatest benefit and reduce the likelihood of injury.

The sections also contain important **WARNINGS** which you and your passengers must always heed in order to reduce the risk of personal injury.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Safety belts



Always wear your safety belts!



WARNING

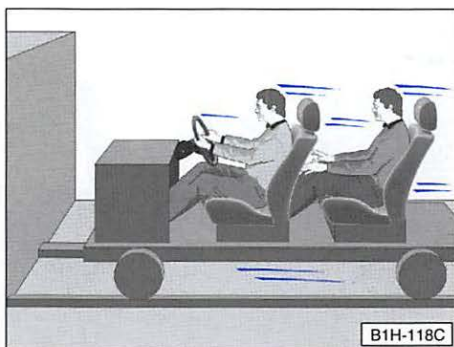
● **Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the potential for serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always properly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.**

● **Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons should also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother – throughout the entire pregnancy.**

This section explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them properly.

Please read all the information given, and always observe the following instructions and WARNINGS.

For information on child safety see page 30.



Why safety belts work

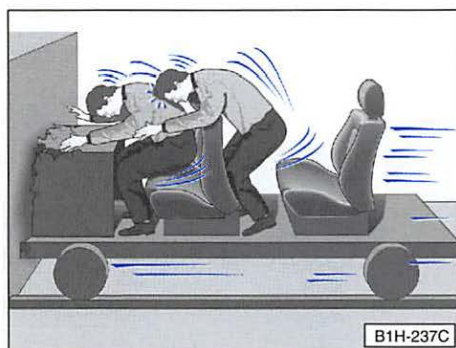
Safety belts can't work unless they are worn and worn properly.

The illustration above shows the passengers on a "vehicle" headed for a brick wall. They're not using safety belts.

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy "kinetic energy."

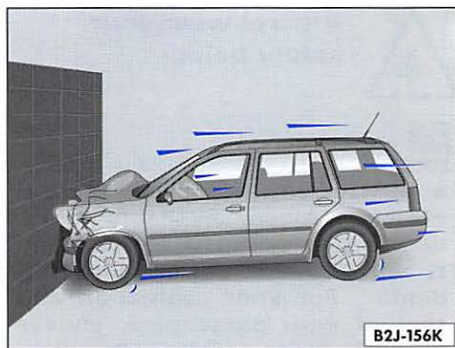
The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicles' weight, the more energy there is to be "absorbed" in an accident.

For details see next pages.



Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because these passengers are not using safety belts, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them – here, the wall.



The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision.

Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2000 lbs, or 1000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also continue to move forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact.



Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, dashboard, windshield, or whatever else is in the way. Their impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the collision.

Don't rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags for the driver and front seat passenger, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, still have to wear safety belts – regardless of whether their seating position has an airbag.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.



Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also other passengers. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver or front seat passenger.



Safety belts protect

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crumple zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the forces on the body become more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other types of accidents. So, whether you are on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too.

Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in an accident. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

The following pages provide important instructions to enable you to use safety belts properly. **Be sure to read and follow the instructions carefully. Heed all WARNINGS.**

To further increase the safety for the front passengers, the vehicle is equipped with a supplemental airbag system. See page 17.

The safety belts provided must nevertheless be worn because the front airbags are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in some cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle.



Belt warning system

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.

After the ignition is switched on, the warning tone will come on for about 6 seconds along with a warning light in the instrument cluster if the driver has not fastened his or her safety belt. As soon as the driver has fastened his or her belt, the warning tone will stop and the warning light will go out.

If the driver has not buckled-up within about 24 seconds after the warning tone has stopped, the warning tone will sound again for about 6 seconds. The warning tone will sound repeatedly for about 6 seconds at 24 second intervals until the driver has buckled-up. The safety belt warning system is active for about 5 minutes and during this time the warning light in the instrument cluster will stay on.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

How to wear safety belts properly

Safety belts must always be properly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.



WARNING

Always fasten your safety belts before driving off. Always make sure your passengers are properly restrained – even those sitting in the rear.

Safety belts can work only when used properly. Never wear safety belts in any other way than illustrated and described in this section. Always observe the following precautions:

- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.



WARNING continued

- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with proper positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware. Always keep belt buckles free of any obstruction that may prevent secure locking.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt portion. However, clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts periodically. If belts show damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors, have them replaced.

⚠ WARNING continued

● **Keep the belts clean.**
Dirty belts may not work properly – see also *"Cleaning and protection"*, Booklet 3.2.

● **Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.** Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen.

● **Safety belt anchorages that have been loaded in an accident must be inspected by a qualified workshop or an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**

● **Never modify, disassemble, or try to repair your safety belts.**

Seating capacity

Your Jetta Wagon has 5 seating positions, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are seat belts available. Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is correctly restrained with a separate seat belt.

Lap-shoulder belt

The front and rear seats have three-point safety belts which have a convertible locking feature in addition to the emergency locking feature. The convertible locking feature is used when a child seat* is installed, see page 36.

The retractors in the combination lap-shoulder belts allow the system to adjust to your size and movements as long as the pull on the belt is slow.

Hard braking or a collision locks the belt. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve.

Fastening the rear center safety belt

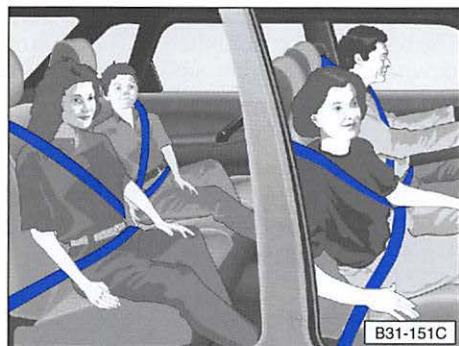
Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt as described in this chapter.

⚠ WARNING

● **The rear center three-point safety belt cannot protect a passenger if the seat backrest to which it is attached is not securely latched. The passenger would not be properly restrained and would move forward during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in an accident.**

A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by striking the interior of the passenger compartment or by the safety belt itself which can be displaced from stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen. See page 11.

● **Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used, Booklet 3.1, chapter "Rear seat".**



Fastening the safety belt

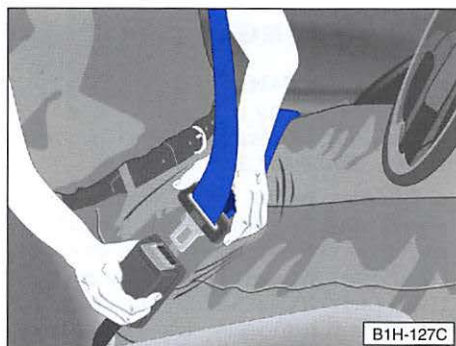
- **Adjust your seat before fastening the safety belt. See page 50.**



WARNING

Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- To fasten, grasp belt tongue and pull the belt in a continuous slow motion across your chest and lap.

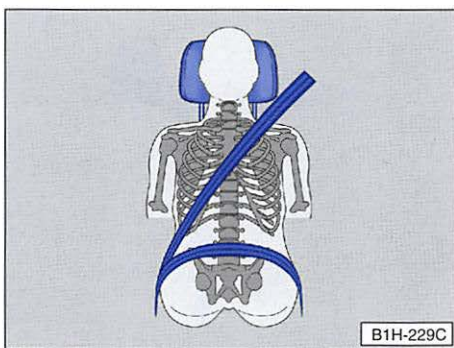
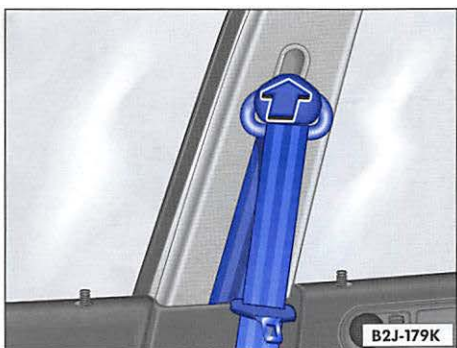


- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle on the inboard side of the seat. Push down until it is securely locked with an audible click. **Pull belt to check!**



WARNING

- **Always make sure the safety belt tongue is inserted into the buckle for the same seating position.**
- **Attaching the safety belt to the buckle for another seat could reduce safety belt effectiveness and cause injury.**



Safety belt height adjusters for the front seats and the rear outer seating positions* can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt. This feature will help you properly position the shoulder portion of the safety belt across your shoulder.

- To adjust the height of the safety belt, press the upper part of the handle in the direction of the arrow, hold it in this position and then slide the height adjuster up or down until the shoulder portion of the safety belt is positioned directly over the center of your shoulder – **it must never rest against the neck** (see right illustration).
- Pull on the shoulder belt to check whether the belt anchor is securely locked in place.

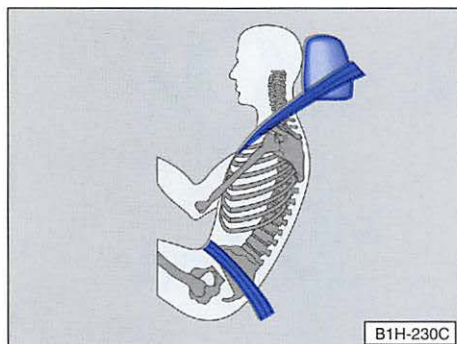
Wearing your safety belt properly – see page 8.

The shoulder belt must be positioned over the shoulder. It must never rest against the neck and must fit against your body. The lap belt must be worn low and tight across the pelvis. See illustration above. Pull belt tight.

The lap belt portion must never pass over the stomach or abdomen.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS on next page.

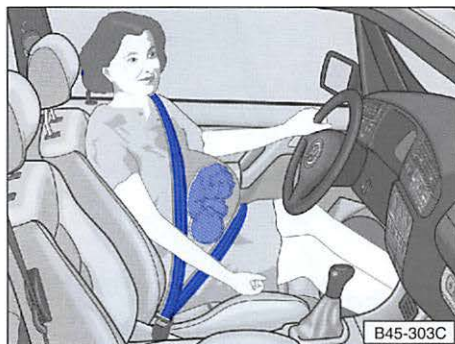


⚠ WARNING

- Always position your safety belt properly over your body for maximum safety. An improperly positioned safety belt can cause serious injury in an accident.

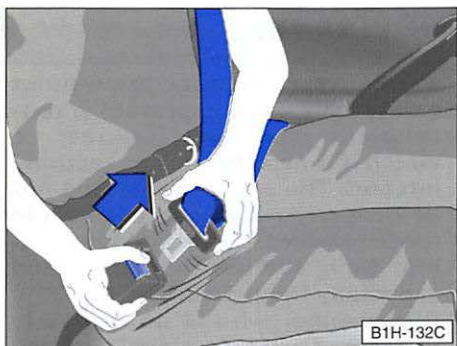
- Safety belts worn too loose will let your body move too far forward in a collision.

A loose belt can also shift its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable soft tissue and cause serious injury.



⚠ WARNING

Pregnant women should especially make sure to wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen. The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother – throughout the entire pregnancy.



Never let the belt remain over a rear seat back that has been folded forward. The rear belt tensioner will be activated unnecessarily in an accident and then have to be replaced.

The belt tensioner will not activate in a light frontal collision insufficient to actuate the tensioner or in any side, rollover, or rear-end collision.



WARNING

- **Safety belt systems including belt tensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal and installation of this system. Therefore, any work on the safety belt system must be performed only by an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**
- **The belt tensioner system works for one accident only. If belt tensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.**

Unfastening the safety belt

- Push the orange release button on the buckle. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle.
- Let the belt to wind up on the retractor as you guide belt tongue to its stowed position.

Belt pre-tensioner and load limiter

The retractors for the front three-point safety belts and for the rear outboard three-point safety belts are equipped with belt pre-tensioners. The retractors for the front three-point safety belts are also equipped with load limiters.

Sensors activate the belt pre-tensioners in frontal collisions when deceleration is high enough. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

The belt pre-tensioner can only be activated once.

The belt pre-tensioner will not activate in a frontal collision when the deceleration is not high enough, or in any side impact, rollover, or rear-end collision.

The load limiter feature helps to reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

Notes

- When the safety belt tensioner is activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- Observe all safety regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be scrapped. Your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers are familiar with these regulations and can perform this service for you.

Rear center safety belt

The center seating position in the rear is equipped with a three-point safety belt.

Fastening the rear center safety belt

Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt as described in this chapter.



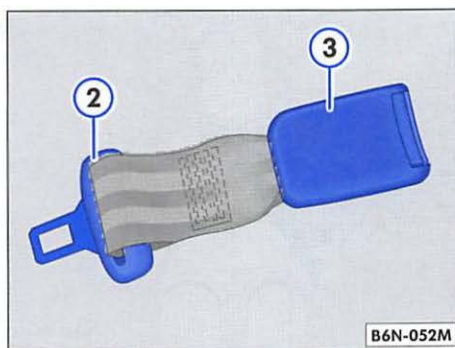
WARNING

● The rear center three-point safety belt cannot protect a passenger if the seat backrest to which it is attached is not securely latched. The passenger would not be properly restrained and would move forward during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in an accident.

A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by striking the interior of the passenger compartment or by the safety belt itself which can be displaced from stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen. See page 11.

● Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used, *Booklet 3.1*, chapter "Rear seat".

Safety Belt Extender



Always Wear Your Safety Belts!

If a safety belt is **too short** because of body size or driving position, even when the three point safety belt is fully extended and when the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if so equipped) is in the lowest position, you can use a seat belt extender. This extender can be used only if existing belt is not long enough. The extender adds approximately 8 inches (200 mm) of length.

The **vehicle safety belt buckle** for the driver and front seat passenger have switches that tell the airbag control module if the safety belt is being used or not. If the safety belt is being used, the front airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of deceleration than if the belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it is possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used, see page 17 for details.

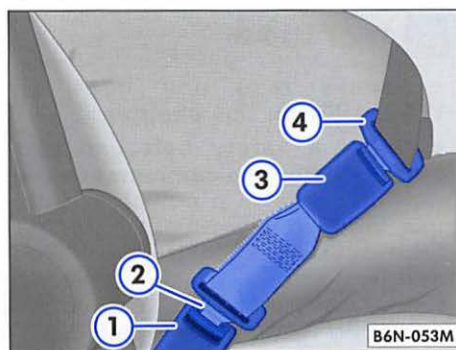
For that reason, always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely.

See your VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance if the extender is required.



WARNING

- Always read and heed all **WARNINGS** in this chapter.
- Using a safety belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury in a collision. Only use when the safety belt is not long enough when its worn low and snug, and in the recommended seating position. Remove and stow when not needed.
- Never use the safety belt extender if you can fasten the safety belt without it.
- Safety belts can work only when used properly. Never wear safety belts in any other way than illustrated and described in this chapter.
- A driver or passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by striking the interior of the passenger compartment or by the safety belt itself which can be displaced from stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Never use more than one extender with a safety belt. The use of more than one extender can change the way the safety belt passes over the body and can cause serious injury.
- Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint.
- Never leave the safety belt extender attached to the vehicle safety belt latch when it is not needed and being used because the airbag control module will not receive the correct signal from the safety belt latch.



Fastening the safety belt extender

- Adjust your seat and head restraint before fastening the safety belt. See pages 49 and 50.

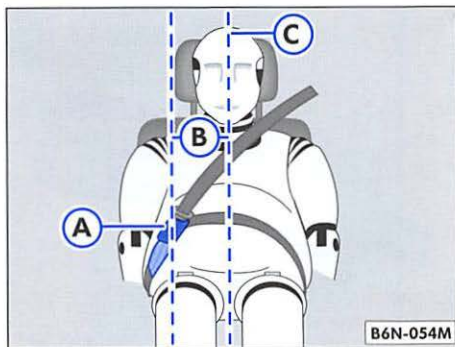


WARNING

Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- To use the safety belt extender, insert the metal tongue of the extender (2) (latch plate) into the respective safety belt buckle (1).
- Then, grasp belt tongue of the safety belt (4) and pull the belt in a continuous slow motion across your chest and lap.
- Insert the safety belt tongue (4) into the buckle of the extender (3). Push down until it is securely locked with an audible click. Make sure the safety belt or the extender is not twisted.

Pull belt to check!



A – Front edge of buckle

B – Distance of buckle and body-centerline,
(less than 6 inches (15 cm))

C – Bodycenterline



WARNING

- Never use the extender unless it is physically required in order to wear the vehicle's safety belt.
- Never use the extender if the distance (B) between the front edge of the extender buckle (A) and the occupant's body centerline (C) to be less than 6 inches (15 cm) – see illustration!
- Always make sure the safety belt tongue is inserted into the buckle for the same seating position.
- Attaching the safety belt to the buckle for another seat could reduce safety belt effectiveness and cause injury.

Airbag system

Your vehicle has **two front and two side airbags**, one front and one side airbag for each front seat occupant.

Additionally your vehicle is equipped with **two Side Curtain Protection's™**. The Side Curtain Protection™ covers the window area on the front and rear doors on both sides of the vehicle.



WARNING

● **To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers should always sit in an upright position, should not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**

● **See "Importance of proper seating position" in this section at pages 19 and 26 and heed all WARNINGS.**

● **Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye. For seat adjustment, see page 50 .**

The safety belt buckle for the driver and front seat passenger have switches that tell the airbag control module if the safety belt is being used or not. If the safety belt is being used, the front airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of deceleration than if the belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it is possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used.

For that reason, always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely, see page 15.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

An airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. It is part of the overall vehicle safety system. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts. See pages 3 to 13.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, it can cause swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions.



WARNING

● **Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.**

● **Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.**

● **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets or even large and bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "Airbag" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash especially when the airbags inflate.**



Always read and heed all WARNINGS and more details on next page.

**WARNING continued**

● **Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.**

● **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbags or the front airbag during braking or sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury particularly when the seat is reclined.**

System components

The airbag system consists of the following:

- electronic control module,
- an inflatable airbag with gas generator inside the steering wheel,
- an inflatable airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger,
- supplemental side airbags in the backrest padding of the front seats,
- supplemental Side Curtain Protection™* above the side windows,
- an indicator light in the instrument cluster, "Warning / Indicator lights", **Booklet 3.1**.



The indicator light in the instrument cluster (readiness light) will light up for a few seconds each time the ignition is switched on. The light monitors the electronic control module, sensor circuits, and system wiring.

The system must be inspected if the indicator light:

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out after a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, or
- comes on while driving.

In the event of a system malfunction, the indicator light will first start flashing to catch the driver's attention and then stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected.

**WARNING**

If any of these conditions occur, have the system inspected immediately by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer. Otherwise, the airbag may not work properly in case of a frontal impact.

Some other important points to know

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When the system is activated, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

WARNING

● **The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.**

● **To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.**

● **If you are in an accident in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.**

● **Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes or into any cuts or scratches.**

● **If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.**

Importance of proper seating position

In a collision airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags could injure you if you are not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times. By keeping room between your body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions. See page 50 for information on the adjustment of the front seats and also "*Front seats*", **Booklet 3.1**, for details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls. It's especially important that children be properly restrained. See chapter "*Child safety*", page 30.

WARNING

● **Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in an accident.**

● **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher. You will also receive serious or fatal injuries from the airbag if you are up against it or too close to it when it inflates.**



Always read and heed all WARNINGS on next pages.

WARNING continued

● To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. See "How to wear the safety belts properly" in this Booklet.

● Children age 12 or younger should always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates. Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.

● Adjust the front seats properly.

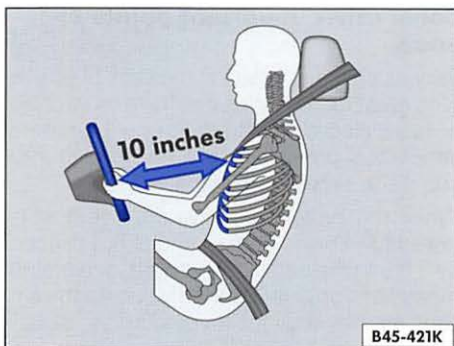
– Never ride with the backrest reclined.

– Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel.

– Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.

– Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.

There is a lot that you and your passengers can do to help the individual safety features installed in your Volkswagen work together as a system.



B45-421K

Adjusting the driver's seat

For detailed steps for adjusting the driver's seat please see "Front Seats" on page 50. We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat as follows:

- adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals all the way while keeping your knee slightly bent.
- adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
- adjust the steering wheel – see below and chapter "Adjustable steering column", **Booklet 3.1**.
- the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel must be **at least 10 inches (25 cm) or more**. See illustration above.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS on next pages.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**
- **If it is impossible for you to sit at least 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) may permit you to have an on/off switch for the airbag installed. For address and telephone number of NHTSA – see below:**

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at:

1-800-424-9393

(or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area)

or write to:

NHTSA,

**U.S. Department of Transportation,
Washington, D.C. 20590.**

Adjusting the steering wheel

For detailed steps for adjusting the steering wheel please see "*Adjustable steering column*", **Booklet 3.1.**

Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face. The steering wheel should be adjusted so that you can hold the outer rim of the steering wheel comfortably with your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions.

⚠ WARNING

- **Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in an accident.**
- **Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub.**

Adjusting the passenger's seat

For detailed steps for adjusting the passenger's seat please see "*Front Seats*" on page 50.

We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat as follows:

- backrest upright (**never** reclined)
- place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat
- adjust the passenger's seat as far as possible to the rear of the fore and aft adjustment range.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.**
- **Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. If the airbag inflates and your feet are on the instrument panel or on the seat, your could receive serious personal injuries.**

Child restraints on the front seat – important things to know

All children, especially 12 years and younger should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

- **Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**
- **Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**

A child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because children are generally better protected – when properly restrained according to their age and size – in a rear seating position, we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat. See "Child Safety" on page 30.

WARNING

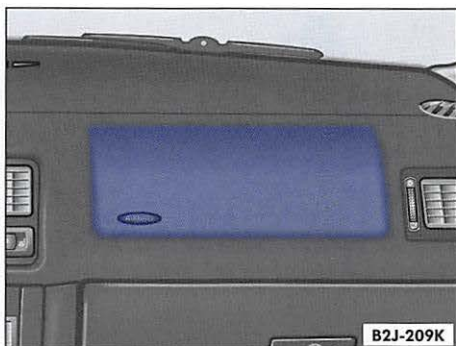
Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child. Install forward-facing child seats on the rear seat.

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child seat on the front seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- **make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
- **For more important information on the use of child restraints in your VOLKSWAGEN, see "child seats", page 30, in this Booklet.**



Front airbags

The airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel hub and is marked "AIRBAG." The airbag for the front passenger's seat is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment and is also marked with "AIRBAG." See illustration.

It is very important to remember that **front airbags** only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal accidents in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to activate the airbags.

Front airbags are not activated...

- if the ignition is switched off
- in side collisions
- in rear-end collisions
- in rollovers.

Front airbags may not inflate in certain frontal collisions. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of proper airbag operation.

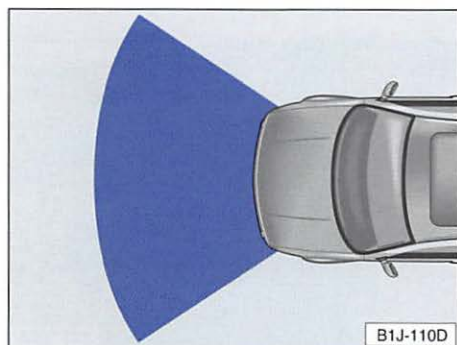
The front airbags can only provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when...

- safety belts are worn properly,
- the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag
- and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Airbags do not protect the lower part of the body.

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide added protection as intended.

For more details see next pages.



How the front airbag system works

Both front airbags inflate only in some frontal collisions occurring within the approximate area indicated in the illustration. The front airbags will not inflate in frontal collisions in which vehicle deceleration is not high enough, or in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one accident and another.

Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, and etc.

The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the accident.



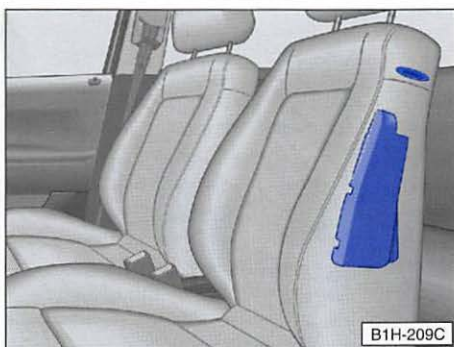
When the system is activated, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger.

All this takes place within the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper torso.

The airbags will deflate immediately after the deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again.

When the system is activated, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.



Side airbags

The **side airbags** are in the backrest padding for the front seats (see illustration) and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper torso on that side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The outboard side of each front backrest is marked with the word "AIRBAG."

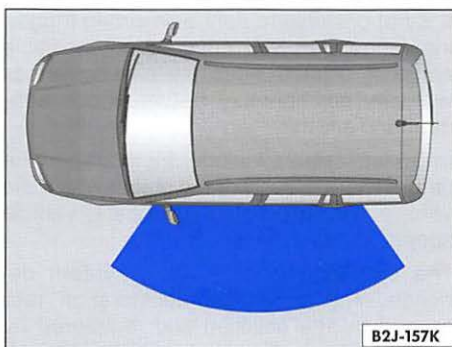
WARNING

To be sure the side airbags can deploy in a side impact:

- **Never place protective seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by VOLKSWAGEN. Since the side airbags deploy out of the side of the seatback, they would not be able to deploy and protect properly. See Booklet 3.1 for more details.**

- **Do not use additional seat cushions that cover or interfere with the areas where the side airbags inflate.**

- **Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**



The side airbags inflate only in some side collisions occurring within the approximate area indicated in the illustration.

The side airbags will not inflate...

- if the ignition is switched off
- in frontal collisions
- in side collisions in which vehicle deceleration is not high enough
- in rear collisions
- in rollovers.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of proper airbag operation.

Under some accident conditions, both front and side airbags may inflate.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

How the supplemental side airbag system works

In a side collision the supplemental side airbags can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body on the side of the car that is struck in a side collision.

In order to assure this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye during a collision.

It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one accident and another.

Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, and etc.

The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the accident.

When the supplemental side airbag is activated, it breaks through a seam on the side of the seatback identified by the AIRBAG label. It inflates between the side trim panel and the passenger within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children. See also "Child safety", on page 30 in this Booklet.



WARNING continued

- **a child must never rest his/her head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. An inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury.**
- **see "Importance of proper seating position" in this section at pages 19 and 26 and heed all WARNINGS.**



WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates,

- **always sit in an upright position and do not lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.**
- **always make sure that safety belts are worn properly,**

Importance of proper seating position

In a collision supplemental side airbags must inflate within a fraction of a second and with considerable force. In order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times. By keeping room between your body and the side of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain side collisions.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS on next pages.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to maintain an upright and proper seating position will increase the risk of personal injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates. To reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by an inflating supplemental side airbag:

- **Never lean against the door and over the area where the side airbag is located.**
- **Never let anyone to place their hand, leg or face near the supplemental side airbag.**
- **Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand out of the window or lean against the door.**
- **Never let anyone sitting in the rear seat hold onto the sides of the front seat backrest.**

Some other important points to know

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

⚠ WARNING

● Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

⚠ WARNING continued

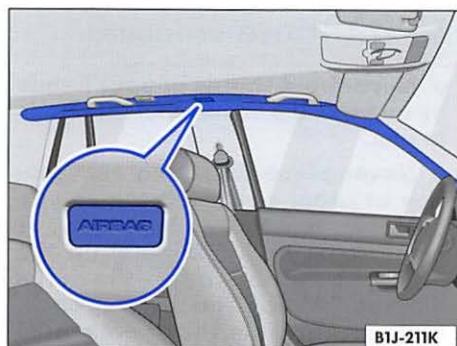
● Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.

● Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "Airbag" on the seat backrests or between those areas and yourself (an umbrella, bag, etc.). Such objects can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side airbag inflates.

● Always prevent heavy objects from knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks. This could damage the side airbag systems and they would not deploy in case of an accident!

● Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.

● Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbags during braking or sudden maneuvers. Objects near the supplemental side airbag can become projectiles and cause injury particularly when the seat is reclined.



B1J-211K

Side Curtain Protection™*

The **Side Curtain Protection™*** is located on the right and left sides above the doors and behind the headliner and behind the front door column trim. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG" in the upper portion of the center door column.

The bag will expand to cover the side windows and door column and thus help protect both front and rear occupants.

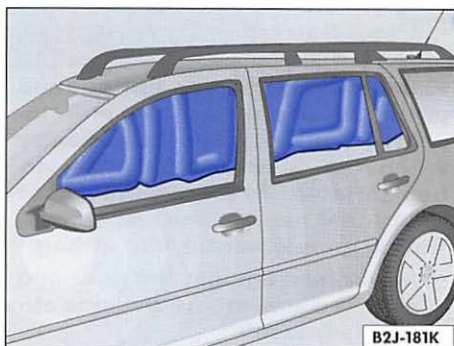
The inflated airbag will cushion the lateral movement of vehicle occupants by means of the controlled discharge of propellant under load. This will help reduce the risk of upper torso and head injuries on the side where the airbag deploys.

When the side airbag deploys, the Side Curtain Protection™* on the same side will deploy automatically.

Please refer to page 18 of this Booklet for information on functional reliability and potential system malfunctions.

The area into which the airbag expands must be kept clear to ensure that the Side Curtain Protection™* can provide this additional protection.

Please observe the following WARNINGS in order to make certain that you are optimally protected by the Side Curtain Protection™*:



B2J-181K



WARNING

- Do not hang any items other than lightweight clothing from the clothes hooks in the vehicle. Clothing pockets must never contain any heavy, sharp-cornered objects. Never use hangers to hang clothing from the hooks.

- Never allow any persons, animals or objects to be positioned between vehicle occupants and the area into which the Side Curtain Protection™ inflates. Occupants must never place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the Side Curtain Protection™ emerges. Nor must any objects be allowed to obstruct this area. Keeping this area clear will allow the Side Curtain Protection™ to deploy freely.

For the same reason, only factory-installed sun shades or, in the case of shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, only genuine Volkswagen sun shades can be used.

- The airbag system will only help protect occupants for a single accident. The system must be replaced if it has deployed.

Care, Service and Disposal of Airbags

Parts of the airbag system have been installed at different places on your Volkswagen. Servicing or repairing in an area of the vehicle could impair airbag performance.

Some general requirements for airbags must be observed to make sure the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

A damaged airbag system may not work properly in an accident. Incorrect service procedures could cause an airbag to deploy unexpectedly during service, injuring someone. To avoid damaging the airbag system, possibly causing malfunction leading to injury in an accident or during repair:

- **Do not cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel, particularly in the area of the passenger side airbag module.**
- **For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover. Do not make any repairs, adjustments, or modifications to any parts of the the airbag system.**
- **Do not modify the front bumper or vehicle body structure.**

WARNING continued

- **Never place protective seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by VOLKSWAGEN. Since the side airbags deploy out of the side of the seatback, it would not be able to deploy and protect properly.**
- **Do not use additional seat cushions that cover or interfere with the areas where the side airbags inflate.**
- **Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**
- **Any work on the airbag system, such as removing/installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, mobile telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary. Improper handling may result in injury.**
- **For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**
- **The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced.**

Child safety

The physical principles of what happens when your car is in a crash, illustrated on pages 3 – 6, apply also to children. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than are adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.

Please be sure to read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraints in your Volkswagen.

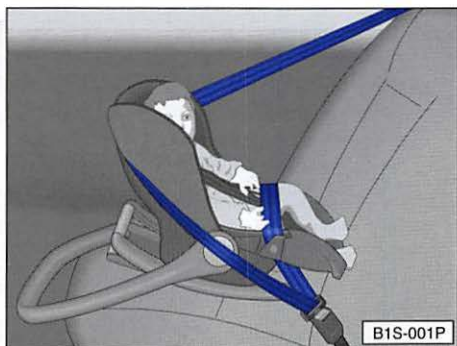


WARNING

● **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.**

● **All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag. A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most crashes.**

Consult the child seat manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size.



Infant seats

Infants up to about one year old who weigh up to 20–22 lbs. (9–10 kg) receive the best protection in special infant carriers and child seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child's back faces the driving direction. These child seats can be used safely only on the rear seat of your VOLKSWAGEN.

Using a rear-facing child seat on the front seat of a vehicle equipped with an airbag will seriously injure and can even kill a child when the airbag inflates in a crash.



WARNING

- **Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.**
- **Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**
- **Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Rear-facing restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if turned forward-facing.**

Child restraints on the front seat – important things to know

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.



WARNING

Babies and older children must never ride in a vehicle sitting on the lap of an adult. Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system. The strongest adult could not hold onto the child under the forces exerted in a crash. The child would strike the interior of the vehicle and could also be struck by the adult's body moving forward. The child and the adult could injure each other.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20–35 mph (30–56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant would be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury.



Convertible seats

A child too large for an infant restraint up to 4 years old (40 lbs. or 18 kg) should be restrained in a child seat certified for their weight.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child. Install forward-facing child seats on the rear seat.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS on next pages.

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child seat on the front seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a *forward-facing* child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- **make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
- **Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.**
- **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**



Booster seats

Children up to 8 years old who weigh over 40 lbs (18 kg) and are less than 4'9" (1.45 m) tall are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they should not use the vehicle safety belts.

Children of average size of about 4 years and older may use available three point combination lap and shoulder belts. It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places.

The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used.

Children age 12 and under should always ride in the rear seat.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS on next pages.

 WARNING

Always position the shoulder portion of the three-point belt midway over the shoulder of the child. The shoulder portion must never rest against or across the neck. It should never contact or remain in front of the face, chin, or throat. The lap belt portion of the three point belt as well as any lap belt alone must always pass as low as possible across the pelvis, never over the abdomen. Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in a crash.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat due to exceptional circumstance, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between your body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

 WARNING

Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, particularly the front seat. Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your car. If a child is leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, the child is more likely to be injured in a crash and will receive serious or fatal injuries if the child comes into contact with an airbag as it inflates.



Seatbelts and older children

Children of average size of about 7 years of age and older may use the lap belt in exceptional circumstances if the proper use of three point belts is not possible. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let a lap belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

WARNING

Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in a crash.

The lap belt portion of the three point belt as well as any lap belt alone must always pass as low as possible across the pelvis, never over the stomach or abdomen.

Younger children should use a lap belt only in very exceptional situations and only if no child restraint system for the child's size and weight or safer alternative means of transportation of the child is available. In these exceptional situations, the use of a lap belt is better than permitting the child to remain totally unrestrained. But remember: a lap belt cannot provide the same level of protection as a proper child restraint. Also, using a lap belt for younger children, who should be using a child restraint, may violate laws in your state or province.

WARNING

● **An improperly worn safety belt will not provide the best protection in a crash and may cause serious personal injury. Always make sure that children and other vehicle occupants properly wear available restraint systems. Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturers of child restraints.**

● **Commercially available child seats are required to comply with U. S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).**

● **These standards include installation requirements for using a lap belt or the lap portion of a combination lap-shoulder belt such as those installed in your vehicle.**



Always read and heed all WARNINGS on next pages.

⚠ WARNING continued

- When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and vehicle.
- Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child seat must not tip or lean to either side. **VOLKSWAGEN** does not recommend using child seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
- Improperly or inadequately installed child restraint systems can increase the risk of injury to children in crashes. Therefore, always carefully read and follow all instructions on installation and use that come with the system.

Securing a child seat in the rear seats

Convertible Locking Retractor

The retractors for the rear seat three-point safety belts and the front passenger three-point safety belt have a convertible locking feature in addition to the emergency locking feature.

If you need to install a child seat at an outer seating position, you must first activate the convertible locking feature. Then secure the child seat by using the seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

- Never install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child. Allow a child to travel on the front passenger's seat only in a forward-facing child restraint system specifically designed and approved by the child restraint manufacturer for use in the front with airbags. Make sure the passenger seat is in the rearmost position. It is always safer to install a child seat in the rear.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

● Slowly pull the belt all the way out and route it around or through the child restraint belt path.

● Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position. Make sure that the orange release button is facing away so that the child safety belt can be unbuckled quickly if necessary.

● Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened.

● Guide the remaining portion of the belt back in place with your hand. While doing so, you should hear a continuous clicking noise from the retractor. That means that the convertible locking feature has been activated.

● Push and pull the child seat back and forth at the belt path to make sure that it is correctly and securely installed and does not move more than one inch side to side.



WARNING

Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if your child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor is deactivated by unfastening the safety belt (see page 13). Allow the safety belt to retract completely to its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary three-point safety belt without the additional locking feature.

If the convertible locking feature should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking feature is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear. The convertible locking feature must be deactivated to restore normal belt operation and greater occupant comfort.



WARNING

Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor while the vehicle is in motion. You would not be protected at all and could suffer serious injury in a collision.

Securing a child seat with the center rear seat

Securing a child seat with the rear center safety belt

- First make sure the seat backrest of the rear seat bench is in upright position and securely latched in place, **Booklet 3.1, chapter "Rear seat"**.
- Then secure the child seat as described in this chapter "*Child safety*". Be sure to follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you are using.



WARNING

When transporting children on the rear seat bench, or if you are going to install a child restraint system on the rear seat bench, please remember:

- The rear center three point safety belt cannot help to protect an infant or a child in a child restraint if the seat backrest to which it is attached is not securely latched.

The child restraint would not be securely held in place and would move forward during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a collision. An infant or a child would be thrown forward together with the seat and would strike parts of the car's interior and could be seriously injured. See page 30 .

- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the rear center safety belt is attached is in upright position and securely latched into place so that it cannot fold forward whenever a child restraint is installed and especially when it is being used, **Booklet 3.1, chapter "Rear seat"**.

What Types of CR Anchors are Available and How are They Related to Child Safety?

For years, CRs have been installed using the safety belts already present in every vehicle.

Since September 1, 1999, CR manufacturers have been providing tether straps that attach the top of the CR to the vehicle's structure, on most of their forward-facing systems in order to comply with U.S. Federal regulations for CR performance in a crash. Vehicle manufacturers were required to phase-in tether anchorages for attachment of the tether strap in their U.S. vehicles beginning September 1, 1999.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchors and **T**ethers for **C**hildren". In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

(The term "ISOFIX" regarding lower anchorages had been used by Volkswagen and other manufacturers in the past, but LATCH is now the standard name for the new child restraint anchorage system.)

Some CR manufacturers have been providing tether straps on certain models of their CRs, either as standard equipment or as a retrofit, for several years. Check with the manufacturer of the CR for tether strap availability.

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the CR on the vehicle seat, U.S. Federal regulations require the phase-in of lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new CRs to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

CR manufacturers will probably offer two kinds of lower anchorages on their child seats:

They could come with...

- ...hooks or other latches attached to adjustable straps
- or
- ...rigid latches on bars that extend out the back of the CR.

Where Can I Get Additional Information About CR Application and Usage?

There are a number of sources of additional information about CR selection, installation and usage:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

(888) DASH-2-DOT
www.nhtsa.dot.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign

(202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A

(800) 745-SAFE (English)
(800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Volkswagen Customer Relations

(800) 822-8987

Tether Anchors

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

- Improper use of child restraint anchors (tether anchors) could lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.

- Never mount two child restraint seats on one anchor point.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint that you intend to install in your VOLKSWAGEN.

- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.

- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment

- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.



Jetta Wagon

The illustration shows the tether anchors for the rear seating positions:

– *Jetta Wagon:*

Tether anchors for the three rear seating positions are located on the rear side of the rear seat back rest (arrows).

Beginning with model year 2000, Volkswagen vehicles have tether anchors as standard equipment.

Tether Strap

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a CR to special anchorage points in the vehicle – see illustration on next page.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the CR in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing CRs manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new head movement performance requirements.

These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.



WARNING

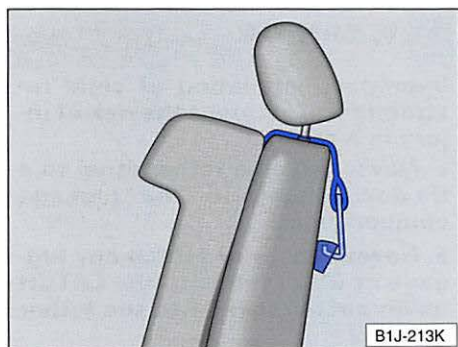
Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

● **Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment**

● **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.**

Using Tethers on Rear Facing CRs

Currently, very few rear-facing CRs come with a tether. Please read and heed the CR manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

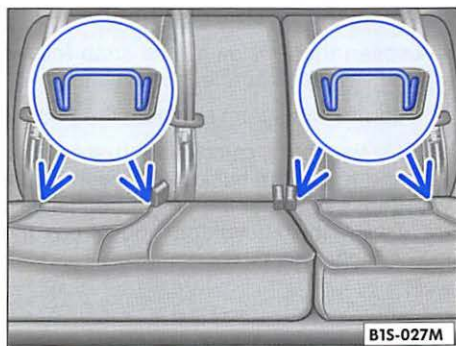


How to install the upper tether strap to the anchorage point

- Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's usage instructions.
- Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

- Guide the tether strap between the rear seat back and the luggage compartment cover (remove the luggage compartment cover if necessary, see "*Luggage compartment cover*", **Booklet 3.1**).
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- To release the tether strap, loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Lower Anchorages



The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion – see illustration.

The lower anchorages for the rear outboard seating positions are installed at the factory. Lower anchorages secure the CR in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper CR installation.

All CRs manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the LATCH system (called "lower universal anchorages" or "lower universal anchorage bars" in Canada). However, CR manufacturers have begun to provide such lower anchorages for the latch system in 2000 even before the required date.

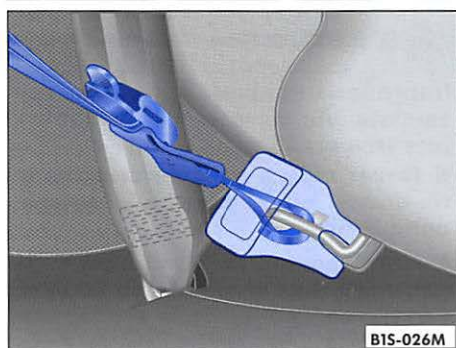


WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

- **Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.**

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of CRs specifically certified for use with LATCH lower anchorages. CRs that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed according to the CR manufacturer's instructions using vehicle safety belts.



Mounting the anchorage hook

- Install the guidance fixtures as explained on page 46.
- Guide the anchorage hook into the guide fixture.
- Press the anchorage hook with the spring catch release onto the lower anchorage so that the anchorage hook locks into place.
Pull on the anchorage hook to make sure that it is properly attached to the lower anchorage – see illustration.
- Tighten the strap following the CR manufacturer's instructions.

Release the anchorage hook

- Loosen the tension on the strap following the CR manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catch on the hook.
- Hold the spring catch in depressed position and move the hook in direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the anchorage hook from the lower anchorage.

Using Lower Anchorages or Safety Belts



WARNING

- **Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injuries in a crash.**
- **Always refer to the CRs manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the CR and correct use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**

Seat Markings for Lower Anchorages



Fig. 1 The illustration above shows the location of the circular seat markings for the lower anchorages for the outboard rear seating positions.

The circular markings on the seat help you to locate the lower anchorages for the two rear outboard seating positions, see illustration.

WARNING

For installation of a child restraint in your Volkswagen, always refer to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of your child restraint.

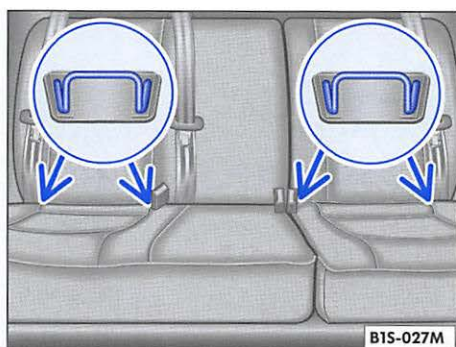


Fig. 2 The illustration above shows the location of lower anchorages.

The lower anchorages are located between the rear seatback and the rear seat cushion – see Fig. 2.

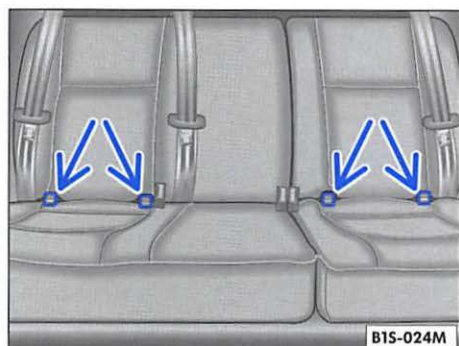
WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

- Always follow the CRs manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the CR and correct use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.

- Please be sure to read and heed the important information and **WARNINGS** about child safety and the installation of CRs in this Booklet.

Guidance Fixtures for Lower Anchorages

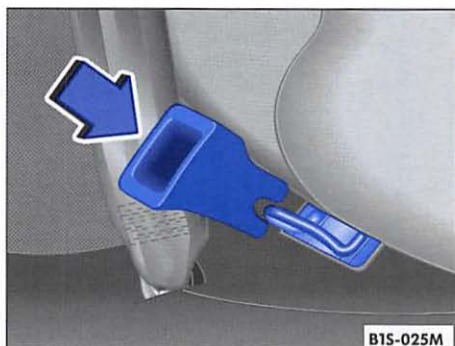


Special guidance fixtures increase the convenience of the lower anchorages and help protect the seat material from possible damage when installing child restraints that have rigid lower anchorages and not straps with hooks. These guidance fixtures are either supplied with your Volkswagen as standard equipment, or your authorized Volkswagen dealer can supply them.

Attach the guidance fixtures to the lower anchorages as shown in illustrations on pages 44 and 46.

Note

You may find it easier to install CRs equipped with hooks attached to straps without the guidance fixtures in place. If this is the case, remove the guidance fixtures by pulling them off the anchorages. However, the guidance fixtures help you to locate the anchorages positions.



Installing the guidance fixtures

First push the seat cushion down so that the lower anchorages are visible.

Hold the guide fixture with the part number facing downward and push it in direction of arrow onto the anchorage – see upper illustration.

The groove in the guidance fixtures must snap into place over the lower anchorages installed in your Volkswagen.

Removing the guide fixtures

- Remove the CR according to the CR manufacturer's instructions.
- Push the seat cushion down so that the lower anchorages are visible.
- Pull the guidance fixtures off of the lower anchorages and keep the guidance fixtures in a safe place.

Notes

- On vehicles with folding rear backrests, the guidance fixtures must be removed before folding the backrests to prevent damaging the seat cushion.
- Please keep the guidance fixtures in a safe place with the vehicle when not in use.
- If you leave the guidance fixtures installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area that the guidance fixtures were installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the guidance fixtures. This applies especially to leather seats.
- Always remove the guidance fixtures when not in use.

**WARNING**

Improper use of tether anchorages or lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in a crash.

- Always follow the CR manufacturer's instructions for proper installation and use of child restraint systems.

**WARNING continued**

- Never use the **LATCH** or tether anchorages to attach safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- CR tether anchorages and the lower anchorages are only designed to secure a CR that has been equipped to use these anchorages.
- Tether anchorages and the lower anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances can they be used safely for adult or child seat belts or harnesses.
- Never mount more than one CR to a single tether or to a lower anchorage point. Attaching two child restraints to a single anchorage point can cause the anchorage to fail and cause serious personal injury in a crash.
- Never use the tether anchorages and lower anchorages to install three child restraints in your Volkswagen. If you must install three child restraints on the rear seat of a Volkswagen with three seating positions in the rear, you must use the vehicle safety belt to install the child restraint in the center seating position.

Installing a Child restraint using the LATCH system ¹⁾

Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

There are two possibilities to attach a LATCH-CR to the lower anchorages for the outboard seating position:

Rigid latches on bars that extend on the back of the CR:

- Install the guidance fixtures, see pages 46 and 47.

- Insert the latches into the lower anchorages. Make sure you hear the CR click securely into place.

Pull on the CR once you've mounted it to make sure it's secure!

Connecting the attachments to adjustable straps:

- Both attaching straps with anchorage hooks on the CR must be securely attached to the lower anchorages and then pulled tight according to the CR manufacturer's instructions, – see also page 44.

Attaching the child restraint tether strap to the tether anchor:

- Release or deploy the tether strap and the child restraint according to the CR manufacturer's instructions.

- Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary) and attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

To locate the tether anchorages on your vehicle, see page 40.

- Pull on the anchorage hooks to make sure that they are firmly attached to the anchorage by the spring catch of the hook.

- Tighten the tether strap firmly following the CR manufacturer's instructions.

Pull on the CR once you've mounted it to make sure it's secure!



WARNING

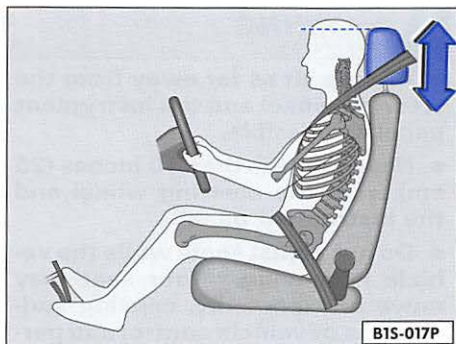
Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

- Always follow the CRs manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the CR and correct use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.

- Please be sure to read and heed the important information and **WARNINGS** about child safety and the installation of CRs in this Booklet.

¹⁾ In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

Head restraints



The padded head restraints are adjustable. Position the head restraints according to the occupant's height. Properly positioned head restraints, with the use of safety belts, help to offer effective protection in most accident situations.

For maximum protection, the upper edge should be at least at eye level or higher – see left illustration.

WARNING

Head restraints are designed to help reduce injuries in an accident. Do not drive the vehicle without the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.

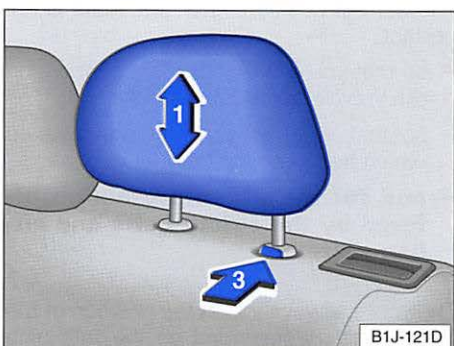
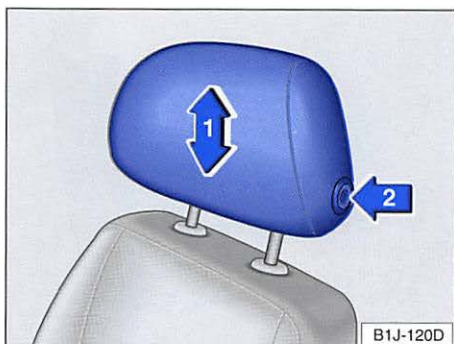
Height adjustment (arrow 1)

For height adjustment, grasp firmly with both hands and pull up or down. To push the front head restraints down, press the button (arrow 2).

Removal

Front head restraints

To **remove** the head restraints, pull the head restraint upward until it stops. Then press the button (arrow 2). While doing this, pull the head restraint upward and remove.



Rear head restraints

To **remove** the head restraints, fold the rear backrest slightly forward and pull the head restraint upward until it stops. Then press the button (arrow 3) on the rod. While doing this, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

Installation

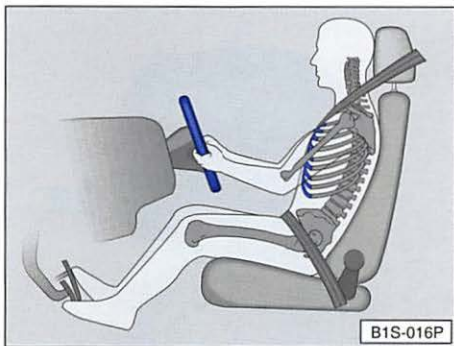
Front head restraints

To **reinstall**, guide the two rods of the headrest into the guides, press the button (arrow 2) at the same time and push the headrest down into place.

Rear head restraints

To **reinstall**, push the two rods of the headrest into the guides and push the headrest down into place.

Front seats



The correct positioning of the seats is important:

- so that you can reach all the controls on the vehicle quickly and safely;
- so that you can drive or ride relaxed which helps reduce fatigue
- **and for maximum protection offered by the safety belts and air-bag system.**

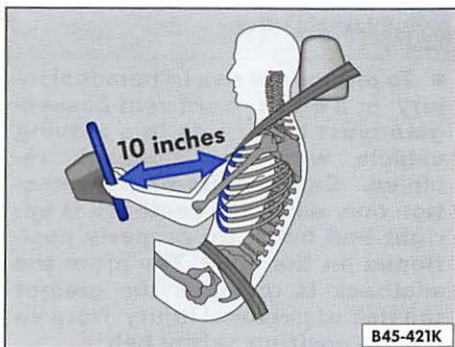
Therefore, always adjust the position of the front seats as described on the following pages and in the chapter “Front seats”, **Booklet 3.1**.

Remember to adjust the seats before fastening the safety belts and before driving off. Always be sure to follow these general guidelines:



WARNING

- Always sit as far away from the steering wheel and the instrument panel as possible.
- Never sit less than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.
- Do not adjust seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury.
- Passengers must always keep their feet on the floor whenever the vehicle is moving. Never place feet on the dashboard or on top of the seats. In a crash, serious personal injury can result from an improper seating position.



Driver's seat

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is unfolding, the driver must not sit any closer to the steering wheel than necessary and always properly wear the three point safety belt provided.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat as follows:

- adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals all the way while keeping your knee slightly bent.
- adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
- adjust the steering wheel so that the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel must be **at least 10 inches (25 cm) or more.**
See illustration above and chapter "Front seats", **Booklet 3.1.**



WARNING

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**
- **If it is impossible for you to sit at least 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) may permit you to have an on/off switch for the airbag installed. For address and telephone number of NHTSA - see below:**

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at:

1-800-424-9393

(or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area)

or write to:

**NHTSA,
U.S. Department of Transportation,
Washington, D.C. 20590.**

Front passenger's seat

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is unfolding, the adult front seat passenger must not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always properly wear available three point belts.

We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat as follows:

- backrest upright (**never** reclined)
- place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat
- adjust the passenger's seat as far as possible to the rear of the fore and aft adjustment range.

For safety information on transporting children on the front passenger seat – see page 30.



WARNING

- **Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.**
- **Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. If the airbag inflates and your feet are on the instrument panel or on the seat, your could receive serious personal injuries.**



WARNING

- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in a crash, front seat passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts offer protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an out-of-position safety belt.**
- **For driver's and passenger's protection, make sure front seats and seatbacks are securely locked in place.**
- **Never store items under the seats. Loose objects can interfere with the seat latching mechanism and can also cause personal injury in a crash.**

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A

Adjusting	
– Head restraints	49
– Seats	50
Air bag system	17
– Care, service and disposal	29
– Front airbags	23
– Head airbags	28
– How many airbags does my vehicle have?	17
– How the Airbag system works?	24
– Importance of proper seating position	19
– Side airbags	25
– System components	18
– What happens when the airbags deploy?	19
– When must the system be inspected?	18
– Where are my airbags located?	17
Anchors for a child restraint system	39
Auto Safety Hotline	21

B

Belt tensioner	13
– What happens when the belt tensioner is activated?	13
Booster seats	33

C

Center safety belt on the rear seat	14
Child restraint (CR) Anchors	39
Child restraint anchorages	43
Child restraints	
– Important information about child restraints and the front seat	22
– Securing on the rear seat using the center safety belt	38
Child safety	30
Child seat – Installing a rear facing child seat	22
Child seats – Older children	35
Comfort clips	8
Convertible child seats	32
Convertible locking feature	9
Convertible locking retractor	36
– Activating	37
– Deactivating	37
CR (Child Restraint)	39

D

Dirty safety belts	9
Driver's seat	
– Adjusting	20
– Proper position	51

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

E

Extenders for the safety belt 15

F

Fastening and unfastening

– Booster seats 33

– Center safety belt on the rear seat 9, 14

– Child seat on the center position on the rear seat 38

– Child seats on the outer rear seat position 36

– Convertible child seats 32

– Infant seats 31

– LATCH system 39

– Safety belt extender 16

– Safety belts 10, 13

Fastening your safety belt 10

Forward facing child seat,

– Precautions 22

Front airbags 23

Front passenger's seat,

– Proper position 52

Front seats 50

– How to adjust? 50

G

Guide fixtures 46

H

Head airbags 28

Head restraints 49

– Proper position for maximum protection 49

– Removing and Installing 49

Heavy clothing and safety belts ... 8

Height adjusters 11

How can I adjust the height of my safety belt? 11

How can I tell when the safety belt is securely locked? 10

How many airbags does my vehicle have? 17

How to attach the tether strap on the Wagon model? 42

How to fasten the rear center safety belt? 9

How to use this Manual? 2

How to wear safety belts properly? 8

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

I

Important information about this Manual	2
Indicator light	
– Air bag system	18
– What should I do if the airbag indicator light comes on and stays on?	18
Infant seats	31
Installing	
– Booster seats	33
– Child seat on the outer rear seat position	36
– Child seat to LATCH system ..	48
– Child seat to lower anchorage point	43
– Child seat using the LATCH system	39
– Convertible child seats	32
– Infant seats	31
– Tether strap to anchorage point on the Wagon model ...	42
Installing a child restraint	48

K

Keep this manual with your vehicle	2
------------------------------------	---

L

Lap-shoulder belt	9
LATCH (Lower Anchor and Tether for Children)	39
LATCH system	48
– Attaching a child restraint to the LATCH system	48
– Seat markings	45
Locking retractor	36
Lower Anchor and Tether for Children (LATCH)	39
Lower anchorages	43
– Guide fixtures	46
– Seat markings	45

N

Number of seats	9
-----------------------	---

P

Passenger's seat,	
– Proper position	52
Pregnant women,	
– Special considerations when wearing a safety belt	12

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

R

- Rear center safety belt 14
 - How to fasten? 9
 - Making sure the rear seatback is securely latched ... 9
 - Precautions 14
- Rear-facing child seat,
 - Precautions 22
- Release button on the buckle 13
- Retractors 9

S

- Safety belt, – Lap-shoulder belt ... 9
- Safety belt extenders 15
 - Fastening 16
 - Precautions you should take when using 15
 - Use with a child restraint 15
- Safety belt height adjustors 11
- Safety belt warning light 7
- Safety belts 3
 - Extender 15
 - How can I adjust the height of my safety belt? 11
 - How can I tell when the belt is securely locked? 10
 - How to fasten? 10
 - How to wear properly? 8
 - Making sure all passengers are correctly restrained 9
 - Older children 35
 - Precautions 8
 - Retractors – how they work ... 9
 - Special considerations for pregnant women 12
 - Torn or frayed 8
 - Unfastening 13
 - Warning system 7
 - What can happen if you do not wear your safety belt? 4
 - What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 12
 - When must safety belts be replaced? 9
 - When would a safety belt lock up? 9
 - Why safety belts protect? 6
- Safety first 2
- Seat belts 3
- Seating capacity of your vehicle ... 9
- Seating position
 - Distance between the driver and the steering wheel 21
- Seat markings for lower anchorages 45
- Securing a child seat 36, 38
- Side airbags 17, 25, 28
- Side Curtain Protection 17, 28
- Steering wheel
 - Distance between the driver and steering wheel 21

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

T

Tensioner for the safety belt	
– Function	13
Tether anchors	40
Tether strap	41
– How to attach on the	
Wagon model	42
Torn safety belts	8

U

Unfastening your safety belt	13
------------------------------------	----

W

Warning light in the	
instrument cluster	7
Warning system	7
What can happen if you do not	
wear your safety belt?	4
What happens if you wear your	
safety belt too loose?	12
What happens when the airbags	
deploy?	19
What happens when the belt	
tensioner is activated?	13
What should I do if the airbag	
indicator light comes on and	
stays on?	18
When must safety belts	
be replaced?	9
When would a safety belt lock up? ..	9
Where are my airbags located? ..	17
Why safety belts protect?	6

It has always been VOLKSWAGEN's policy to continuously improve its products. VOLKSWAGEN, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of VOLKSWAGEN AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice



Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable). Printed in Germany

© 2001 VOLKSWAGEN AG



3.1 2004 Jetta Wagon
*Controls and Operating
Equipment*

Please read this important information before reading your booklet.

Vehicle Equipment

This manual describes all the equipment intended to be offered at the time of printing. Some of the equipment may be available at a later date or not at all.



Please note that items marked with an asterisk may be standard on certain models, optional on others or not available on your model.

Notes about Environment



Texts identified by this symbol and written in italics are important notes regarding the environment and how you can help protect it.

Illustrations

Each illustration in the manual shows a feature and / or equipment which your vehicle may or may not have, depending on the model. The illustrations are simply to show you how a feature looks and its function.

Alphabetical Index

At the back of this book, you will find an extensive Alphabetical Index. This will help you to find information quickly by using key words.

Table of Contents

On the following page, you will find the Table of Contents which describes all the features of your vehicle in the order they appear in this manual.

Indication of directions

Whenever a direction is specified (for example: left, right, forward, backward, etc.), you should imagine yourself as sitting in the vehicle facing in the driving direction. If something is explained which is different from this position, it will be clearly identified.

WARNINGS



WARNINGS

concern safety and are highlighted like this throughout this manual.

Texts printed in bold type refer to possible damage to your vehicle, or to other important information.

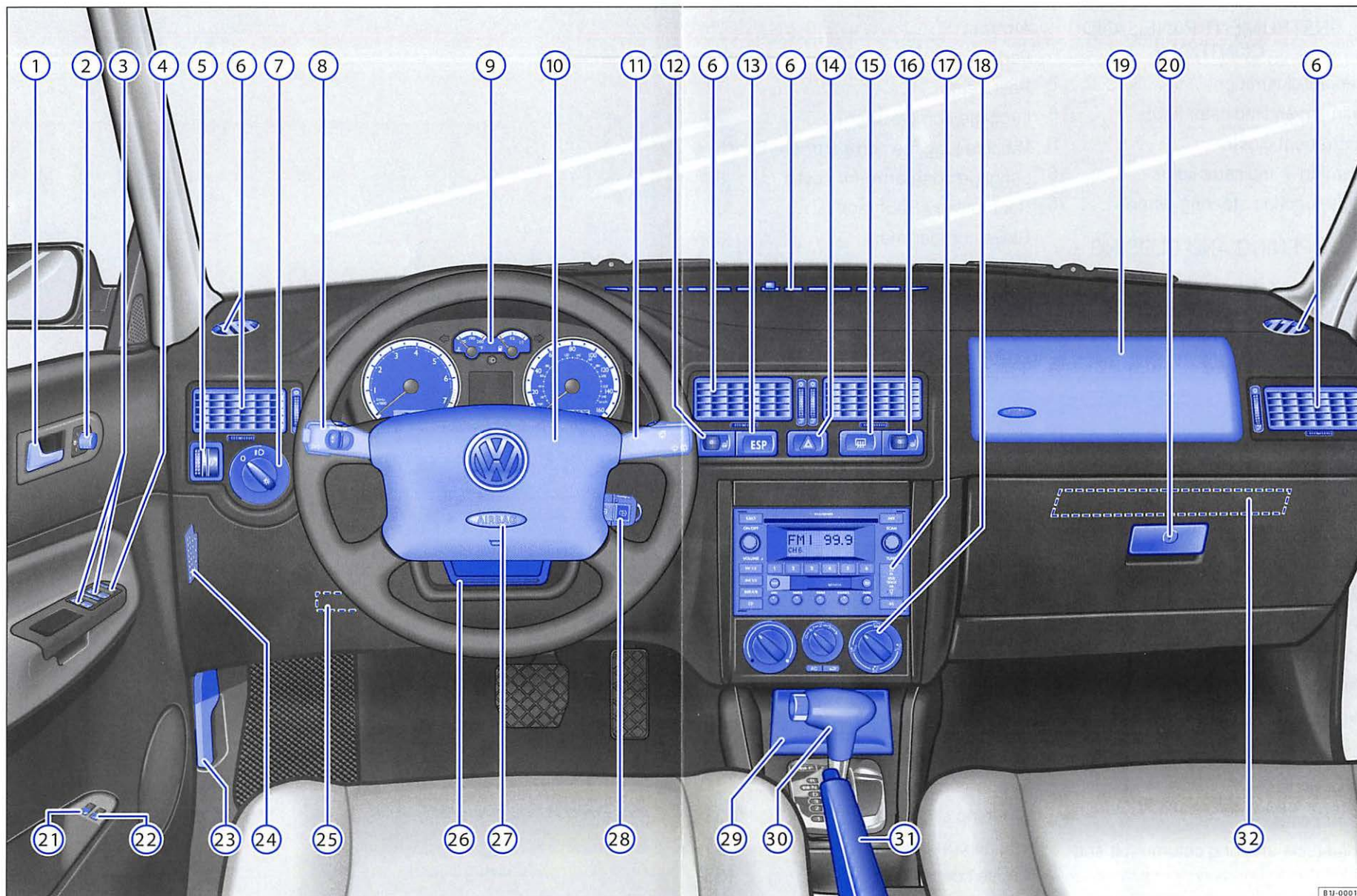


If one of the Warning and indicator lights marked with a STOP-sign illuminates while you are driving, move a safe distance off the road, turn off the engine, turn on the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Go to listed page in your booklet for explanations.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONTROLS		Armrest	75
General illustration	3	Pedals	76
Warning and indicator lights	6	Rear seat	77
Instrument cluster	8	Luggage compartment	79
Warning / Indicator lights	16	Variable luggage compartment floor	81
Multi-function steering wheel	26	Luggage compartment cover	83
OPENING AND CLOSING		Roof railing / Roof rack	85
Keys	28	Glove compartment	86
Remote control	30	Cup holder	87
Anti-theft alarm system	34	Cigarette lighter / Socket	88
Doors, Power locks	35	Ashtray	89
Rear lid	39	Coat hooks /	
Power windows	41	Assist handles, Sunclass holder ..	90
Power roof	45	HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING	
CLEAR VISION		Air conditioning	91
Switches	47	Climatronic	98
Turn signals / High beam lever ..	51	ON THE ROAD	
Wiper and washer system	52	4-speed automatic transmission	105
Wiper blades	55	5-speed automatic transmission	
Interior lights	56	(TiptronicR)	111
Mirrors	58	Manual transmission	117
Sun visors	61	Parking brake lever	118
SEATS AND STORAGE		Ignition switch	119
Head restraints	62	Power steering	120
Front seats	64	Starting procedures	121
Adjustable steering column (tilt and telescopic)	73	Stopping engine	123
		Engine compartment	124
		Cruise control	125

General illustration



81J-0001

Pos.	Page	Pos.	Page
1 - Release handle		19 - Front passenger's airbag	Booklet 2.1
2 - Outside mirrors adjustor*	58	20 - Glove compartment	86
3 - Power window switches*	41	21 - Switch for fuel filler flap release	50
4 - Power locking switch	36	22 - Switch for rear lid release	39
5 - Instrument cluster illumination	47	23 - Release lever for engine hood	Booklet 3.4
6 - Air vents	94	24 - Fuse panel	Booklet 3.4
7 - Switch for lights	47	25 - Data Link Connector (DLC) for On Board Diagnostics (OBD)	25
8 - Turn signals / High beam lever	51	26 - Lever for adjustable steering wheel	73
with knobs for cruise control	125	27 - Driver's airbag	Booklet 2.1
9 - Instrument cluster:		28 - Steering lock / ignition / starter switch	119
Instruments	8	29 - Ashtray	89
Warning and Indicator lights	16	Cigarette lighter	88
10 - Horn (works only when the ignition is switched on)		30 - Selector lever (automatic transmission)	105
11 - Windshield wiper / washer lever . .	52	Gearshift lever (manual transmission)	117
with knobs for multi-function indicator	11	31 - Parking brake lever	118
12 - Switch for heated driver's seat*	49	32 - Storage compartment for Owner's manual	86
13 - Switch for Electronic Stability Program*	48		
14 - Switch for emergency flasher	49		
15 - Switch for rear window defogger . .	49		
16 - Switch for heated front passenger's seat*	49		
17 - Radio ¹⁾			
18 - Climate controls for			
. . . air conditioning	92		
. . . climatronic	98		

Notes

● **Some features mentioned are standard equipment on some models only and options on others.**

● **For technical reasons, the arrangement of the switches and indicator/warning lights may differ. The governing factor is the symbol on the switch itself.**

¹⁾ A separate instructions brochure is provided for your factory-installed radio. If you replace your radio, please be sure to read the notes in the chapter "Do-it-yourself Service", **Booklet 3.4**.

Warning and indicator lights

Symbol	Symbol color	Name	Page
	Yellow	Airbag system	17
	Green	Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)	17
	Green	Turn signals	18
	Red	Engine oil pressure 	23
	Red	Generator 	21
BRAKE	Red	Brake (US models) 	20
	Red	Brake (Canada models) 	20
	Blue	High beam	18
	Red	Safety belt	21
	Red	Engine coolant level, temperature 	21
	Yellow	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)	25
ABS	Yellow	Anti-Lock Brake System (US models)	19
	Yellow	Anti-Lock Brake System (Canada models)	19
	Yellow	Fuel filler cap	24
	Yellow	Electronic immobilizer	19

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Symbol color</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Page</i>
	Yellow	Fuel level too low	24
	Red	Door / rear lid open	24
	Red	Emergency flasher	49
	Yellow	Rear window defogger	49
	Yellow	Electronic Stability Program*	18
ASR	Yellow	Electronic Stability Program*	18
EPC	Yellow	Anti-Slip Regulation*	18
	Yellow	Glow plug (Diesel models only)*	17
	Yellow	Front brake pads worn*	24
	Yellow	Windshield washer fluid level too low	24
CRUISE	Green	Cruise control	125

Notes

If one of the lights marked with  comes on while you are driving, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Go to listed page in your booklet for explanations.

Some of the lights mentioned are on certain models only and may be options on other models.

Instrument cluster



The arrangement of the instruments in the cluster may vary depending on model and engine version.

The illustration shows the arrangement of the instrument cluster in a U.S. vehicle.

Pos.	Page
1 - Tachometer	8
2 - Engine coolant temperature gauge	9
3 - Fuel gauge	10
4 - Speedometer	10
5 - Digital clock	10
6 - Display for Multi-Function Indicator	11
7 - Display for Selector lever position (only vehicles with automatic transmission)	15
8 - Odometer / trip odometer	15
Warning / indicator lights	16

1 - Tachometer

The red area at the end of the scale indicates maximum permissible engine RPM (revolutions per minute) for all gears after the break-in period. Before reaching this area, select the next higher gear or selector lever position "D," or ease your foot off the accelerator pedal.

 **Upshifting early saves fuel and reduces engine noise.**

Shift to the next lower gear when engine RPM drops below 1,500 RPMs.



2 – Engine coolant temperature gauge



The needle in the coolant temperature gauge will indicate the temperature of the coolant shortly after the ignition is switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, the warning light (C) illuminates for a few seconds as a functional check.

A – Engine cold

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy throttle when the needle is at the lower end of the dial.

B – Normal temperature

During normal running, the needle will stay somewhere in the middle of the dial. If the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures, the needle may also go farther upwards. **This is no cause for concern as long as the coolant temperature warning light does not start illuminating.**

If the coolant gauge needle approaches the right end of the scale and the engine appears to be overheating, turn off the air conditioner.

C – Warning light

If the light illuminates when driving, first check the coolant temperature gauge.

If the needle is in the normal range, add coolant at the next opportunity.

If the needle is in the warning range, the coolant temperature is too high.

Move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine and depress the emergency flasher switch.

Notes

- **Do not install accessories (fog lights or insect screens, for example) underneath or on top of the front bumper. They may restrict engine cooling and cause engine damage.**

- **The front spoiler also functions as a duct for cooling air. If the spoiler is damaged or torn off (driving over a curb), this could cause engine overheating. Contact the nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.**



3 – Fuel gauge



When the ignition is on, the needle on the fuel gauge will display the fuel level in the tank.

The fuel tank capacity is approximately 14.5 gallons (55 liters).

When the needle reaches the red area (arrow), the warning light **D** will illuminate, (see illustration).

When the warning light illuminates, there are approximately 1.9 U.S. gallons (7 liters) of fuel left in the tank. **Time to refuel.**

4 – Speedometer / odometer

Refer to "Break-In Period" before driving off **Booklet 3.4.**

The **speedometer** indicates the speed of the vehicle.

- On U.S. models, the outer row of numbers (large numbers) indicates the vehicle speed in miles per hour (mph).
- The inner row (small numbers) indicates the vehicle speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances. Upshift into the next higher gear before reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale.

Excessive engine speeds are automatically reduced.



5 – Digital clock

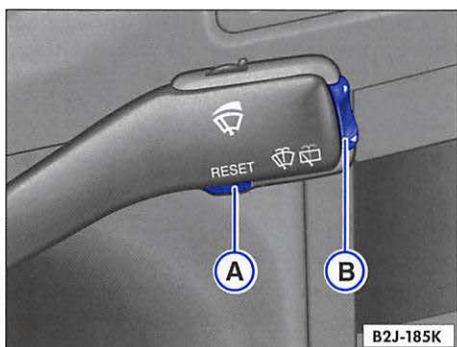
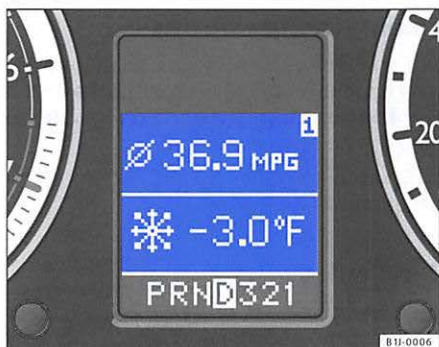
To set the time on the digital clock, use the knob next to the tachometer.

- To set the hours, turn the knob counter-clockwise and hold (arrow **1**). If you turn the knob quickly and then release, you can set the individual hour.

- To set the minutes, turn the knob clockwise and hold (arrow **2**). If you turn the knob quickly and then release, you can set the individual minute.

You can set the clock time exactly to the second using the minute button:

- Turn the knob to the right until it is just one minute before the actual correct time.
- Then turn the knob to the next full minute when, for example, you hear the time signal in the radio.



6 – Multi-Function Indicator*

The MFA (**M**ulti-**F**unktions-**A**nzeige) or Multi-Function Indicator display shows the following useful information:

- Outside temperature
- Momentary fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption
- Distance driven
- Average driving speed
- Time driven
- Miles or kilometers to empty
- Icy road warning

With the exception of time, the symbol for the function shown appears at the upper edge of the display. The illustration shows the average fuel consumption.

Note

If a warning/indicator light illuminates, additional text will be shown in the Multi-Function Indicator* display to provide you with further information. The previous MFA information will return after approximately 10 seconds.

By repeatedly depressing button **B** in the windshield wiper lever with the ignition switched on, the additional information is displayed.

- Press the **upper** part of button **B** to display each individual function in sequence.
- Press the **bottom** part of button **B** to display each individual function in reverse sequence.

The memories

The system is equipped with two automatic memories:

The **single trip** memory* ("**1**" shown on the upper right side of the display – see left illustration) accumulates and stores the following data from the time you switch on the ignition until you switch it off: driving time, distance driven and the amount of fuel used.

When the ignition is turned on again, accumulation and computations continue. However, if the ignition remains off for **two hours or longer**, stored information is automatically deleted.

The **total trip** memory ("**2**" shown on the upper right side of the display) stores accumulated data covering any number of successive trips, regardless of how long the ignition is off between trips. Storage capacity of the **total trip** memory is:

Driving time – 100 hours

Distance driven – 9,999 miles (9 999 km)

Fuel consumed – 999 gallons (999 liters).

To **recall** information, press switch **A**, located on the windshield wiper lever, to select the desired memory:

1 - Single trip memory

2 - Total trip memory

The following data can be recalled for display:

- Average fuel consumption
- Distance driven
- Average driving speed.
- Driving time

If one of the stored values is exceeded, then the total trip memory will be erased and recalculated. Unlike the single trip memory, the total trip memory won't be erased if you have stopped for more than two hours.

Erasing the memories

With the ignition on, you can separately erase each memory. Press and hold button **A** for **longer than 2 seconds** in order to erase the selected function.

If you disconnect the battery, all stored information will be erased.

The displays

When the ignition is on, **1** or **2** will appear in the display, according to which memory is turned on.

Press the rocker switch **B** on the windshield wiper lever to return to the previously displayed function.

All displayed temperatures are momentary. They are not stored in the memory.

After you switch off the ignition, the last temperature displayed will remain in the memory for up to 45 minutes. If you switch on the ignition after this period, or if you drive the vehicle faster than about 20 mph or 30 km/h within the 45 minute period, the new actual outside temperature will be displayed.

Outside temperature

°F (C) ☼

The displayed temperature will range between -40°F and +136°F (-40°C and +58°C).

When the vehicle is not moving, or when you are driving at very low speeds, the displayed temperature may be slightly higher than the outside temperature. This is caused by heat radiated from the engine.

If the outside temperatures are between +21°F and +39°F (-7°C and +4°C), an ice crystal symbol also appears in the display (**icy road warning**).

This symbol first flashes for about 5 seconds, then stays on until the outside temperature climbs above +39°F (+4°C) or drops below +21°F (-7°C).

Note

If an icy road warning occurs, the multi-function display will switch from the currently displayed function to the outside temperature display (icy road warning).

**WARNING**

If you are going to use the outside temperature display to determine frost conditions, remember that roads can even ice over at temperatures above 39°F (+4°C).

MPG (l/100 km) -**Momentary fuel consumption**

The fuel consumption at the moment will be indicated in mpg (l/100 km).

The consumption is calculated about every 30 yards (meters). If you stop your vehicle, the last value calculated will stay in the display. You can use this information to adapt your driving to match the fuel consumption you want.

If you display fuel consumption just after starting the engine, then the average consumption for the first 30-40 yards (meters) will be shown.

Ø MPG (l/100 km) -**Average fuel consumption**

This mode displays average fuel consumption, not momentary fuel consumption. When the ignition has been switched on or the existing memory erased, the average fuel consumption is indicated, after about 10 of seconds of driving and a distance of 30 yards (meters). Up to this point, a dash appears instead of a number. During the trip, the indicated value is updated every 5 seconds.

In position 1 ("1" shown in the display) the average consumption for the current trip is indicated – see page 11 "Single trip memory".

In position 2 ("2" shown in the display) the average consumption indicated is for all trips since the last time the memory was erased – see also "Total trip memory" on page 12.

Note

The amount of fuel consumed will not be displayed.

mi (km) – Distance covered

In position 1 ("1" shown in the display), the distance covered from the time you switched on the ignition until you switch it off is displayed – see "single trip."

In position 2 ("2" shown in the display), the distance covered for all single trips is displayed – see "single trip."

Maximum distance covered: 9,999 miles (9,999 km). If you exceed this, the display will go back to zero.

Ø MPH (km / h) – Average speed

The information under "average fuel consumption" also applies to "average speed."

min – Driving time

Maximum driving time display: 99 hours and 59 minutes. When you exceed this, the display will go back to zero.

mi (km) – Miles or kilometers to empty

The displayed information (indicated in stages of 5 miles or 10 kilometers) is based on the average fuel consumption computed during the last 20 miles or kilometers.

This feature informs the driver how many miles or kilometers of normal and smooth driving can be covered with whatever amount of fuel remains in the tank. Fuel economy is the result of good driving habits.



7 – Selector lever position display*

For Automatic Transmission

When the ignition is switched on, the engaged selector lever position will appear bright against a dark background while the other positions appear just the opposite.

If all the positions appear bright against a dark background at the same time, there may be a malfunction in the electronic system. See page 106 for more information on the display.

8 – Odometer / Trip odometer

The **odometer** indicates distances.

USA models: miles

Canada models: Kilometers

The upper odometer indicates the total distance driven. The lower odometer indicates the distance driven since the last time the trip odometer was reset. You can use the trip odometer to record the distance covered on a single trip.

On the **trip odometer**, the last digit indicates either $\frac{1}{10}$ of a mile or 100 metres.

You can set the trip odometer back to zero by pressing the reset knob next to the speedometer.

To record a distance, reset the trip odometer to zero by pressing and holding the button for longer than 1 second.

Warning / Indicator lights

Your vehicle is equipped with several important warning and indicator lights to help you monitor the continued reliable operation of your vehicle. Please be sure to get to know these lights so if one should come on you know what to do.



WARNING

● **Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.**

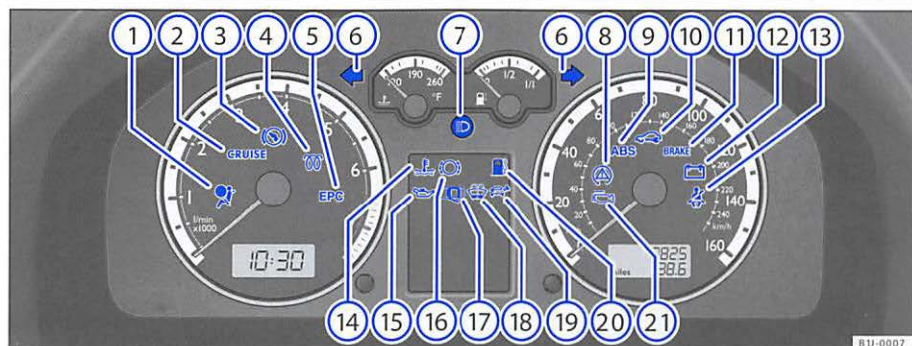
● **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher – see page 49.**

● **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood. Always heed all WARNINGS on page 94, chapter "Engine compartment" in this booklet and chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING" Booklet 3.4.**

Pos.	Page
1 - Airbag-System	17
2 - Cruise control*	17
3 - Anti Shift Lock (ASL)	17
4 - Glow plug (Diesel engines only) ...	16
5 - Electronic power control (Gasoline engines only)	18
6 - Turn signals	18
7 - High beam	18
8 - Electronic Stability Program*	18
or Anti-Slip Regulation*	18
9 - Anti-lock brake system	19
10 - Electronic immobilizer	19
11 - Brakes	20
12 - Generator	21
13 - Safety belts	21
14 - Engine coolant temperature / level	21
15 - Engine oil pressure	23
16 - Front brake pads worn	24
17 - Door / Rear lid open	24
18 - Windshield washer	24
19 - Fuel filler cap	24
20 - Fuel level too low	24
21 - Malfunction indicator lamp	25

Note

If a Warning / Indicator light comes on, an additional text will be shown in the Multi-Function Indicator* display to provide you with further information. The previous MFA-Information will return after approximately 10 seconds.



1 – Airbag System

The indicator light must illuminate when the ignition is switched on and turn off after a few seconds. If the light doesn't turn off, or if it illuminates while you're driving, there is a fault in the airbag system.

If the indicator light does not illuminate when the ignition is switched on, this also indicates a system malfunction. If any of these conditions occur, have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer. See chapter "AIRBAG-SYSTEM" **Booklet 2.1.** for more details.

2 – Cruise control

CRUISE

The indicator light comes on when the cruise control system is switched on and goes out when the system is switched off.

3 – Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

Your VOLKSWAGEN is equipped with an automatic Shift Lock (ASL). The ASL is an electromechanical device that locks the selector lever in the **P (Park)** and **N (Neutral)** positions when the ignition is on.

You must press the brake pedal before the selector lever can be moved out of either position. See page 106 for details.

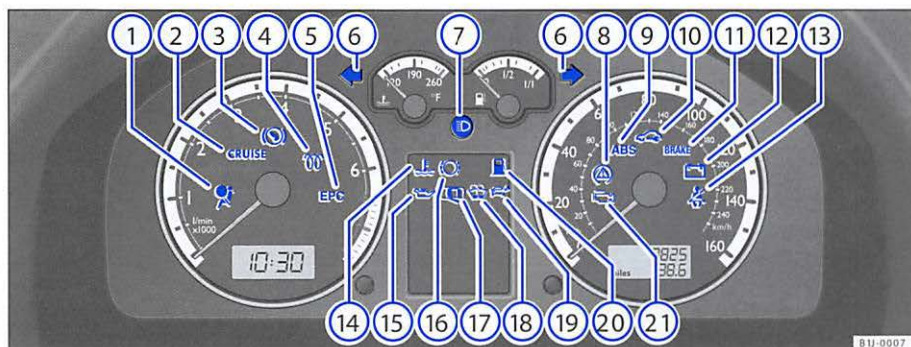
4 – Glow Plugs*

(diesel engines only)

When the engine is **cold** the warning lamp comes on when key is turned to the Drive position (ignition on).

If the warning lamp does not come on, there is a defect in the glow plug system – contact an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.

When the lamp goes out, start the engine immediately – see page 122.



When the engine is **warm** the glow plug lamp does **not** come on – the engine can be started right away.

Any faults in the engine management system of the Diesel engines which occur while driving will be indicated by a flashing warning lamp – the engine must be checked by a Volkswagen dealer as soon as possible.

5 – Electronic power control

EPC

If a malfunction in the engine electronics should occur, the EPC indicator light will blink. The engine control automatically switches to a back-up program. You will notice, however, a reduction in engine power. Please contact an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer as soon as possible.

6 – Turn signals



See "Turn signals / High beam lever" on page 51 for details.

7 – High beam



The indicator lamp lights up when the high beams are switched on or when the headlight flasher is used.

See "Turn signals / Headlight dimmer switch lever" on page 51 for details.

8 – Electronic Stability Program (ESP)*



The indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out again after about 2 seconds.

The light will start flashing when the vehicle is moving if the Electronic Stability Program (ESP) is activated.

The warning light will light up continuously if the system is switched off manually, or if a malfunction should occur – see page 48.

Since the ESP operates together with the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), the ESP warning light will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS.

See chapter "OPTIMAL TECHNOLOGY", **Booklet 3.4**, for more information.

8 – Anti-Slip Regulation* ASR

The indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out again after about 2 seconds.

The light will start flashing when the vehicle is moving if the Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) is activated.

The warning light will light up continuously if the system is switched off manually, or if a malfunction should occur – see page 48.

Since the ASR operates together with the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), the ASR warning light will also come on if a fault should occur in the ABS.

See chapter "OPTIMAL TECHNOLOGY", **Booklet 3.4.** for more information.

9 – Anti-lock brake system

ABS

This warning light monitors the **ABS** and **EDL (Electronic Differential Lock)*** systems.

The light will come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light will go out after an automatic check sequence.

WARNING

If the ABS warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You won't have the protection ABS provides. Contact your VOLKSWAGEN dealer as soon as possible.

For additional information on the ABS system, see chapter "OPTIMAL TECHNOLOGY" **Booklet 3.4.**

If an ABS problem exists:

● **The ABS warning light illuminates. The vehicle can still be braked, however, the ABS will not work. Go to your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer as soon as possible.**

● **The ABS warning light and the brake warning light illuminate together. The ABS will not work and you will notice a change in braking characteristics and performance.**

Electronic differential lock (EDL)*

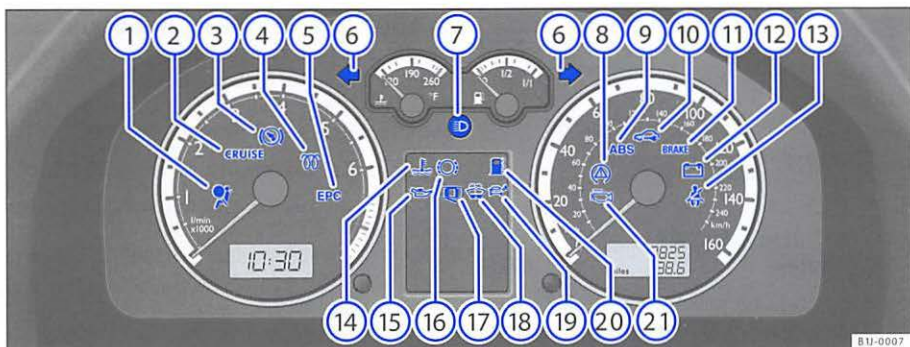
The EDL system works together with the ABS. The ABS warning light will illuminate if there is a malfunction in the EDL system. See your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

● **If both warning lights (ABS and BRAKE warning light) illuminate at the same time, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.**

10 – Electronic immobilizer

When the ignition is switched on an automatic key data test takes place. This data test is confirmed when the warning light illuminates and then turns off after about 2 seconds. If a non-authorized key is used the warning light will blink continuously. The engine will not start. See also page 120



11 - Brake¹⁾

BRAKE

The indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and turns off after a few seconds when the parking brake is fully released. This is your assurance that the brake warning light is functioning properly.

Note

The daytime running lights work only when the parking brake lever is fully released.

STOP If the brake warning light does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on, a malfunction may exist in the electrical system. Contact the nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.

WARNING

● Please be very careful and be sure to remember that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Consequently, you must allow for increased braking distances. Trying to brake as quickly as usual could lead to an accident.

WARNING continued

- If both warning lights (ABS and BRAKE warning light) come on at the same time, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.
- If the brake warning light does not go out after a few seconds and the parking brake released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected.

¹⁾ On Canada vehicles, this warning light will indicate a malfunction in the ABS system. (!)

12 –Generator



This light illuminates when the ignition is turned on and turns off after the engine is started. If the light does not turn off after starting and revving up the engine momentarily or illuminates while driving, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system, or the belts driving the alternator may be loose or broken.

STOP If the warning illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle and turn off the engine. Inspect the belts.



Always heed all WARNINGS on page 94, chapter "Engine compartment" in this booklet and chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING" Booklet 3.4.

If the belt for the generator is broken or loose, you can still drive to the nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer, since the engine coolant pump is driven by a separate belt. However, since the battery will start to discharge, you should switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment.

13 –Safety belts



Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.

After the ignition is switched on, the warning tone will come on for about 6 seconds along with a warning light in the instrument cluster if the driver has not fastened his or her safety belt. As soon as the driver has fastened his or her belt, the warning tone will stop and the warning light will go out.

If the driver has not buckled-up within about 24 seconds after the warning tone has stopped, the warning tone will sound again for about 6 seconds. The warning tone will sound repeatedly for about 6 seconds at 24 second intervals until the driver has buckled-up. The safety belt warning system is active for about 5 minutes and during this time the warning light in the instrument cluster will stay on.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

Please be sure to read the chapter "Safety belts" Booklet 2.1.

14 –Engine coolant temperature / level



This light illuminates for a few seconds just as a functional check when you switch on the ignition.

If the light does not turn off afterwards, or starts to blink while you are driving, either the coolant temperature is too high, or the coolant level is too low.



Move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, depress the emergency flasher switch, turn off the engine and let it cool down.

Check coolant level. Top up as necessary (see "Cooling system," chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING" Booklet 3.4.).



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

 WARNING

● The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood. Heed all of the **WARNINGS** on page 94, chapter "Engine compartment" in *this booklet* and chapter "**CHECKING AND FILLING**" *Booklet 3.4*.

● To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.

● Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly – even when the ignition is off and the key is removed.

● Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps:

- If the coolant reservoir cap must be removed, wait until the engine has cooled down.

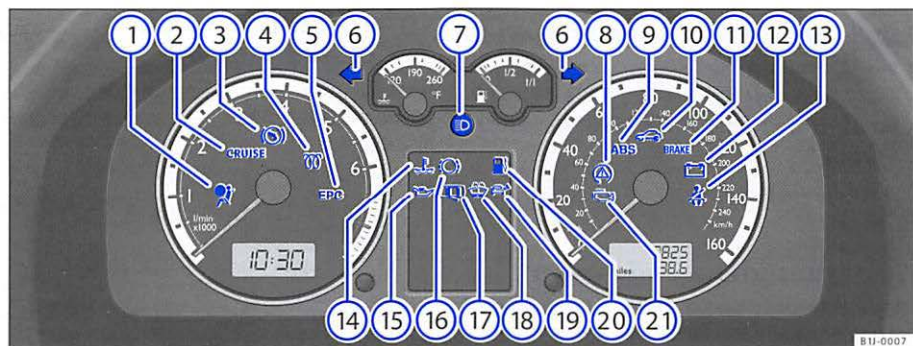
 WARNING continued

- Protect face, hands, and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
- To help avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

 **Always heed all WARNINGS on page 94, chapter "Engine compartment" in *this booklet* and chapter "**CHECKING AND FILLING**" *Booklet 3.4*.**

● If the coolant level is normal, check the fuse for the radiator fan. Replace the fuse if necessary – see "Fuses," chapter "**WHAT DO I DO NOW**" *Booklet 3.4*.

 **If the fuse is not blown, the belt driving the water pump is not broken and the warning light still does not turn off, do not continue driving because serious engine damage can occur. See your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**



● If the coolant level and the V-belt are normal, the fuse is not blown and the warning light has gone out, the malfunction may be in the radiator fan. You can continue driving to the nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer. The wind from the moving vehicle will be enough to keep the engine cool. However, avoid idling for a long time or driving very slowly.

Refer to "Coolant temperature gauge" on page 9 for details.

Notes

● **Do not install accessories (fog lights or insect screens, for example) underneath or on top of the front bumper. They may restrict engine cooling and cause engine damage.**

● **The front spoiler also serves as a duct for cooling air. If the spoiler should be damaged or even torn off (for example when driving over a curb), this could cause engine overheating. Contact your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**

15 -Engine oil pressure



When the ignition is turned on, the oil pressure warning light comes on for a few seconds for a bulb check.

STOP If the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving (above 1500 engine RPM) a buzzer will sound. It indicates that the oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately, check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary.

If the engine oil level is normal but the light continues to flash, do not continue to operate the vehicle. Engine damage may occur.

Turn off the engine and contact the nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.

The oil pressure light is not an indicator for low engine oil level. To check the oil level, always use the dipstick – see "Engine oil", chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING" Booklet 3.4.

Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked with every fuel filling.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.



Always heed all WARNINGS on page 94, chapter "Engine compartment" in this booklet and chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING" Booklet 3.4.

16 –Front brake pads worn*

Have the front brake pads inspected by a VOLKSWAGEN workshop. We recommend that you have the rear brake pads or linings inspected at the same time.

17 –Door / rear lid open

The warning light comes on when the ignition is on and a door or the rear lid is open. Additionally a warning tone will sound and a warning text is shown in the display of the instrument cluster. This is to remind you to close the door or the rear lid.

The light should go out when the door or the rear lid is closed properly.

18 –Windshield washer fluid level too low

The warning light will come on when the windshield washer fluid level gets too low. Additionally a warning tone will sound and a text is shown in the display of the instrument cluster. This is to remind you to fill up the fluid container.

Refill the windshield washer fluid container – see "Windshield / headlight washer container," chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING" **Booklet 3.4.**

19 –Fuel filler cap not closed properly

A warning light in the instrument cluster will come on if the fuel filler cap is not properly closed.

If the warning light comes on, you should turn off the engine and close the fuel filler cap properly.

Once the cap is properly closed all the way, the warning light will go out when the ignition is turned on again and the check cycle is complete. The completion of the check cycle depends on how you drive.

If the warning light has been on for at least **5 minutes** it will go out only when the ignition is turned off and on again.

Note

Always make sure the fuel cap is crewed on all the way. This prevents fuel from spilling out or evaporating.



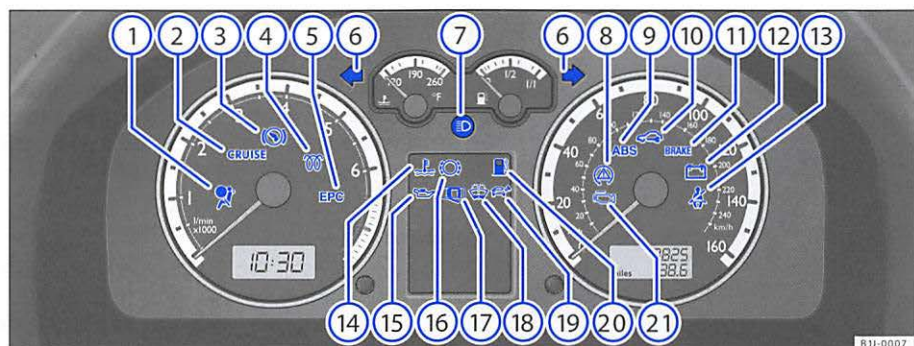
Always read and heed all WARNINGS in Booklets 3.1 and 3.4 when refuelling.

20 –Fuel level too low

The warning light will come on when the fuel level gets too low. **Time to refuel.**

Additionally a warning tone will sound and a text is shown in the display of the instrument cluster. This is to remind you to fill up the tank.

See "Fuel tank," chapter "FILLING YOUR TANK" **Booklet 3.4.**



21 –Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is part of the On Board Diagnostic system (OBD). The MIL is a required indicator to alert the driver to an emission related malfunction.

The light comes on when the ignition is switched on and will go out after the engine is started and the idle has stabilized. This is to assure you that the MIL is working properly.

If the lamp does not go out after the engine is started, or if it comes on while you're driving, there is a malfunction in the engine system.

If the lamp starts blinking, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** and have the cause corrected by an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or a qualified workshop. If possible, you should also avoid hard accelerations or driving on steep uphill grades until the cause is corrected.

Data Link Connector (DLC) for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

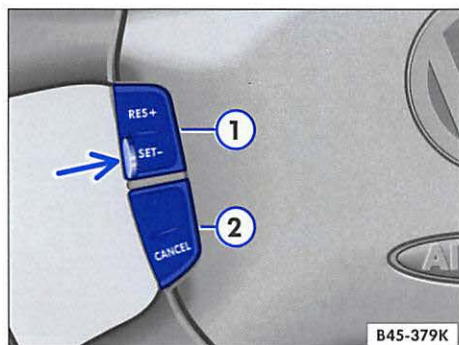
The On-Board-Diagnostics in your vehicle monitors the various components of your emission control system. Each controlled component in your engine system has been coded. In case of a malfunction the respective component in question will be identified and the fault stored in the form of a code in the control module's memory.

The stored data can only be displayed with special testing equipment (generic scan tool for OBD) to assure an accurate diagnosis.

To connect the special testing equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC) located to the right of the release lever for engine hood.

Your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or a qualified workshop can interpret the code and make the necessary correction.

Multi-function steering wheel*



Cruise control system*

Rocker switch 1

Lower half of the switch **SET -** :

Press once – the current speed will be stored.

Press twice – slow down.

The speed will be reduced as long as you hold the switch down. The speed at the moment you release the switch will be stored.

Upper half of the switch **RES +** :

Press once – resume stored speed.

Press twice – accelerate.

The speed will increase as long as you hold the switch down. The speed at the moment you release the switch will be stored.

Rocker switch 2

Lower half of the switch **CANCEL** :

Press once – the cruise control system* is switched off temporarily. The speed to be maintained is stored. Press **RES +** once in order to resume the stored speed.

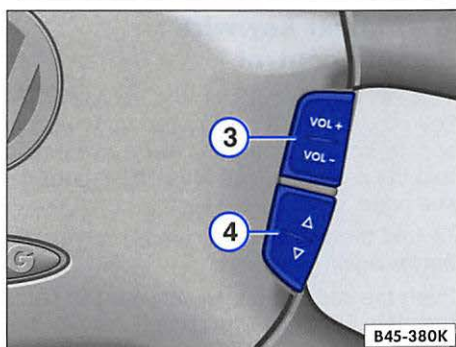
Further notes on page 125.

Note

To switch On or Off the cruise control system completely, please refer to page 125. However vehicles with the multifunction steering wheel do not come with the button B on the turn signal lever.

Lighting

There is a button on the left hand side (see arrow) to switch the button lighting of the multi-function steering wheel* on and off.



▽ Press lower surface:

- Station seek down (Radio)
- Fast rewind (Cassette operation*)
- Track search backwards (CD operation*)

Radio system*

Rocker switch 3

Press the upper half of the switch **VOL +** – to increase the volume

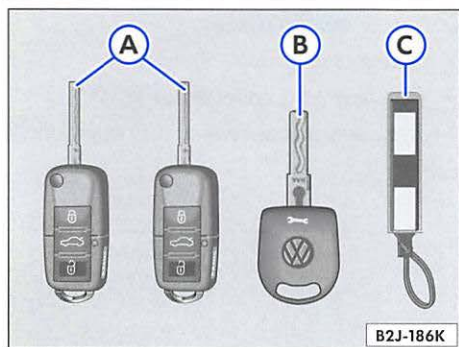
Press the lower half of the switch **VOL –** – to decrease the volume

Rocker switch 4

△ Press upper surface:

- Station seek up (Radio)
- Fast forward (Cassette operation*)
- Track search forwards (CD operation*)

Keys



Three keys and a key tag are provided with your VOLKSWAGEN.

A – Two folding master keys with remote control

B – One valet key

C – One tag

WARNING

Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the key in the ignition lock. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or harm the vehicle. Always lock all doors and take the key.

The Master keys and the valet key can be inserted into locks either way.

Note

If you open the driver's door with the key left in the ignition lock, **a chime** will sound. This is your reminder to remove the key and lock the door.

A – Master key with Remote control

This key fits all locks on the vehicle. This key allows you to open/close your vehicle and to set the anti-theft alarm system. To fold the key out, press the release button – see page 31.

To fold the key back in, press the release button again

Push the red button, to activate the panic function. The horn sounds and the turn signals will flash for approximately 30 seconds.

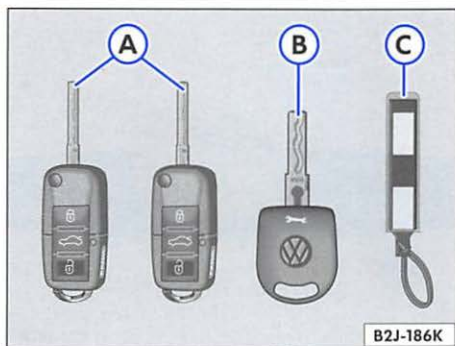
For more information see page 32.

WARNING

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle especially with access to the remote control. The remote control could be used to lock the doors delaying access to the children in an emergency.

To replace batteries of the remote control:

Your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer can change the batteries for you.



B – Valet key

This key is for the driver's door and the steering / ignition lock only.

The lockable glove compartment (located underneath the passenger airbag) and the rear lid cannot be opened with this key.

If you have to leave a key with somebody else, it may be advisable to give them this key only.

WARNING

● **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in starting of the engine or use of vehicle systems such as the power windows*, etc. which could result in serious injury.**

● **Do not remove key from steering lock while you are driving or as the vehicle is rolling to a stop. The steering column will lock up and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.**

C – Key tag

The key tag contains the key number that is needed to obtain replacement keys. Your Volkswagen dealer can order replacement keys **only** if they have this number.

To protect against theft:

Record and keep the key number in a secure place. **Do not keep it in the vehicle.**

If you sell the vehicle, you should also give the buyer this key tag.

Key replacement

For security reasons, replacement keys are only available from Volkswagen dealers.

If you need a duplicate key, provide the key number to your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

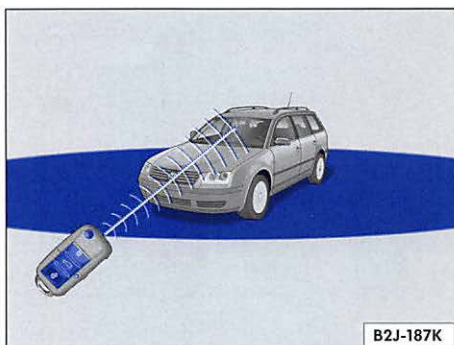
Remote control

General description

The remote control allows you to do the following without having to use your key:

- Lock or unlock your vehicle via the power locking system (at the same time, activating or deactivating the anti-theft alarm system)
- Use the selective unlock feature (open the driver's door only)
- Switch on the interior lights
- Unlock the rear lid
- Activating the "panic function."

The remote transmitter and the batteries are located in the key. The receiver for the signal is inside the passenger compartment. Your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer can change the batteries for you.



The **operating range** (blue) for the remote control is shown in the illustration. Maximum range of effectiveness depends on several things. If the batteries are weak, the range will decrease.

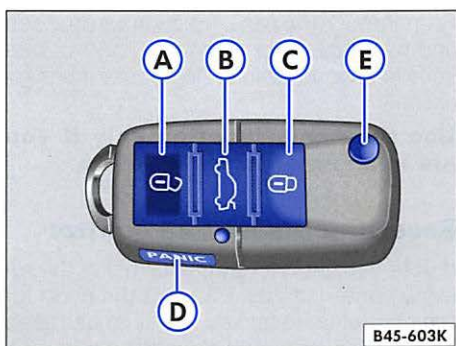
Note

In exceptional cases, the remote control could be activated unintentionally, even if you are out of the operating range. Please use the remote control only if you attempt to use one of the functions.



WARNING

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle especially with access to the remote control. The remote control could be used to lock the doors delaying access to the children in an emergency.



How the remote control works

Button **A** unlocks the vehicle. After unlocking the vehicle, you have 30 seconds to open a door. If you wait longer than 30 seconds, the vehicle will automatically lock itself once again. This prevents you from unintentionally unlocking the vehicle while you are standing within the range of effectiveness of the remote control.

The anti-theft alarm system is turned off for these 30 seconds. If the vehicle locks itself again, the alarm system will be reactivated.

Unfolding / folding the master key

If you want to lock or unlock your vehicle using your key, you have to unfold your key first by pushing button **E**. To fold the key back into place, press the button again.

Unlocking and locking

Unlocking

Stand near the vehicle (inside the effective range), point the key toward the vehicle and press button **A one time**:

Just the driver's door will be unlocked and the anti-theft alarm system* is switched off.

Press button **A two times** and you unlock all the doors.

The anti-theft alarm system* is switched off.

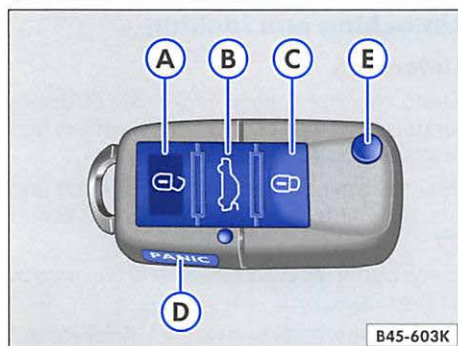
Locking

To lock, press button **C**.

Switching on / off the anti-theft alarm system

The alarm system is switched on automatically whenever you lock the vehicle and all doors are closed. This will be confirmed with **one** beep and **one** flash of all turn signals as well as the indicator lights of the turn signals in the instrument cluster.

The system switches off when you unlock the vehicle. This will be confirmed with **two** flashes of all turn signals as well as the indicator lights of the turn signals in the instrument cluster.



Remote rear lid release

To unlock, stand near the vehicle (inside the effective range), point the key toward the vehicle, press and hold button **B** for about **three seconds**.

This will be confirmed with **two** flashes of all turn signals as well as the indicator lights of the turn signals in the instrument cluster.

After unlocking the rear lid, you have about two minutes to open the rear lid.

PANIC switch (button D)

By pushing the red button **D** you will engage the "panic function." The horn sounds and the turn signals will flash for approximately 30 seconds.

Press button **D** again to switch off the "panic function."

Remember – the panic function can be seen and heard by other motorists and / or persons near your vehicle. Do not use it unnecessarily.

Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation.

Resetting the remote control

If your vehicle will not unlock using the remote control, it could be that the code for the control unit and key needs to be reset. This can occur if you frequently use the remote control while standing outside of the effective range.

If this happens, then you need to reset (synchronize) the remote control.

Resetting the key

Note

You have only 1 minute to reset the remote control.

- 1 - Press button **A** or button **C** **one time** for one second. The vehicle remains locked. The control unit recognizes only one key code via the master key.
- 2 - Lock or unlock the vehicle with the **master key**.

The resetting procedure is now complete. The key code is part of the master key. When you insert the master key, a new code is created between the control unit and the key.

Manually programming the remote control

If you need an additional remote control for your vehicle, then your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer must program it for you.

It is possible to have a maximum of four remote controls for your vehicle.

The key must be programmed in order to fully use the remote control feature.

See your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for more information.

Programming the remote control

- 1 - Insert the master key into the ignition lock and switch on the ignition (don't start the engine!)
- 2 - Lock the vehicle from the outside manually using the second master key or valet key.
- 3 - Press button **A** or button **C** on the remote control **one time** and then **wait at least 2 seconds**.
- 4 - Press either button once again **one time**.
- 5 - Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition lock.

The manual programming procedure is complete. The remote control is functional again.

Notes

- **You have only 30 seconds to perform steps 2 through 4.**
- Each new key must also be programmed as described here.

Anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system makes it difficult for someone to break into your vehicle. The system triggers an audible alarm and switches on the emergency flasher if it senses unauthorized interference with the vehicle.

You can turn on the system using either your key or the remote control.

When you lock the vehicle, you turn on the alarm system automatically. Simply turn the key to the lock position or use the remote control.

The alarm sounds when (on a locked vehicle)

- a door,
- the engine hood, or
- the rear lid is forced open,
- or when the ignition is switched on.

The horn will sound and the emergency flashers will blink for about 30 seconds.

Notes

- If you must leave your vehicle parked for a long period of time, the system warning light in the driver's door will go out after 28 days. This is meant to conserve battery power. The system is still operating.
- If the alarm has sounded one time, and then the vehicle is forced open again (for example, someone tries to forcibly open a door, and then tries to force open the rear lid), the signal will sound once again.
- You can turn on / off the alarm system using your remote control. For more details, see "Remote Control" on page 30.

Doors, Power locks

The power locking system simultaneously locks or unlocks the doors.

- To lock and unlock the vehicle from the **outside**, turn the key in the lock of the driver's door.
- To lock and unlock the vehicle from the **inside**, press the power locking switch in the front doors. See page 36.
- You can also lock and unlock the vehicle using the **remote control**.
- The anti-theft alarm system switches on or off whenever you lock or unlock the vehicle with the key or remote control.

Unlocking with key

- 1 - Insert the key into the driver's door.
- 2 - Turn the key **one time only**:

Just the driver's door is unlocked (selective unlock feature).

The anti-theft alarm system is turned off and the interior lights will come on for about 20 seconds (see page 57).

- 3 - Turn the key **two times**:

All the vehicle doors are unlocked and the anti-theft alarm system* is turned **off** immediately.

If your power locking system should not work, you can still open your vehicle manually using the key. The locks themselves are still functional.

To open all windows (vehicles equipped with power windows):

- 1 - Insert your key into the lock in the driver's door.
- 2 - Turn clockwise and hold the key in the open position.

Locking with key

- 1 - Insert the key into the lock in the driver's door.
- 2 - Turn the key clockwise **once**.

When you lock the vehicle:

- all doors are locked, (the locking knobs in all doors will lower),
- the anti-theft alarm system is **immediately** activated,
- the vehicle interior lights turn off, and
- the anti-theft alarm system* readiness light near the driver's door locking knob will start to blink.



WARNING

When you lock your vehicle from the outside, nobody – especially children – should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside (in vehicles with power windows) – see page 42.

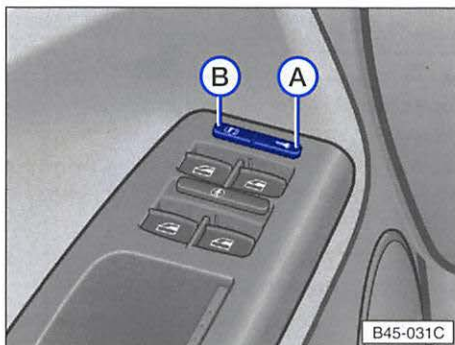
If your vehicle is equipped with power windows and / or a power sunroof*, you can also close any open windows and / or the sunroof when you lock your vehicle. Insert the key into the driver's lock, turn it to the lock position and hold until the windows and sunroof are completely closed.

By **depressing the locking knobs** in the doors, you can also lock the vehicle, however the anti-theft alarm system will not be turned on.

If the driver's door is open, or not closed properly, you will not be able to lock the vehicle.

Notes

If you have locked your vehicle you can still unlock each door from the inside individually: Pull the front door handle once and the rear door handle twice to open the door.



Power locking switch

The entire vehicle can be locked / unlocked from the inside by using the power locking switch in the driver's or in the front passenger's door.

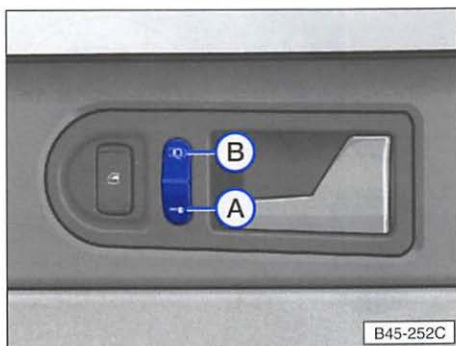
The switches also work when the ignition is off.

- To **lock all doors** simultaneously, press part **A** of power locking switch (the left illustration shows the switch in the driver's door on vehicles with power windows and the right illustration shows the passenger's door).

If the driver's door is open, it will not lock. This prevents you from locking yourself out of your vehicle.

If you use the power locking switch, the anti-theft alarm system is **not** activated.

- To **unlock all doors** at the same time, press part **B** of the switch.



Notes

If you have locked your vehicle you can still unlock each door from the inside individually: Pull the front door handle once and the rear door handle twice to open the door.

WARNING

- If you use the power locking switch, remember that all the vehicle doors will lock.

Locking doors from the inside can help prevent inadvertent door opening during an accident and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.

- Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. If the locking knobs of all doors are depressed, the vehicle will be locked. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.

Automatic locking at vehicle speed higher than 10 mph (15 km/h)

The power locking system can be programmed by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer so that all the doors and the rear lid on your vehicle lock automatically when the vehicle is moving faster than 10 mph (15 km/h).

If this feature is activated, the vehicle will automatically unlock when you remove the key from the ignition lock.

WARNING

Do not remove the key from the steering lock while you are driving or as the vehicle is rolling to a stop.

The steering column will lock up, and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.

Of course you can always open the vehicle using the power locking switch or by pulling the front door handle once and the rear door handle twice.

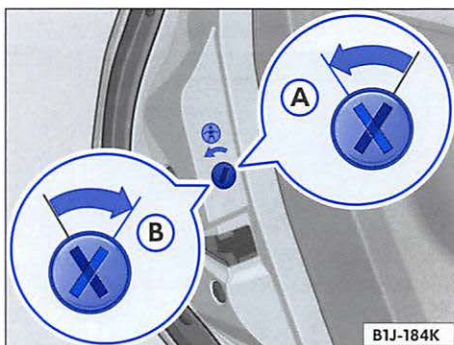
Contact the nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for more information.

Child safety lock for rear doors

To prevent children in the back seat from accidentally opening the rear doors, a safety mechanism is provided on each rear door.

Using the child safety lock

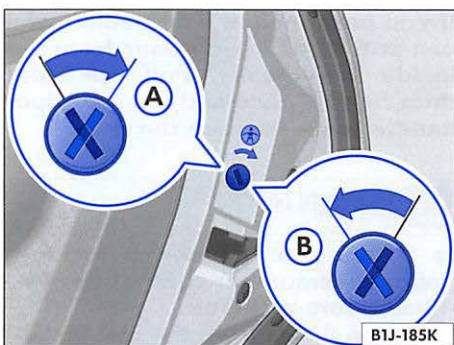
Using a key from your vehicle, move the slot of the lock in the direction of the arrow – refer to **A**. The inside door opening handle is blocked and door can only be opened from the outside. Make sure the door locking knob is in the up position.



Driver's side rear door

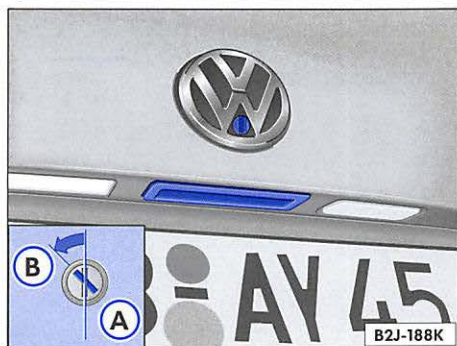
Deactivating the child safety lock

Again, using a key or other suitable object, move the slot of the lock in the opposite way – refer to **B**. You can now open the door from the inside. Remember that the locking knob must be in the up position.



Passenger's side rear door

Rear lid



Lock positions:

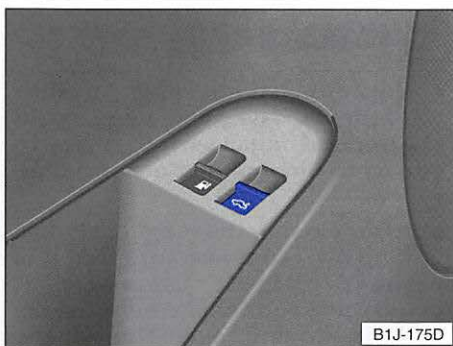
Position A:

With the key slot in vertical position, the rear lid can be unlocked by:

- using the remote control (see page 30)
- the switch on the driver's door panel (see right illustration)
- using your vehicle key. Turn key to position **B**.

Position B:

If a fault should appear in the locking system, or if the vehicle's battery is discharged, it is still possible to open the rear lid manually.



To release the rear lid from the inside

Pull the switch (see right illustration) on the driver's door panel. The switch also works with the ignition switched off.

After unlocking the rear lid, you have about two minutes to open the rear lid.

Opening and closing the rear lid

To open, grasp the opening (see left illustration) of the rear lid and lift the it open.

A warning light (see also page 24) in the instrument cluster comes on when the ignition is on and the rear lid is open. Additionally, a warning tone will sound and a warning text is displayed on the instrument cluster. This is a reminder to close the rear lid. The light should go out when the rear lid is closed properly.

To close, swing the lid down until it closes.

There is an opening for your hand inside the trim panel which makes it easier to grab the lid and pull it down.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

 WARNING

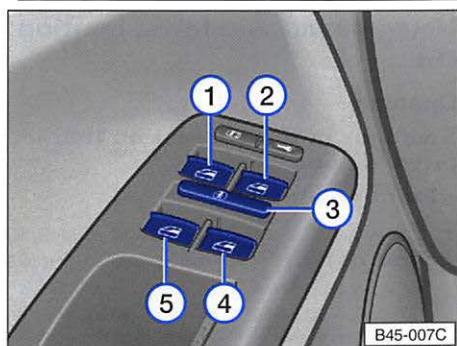
- **Never push on the glass to close the rear lid. The glass pane could shatter and cause serious injury to you or to anyone in close proximity.**
- **After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving, even though the key has been turned to the locked position.**
- **To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area, because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid, as well the vehicle doors, closed when not in use.**

For further information see "Luggage compartment" on page 79.

Note

A warning light illuminates when the ignition is on and the rear lid is open, see page 24.

Power windows*



The switches are located in the driver's door. Also, the front passenger's door and each rear door has its own power window switch.

Following switches are located in the driver's door (see illustration):

- 1 – Driver's door
- 2 – Front passenger's door
- 3 – Safety switch
- 4 – Right rear door
- 5 – Left rear door.

The switches **1** and **2** in the armrest on the driver's door are **"dual function"** switches.

If the respective switch is pushed or pulled to the **first detent**, the front window will open or close only as long as you push / pull the switch.

If the respective switch is pushed up or down **all the way** briefly, the window will open or close **automatically (one-touch up feature, one-touch down feature)**.

All windows are equipped with **pinch protection**.

This means that if something should block the window while it is closing, it will stop automatically and then immediately open again.

Please note that when closing the windows from the outside, using the key, the function of the "Pinch protection" is switched off. The window will close regardless of any obstacles.



WARNING

Be careful when closing the windows. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result.

The safety switch (**3**) in the armrest on the driver's door can turn off the rear power windows. This feature has been provided for the safety of small children riding in the rear of the vehicle.

Safety switch in **"unlatched (up) position"**:

...the switches in the rear doors are on and the power windows work.

Safety switch in **"latched (depressed) position"**:

...the switches in the rear doors are switched off, the rear power windows cannot be raised or lowered with the rear switches.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

 WARNING

● **Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unsupervised use of the keys can result in starting of the engine and use of vehicle systems such as power windows, power sunroof, etc. which could result in serious injury.**

● **Remember also that the power windows will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened.**

● **Be careful when closing the windows. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!**

● **Switch off the power to the rear windows – if necessary – using the safety switch 3 (see illustration on page 41).**

● **Always remove the ignition key whenever you leave your vehicle.**

● **If you lock your vehicle from the outside, no one especially children should remain in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.**

● **Do not stick anything on the windows or the windshield that may interfere with the driver's vision.**

Using power windows, ignition On

Opening

Switches in the armrest on the driver's door

– Front windows

- Press switch on upper edge down to **first detent**. The window will open as long as the switch is pressed down. Press switch down **all the way** briefly. The window will open automatically (**one-touch down feature**). If you press the switch while the window is opening, the window will stop where it is.

– Rear windows

- Press switch on upper edge down. The window will open as long as the switch is pressed down.

Switch in the passenger's door

- Press lower edge of rocker switch. The window will open as long as the switch is pressed.

Switches in the rear doors

- Press lower edge of rocker switch. The respective window will open as long as the switch is pressed.

Closing**WARNING**

- **Be careful when closing the windows.**
- **Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result.**

Switches in the driver's door**- Front windows :**

- Pull switch on upper edge up to **first detent**. The window will close as long as you pull the switch.
Pull switch on upper edge up **all the way** briefly, (**one-touch up feature**). The window will close automatically. If you press the switch while the window is opening, the window will stop where it is.

- Rear windows:

- Pull switch on upper edge. The window will close as long as you pull the switch.

Switch in the passenger door

- Push switch on upper edge. The window will close as long as you push the switch.

Switches in the rear doors

- Push switch on upper edge. The window will close as long as you push the switch.

"Pinch Protection"

- 1 - If something interferes with a power window while it is closing, it will stop and then immediately open again.
- 2 - After the window has opened, you have to lift the switch within 10 seconds to try to close it again. The window will now move upwards with greater force. If the window is still prevented from closing, it will stay open.
- 3 - If the window stays open, you have to lift the switch again within 5 seconds in order to close the window. **The pinch protection is now switched off.**

Note

If you wait longer than 10 respectively 5 seconds between the steps described above, the window will open completely when you press the switch again.

**WARNING**

- **Be careful when closing the windows while overriding the pinch protection!**
- **Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result.**

Using power windows, ignition Off

You can still use the power windows for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off even if the ignition key has been removed as long as the driver's door or passenger's door are not opened.

The automatic closing feature (one-touch-up) does not work once the ignition has been switched off. The window can only be closed as long as the switch is activated.

If the driver's or the front passenger's windows are hard to close because of stiffness or are obstructed by an object when closing (pinch protection) the window will open immediately.

In this case the window can be closed again only when the ignition is switched on.

The windows can also be closed or opened from the outside. To do this, the key must be held in the close or open position in the lock on the driver's door.

The window closes without pinch protection.

Notes

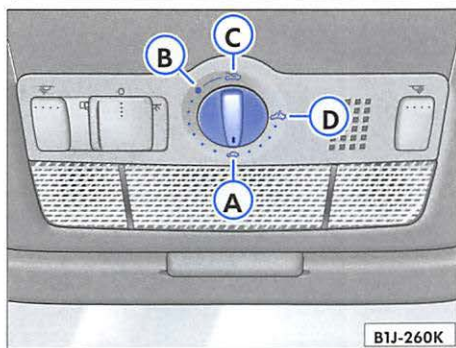
If the vehicle battery is disconnected and then reconnected, or, if the battery becomes completely discharged, the automatic closing and opening function will be deactivated and will no longer work.

To reactivate this feature, do the following:

- Lock the vehicle via the driver's door. Make sure that all the doors and windows are completely closed.
- Unlock the vehicle one more time.
- Turn the key to the lock position a second time and hold the key in the lock position for at least 1 second.

Automatic closing / opening is now reactivated.

Power roof*



The power roof is opened and closed with the ignition on by turning the rotary switch. You can still open or close the roof for approximately 10 minutes after switching off the ignition – even if the key has been removed – as long as the driver's door or front passenger's door hasn't been opened.

Always close the roof completely if you are going to park your vehicle and leave.



WARNING

● Be careful when closing the sun-roof/tilt roof. Not paying attention could cause you or others to be caught and injured as the roof closes. To help avoid injuries caused by closing the roof, always take your key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Opening

Turn the rotary switch clockwise until to the desired position. In position **B**, the roof opens to the "**Comfort**" position.

If you want to open the roof all the way, turn the switch until it reaches position **C**. However, wind noise may occur at this position.

Closing:

Turn the switch to position **A**.

The power roof also has the "**pinch protection feature**". If something interferes with a power roof while it is closing, it will stop and then immediately open again.

To re-close the power roof **push** and **hold** the switch on the front edge (**A** position) until the roof is completely closed. **The pinch protection is now switched off.**



WARNING

- Be careful when closing the power roof while overriding the pinch protection!
- Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result.

Note

If the battery has been disconnected and then reconnected again, the power roof may not close properly. Press the switch at the front edge for 10 seconds.

Roof, Raising

Turn the switch to position **D**.

Closing

Turn the switch to position **A**.

The power roof closes, however **the pinch protection is off**.

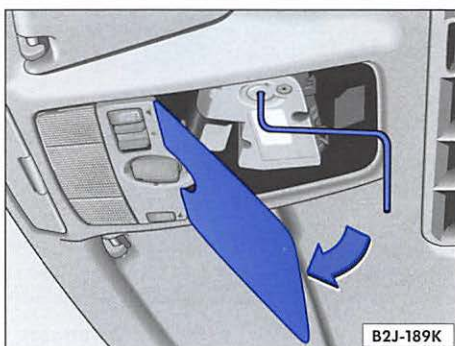
Notes

- The rotary switch can be set to any intermediate position.
- When the glass roof opens, the sun visor used to keep out strong sunlight is also opened automatically. If desired, the visor can be slid shut manually when the power roof is closed.

Convenience closing

You can also close the sunroof from the outside when locking your vehicle:

Hold the key in the close position in the driver's door.



Emergency closing

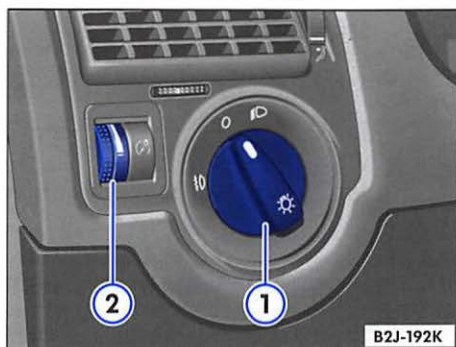
If you cannot close the roof with the electric switch, you can still close the roof manually.

- Remove the plastic cover from the rear side (arrow) using a screwdriver.
- Remove the crank from the holder, insert it into the hole until it seats (overcoming the spring force) and turn the crank to close the roof.
- Put the crank back in the holder and reinstall the cover.

Note

If you are unable to close the roof manually, contact your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.

Switches



WARNING

Accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.

- **Never use daytime running lights to see where you're going. They are not bright enough and won't let you see far enough ahead for safety, especially at dusk or when it's dark.**
- **Rear tail lights do not light up when daytime running lights are on. A vehicle without rear tail lights turned on cannot be seen by others in bad weather at dusk or when it is dark.**
- **Always turn on the headlights so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your vehicle from the back.**

1 – Lights



– Daytime running lights

When the ignition is switched on and the hand brake is not pulled up, the headlights (low beam with reduced brightness) will automatically come on. No other lights on the outside of your vehicle will be on and the instrument lights will also be off.

– Low and high beam

The headlights work only when the ignition is switched on.

For information on high beam, low beam and headlight flasher, see page 51.

If the headlight switch is left on and the ignition key is removed a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened. This is your reminder to switch off the lights before leaving the vehicle.

Front fog lights*



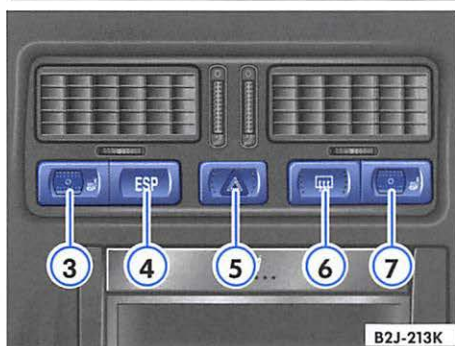
With the light switch turned to the low / high beam position, pull the switch out to the first detent point.

The indicator light next to the fog light symbol comes on.

2 – Instrument illumination



With the lights switched on, turn the thumb wheel to adjust the brightness of the instruments.



3 – Electrically heated driver's seat*



With the ignition on, the seat cushion and backrest of the driver's seat can be heated. The heating elements in the seats can be turned on and regulated with the thumb-wheel switch.

To switch off the seat heating, turn the thumbwheel switch to the detent position.

4 – Electronic Stability Program* (ESP)

The **ESP** with **ASR** (Anti-Slip Regulation) is switched on automatically when the engine is started. If required, it can also be switched on and off manually by briefly pressing the switch.

Press the button (see illustration) to turn the system off.

When the system is switched off, the warning light comes on. See page 18.

The system should only be turned off in exceptional cases when slip is desired, for example:

- when driving with snow chains;
- when driving in deep snow or on loose road surfaces;
- when trying to "rock out" a vehicle that has become stuck.

Once these conditions no longer apply, turn on the system again by pressing the button. The system is automatically activated when the engine is started.

See "Electronic Stability Program (ESP)," and "Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)" chapter "OPTIMAL TECHNOLOGY" **Booklet 3.4.** for further details.

4 – Anti-Slip Regulation* **ASR**

The **ASR** is switched on automatically when the engine is started. If required, it can also be switched on and off manually by briefly pressing the switch.

Press the button (see illustration) to turn the system off.

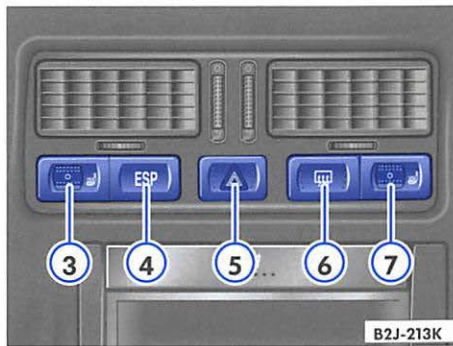
When the system is switched off, the warning light comes on. See page 18.

The system should only be turned off in exceptional cases when slip is desired, for example:

- when driving with snow chains;
- when driving in deep snow or on loose road surfaces;
- when trying to "rock out" a vehicle that has become stuck.

Once these conditions no longer apply, turn on the system again by pressing the button. The system is automatically activated when the engine is started.

See "Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)" chapter "OPTIMAL TECHNOLOGY" **Booklet 3.4.** for further details.



5 – Emergency flasher

The emergency flasher works when the ignition is off or on.

If your vehicle is disabled or parked under emergency conditions, depress the switch to make all turn signals flash at the same time. The warning light in the switch and the indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash too.



WARNING

To avoid being struck by another vehicle, move your vehicle a safe distance off the road when stalled or stopped for repairs. Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material that can cause fire.

6 – Rear window defogger

The rear window defogger works only with the ignition on.

Press the switch to turn on the rear window defogger.

The control light in the switch will light up to remind you that the defogger is switched on.

 **Switch off the defogger when the rear window is clear. When you save electricity, you use less fuel. See "Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution," chapter "DRIVING AND PROTECTING OUR ENVIRONMENT" Booklet 3.4.**

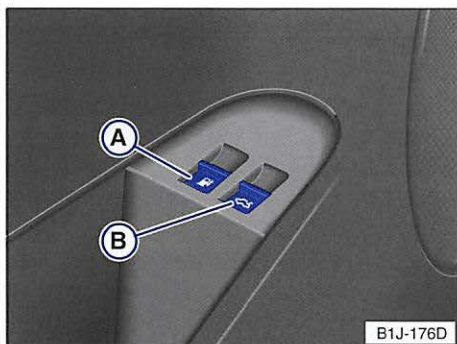
The rear window defogger is not designed to melt snow. Therefore, always remove heavy snow and ice accumulations before driving off.

7 – Electrically heated passenger seat*

With the ignition on, the seat cushion and backrest of the passenger's seat can be heated.

The heating elements in the seats can be turned on and regulated with the thumb wheel switch.

To switch off the seat heating, turn the thumbwheel switch to the detent position.



Switches in the driver's door panel

A – Fuel filler flap release



Pull up the switch to unlock the fuel filler flap. The switch also works with the ignition off.

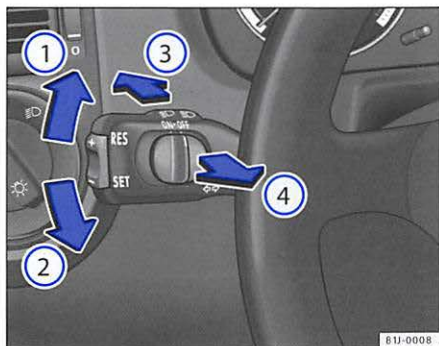
B – Rear lid release



Pull up the switch to unlock the rear lid. The switch also works with the ignition off.

A warning light in the instrument cluster comes on when the ignition is on and the rear lid is open. Additionally a warning tone* will sound and a warning text* is shown in the display of the instrument cluster. This is to remind you to close the rear lid. The light should go out when the rear lid is closed properly.

Turn signals / High beam lever



Turn signals

The turn signal indicator light flashes when you operate the lever (ignition on).

Lever up (**1**) – right turn signal

Lever down (**2**) – left turn signal.

The turn signals are cancelled automatically when you have completed a turn (for example, when turning a corner), and the steering wheel returns to the straight ahead position.

If a turn signal fails, the indicator light flashes about twice as fast as usual. A light bulb may have to be replaced.

Lane changer

Move the lever up (**1**) or down (**2**) just to the point of resistance – the indicator light must also flash at the same time. The lever will return to its normal position when released.

High beam On / Off

The headlights work only when the ignition is switched on.

Switching on:

With the headlights on, push the lever forward (**3**).

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster will come on.

The headlights still stay on when you switch on the high beam.

Switching off:

Pull the lever in the opposite direction (**3**) – towards you.

Headlight flasher

You can signal with your high beams by pulling the lever toward the steering wheel (position **4**).

When flashing the high beams, the blue indicator light in the instrument cluster will come on.

Wiper and washer system

The wiper and washer system works only when the ignition is on.

The **heated* washer jets** do not have a separate switch. Depending on the outside temperature, the heated washer jets will operate when the ignition is on.

To prevent damage to the wiping system, always loosen blades frozen to glass before operating wipers.

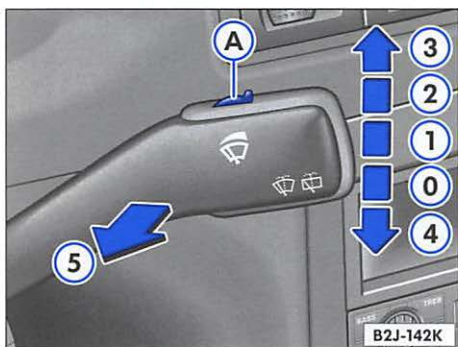
Notes

- Filling washer container, see "Windshield washer container", chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING" **Booklet 3.4.** for further details.
- Replacing wiper blades, see page 46.



WARNING

Always heed WARNINGS on page 54.



Windshield

● Wiper off:

Lever in position **0**

● Intermittent wiping:

Lever in position **1**

You can adjust to wiping intervals to four different settings using the small lever **A**.

Turn the small lever **A** to the right – shorter intervals

Turn the small lever **A** to the left – longer intervals

In each setting, the intervals are also controlled by the speed of the vehicle.

● Low wiper speed

Lever in position **2**

● High wiper speed

Lever in position **3**

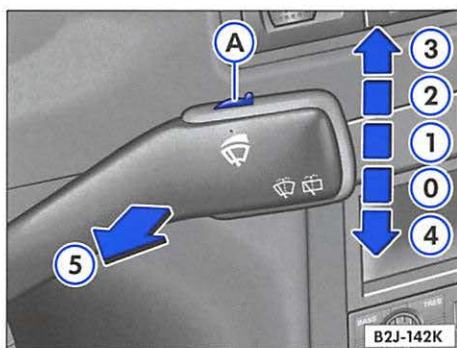
● One-tap wiping

Lever in position **4**



WARNING

Always heed WARNINGS on page 54.



● Automatic wiper / washer

Pull lever toward steering wheel and hold – wipers and washer work (position **5**).

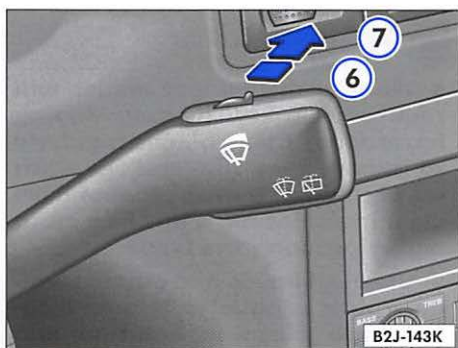
Release lever – washer stops and the wipers keep going for about four seconds.

Rain sensor*

The rain sensor is part of the intermittent wiping function. When you have the intermittent wiping function switched on, the rain sensor automatically either shortens or lengthens the pause between wipes depending on how hard it's raining.

Use **switch A** on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity level of the rain sensor.

Intermittent wiping and rain sensor functions are deactivated when the ignition is turned off, and reactivated when the intermittent wiping switch is turned on again.



Rear window

● Interval wiper

Switching on:

Lever at position **6**.

The wipers work approximately every 6 seconds.

Switching off:

Pull the lever towards the steering wheel. The wiper blade may continue to wipe for a short period if you have switched off during the wiping procedure.

● Washer / Wiper

Switching on:

Push the lever all the way forward **7** – the washer / wiper system will operate for as long as the lever is held in this position.

Switching off:

Release the lever – the washer system will stop and the wiper continues to work at intervals.



WARNING

Always heed WARNINGS on next page.



WARNING

- **Worn or dirty wiper blades will reduce visibility, making driving hazardous. Clean blades regularly to remove road film and car wash wax buildup. Use an alcohol base cleaning solution, a lint free cloth and wipe along the blade.**
- **Clean all inside and outside window glass regularly. Use an alcohol base cleaning solution and wipe dry with a lint free or a cham-
ois.**
- **Do not use the wiper/washer in freezing weather without first warming the windshield with the defrosters. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.**
- **To prevent scratching the glass, avoid running the wiper blades over a dry windshield. A scratched windshield will reduce visibility and increase glare at night.**

Wiper blades

Wiper blades must be in good condition so that you can see clearly through the windshield.

Clean your wiper blades regularly with a windshield washer solution to prevent streaking. If the blades are very dirty, for example with insects, carefully clean the blades with a sponge or a soft brush.

If the wiper blades begin to streak the windshield, this could be caused by residue left on the windshield by automatic car washes.

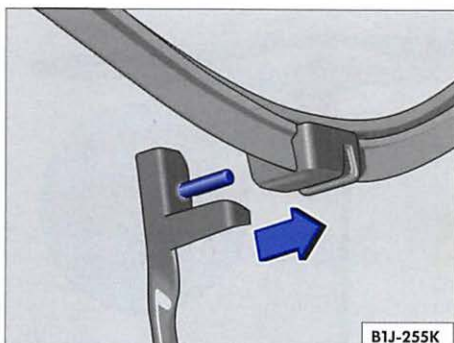
Fill the windshield washer container with a special solution available at your VOLKSWAGEN dealer to remove the residue.

To prevent damage to the wiping system, always loosen blades frozen to glass before operating wipers.

Be sure to inspect the condition of your wiper blades regularly. For safety reasons, replace your wiper blades once or twice a year if necessary. See your VOLKSWAGEN dealer for replacement blades.

Notes

- **Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes affect the cleanability of the windshield.**
- **To prevent damage to wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near the wiper blades.**
- **To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers by hand.**



Replacing windshield wiper blades

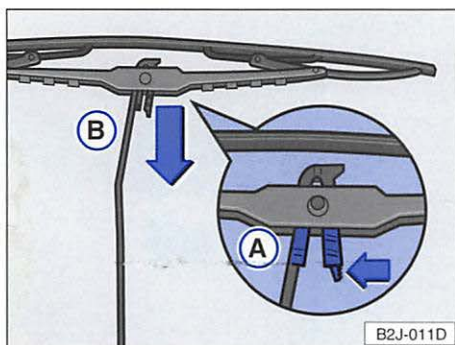
- Fold the wiper arm away from the windshield and pivot the wiper blade mount away from the wiper arm.
- Remove the wiper blade from the mount by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.

Installing new windshield wiper blades

- Install the new wiper blade by pushing in the opposite direction of the arrow.
- Pivot the wiper blade mount back and lower the wiper arm back on to the windshield.

Note

Always install the longer wiper blade to the driver side.



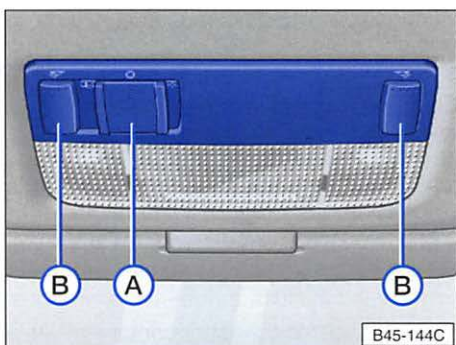
Replacing rear window wiper blade

- Raise the wiper arm and hold wiper blade horizontally.
- Depress locking spring **A** and remove blade by pulling it towards the rear window.

Installing new rear window wiper blade

- The locking spring must click into place on the wiper arm.

Interior lights



A – Front interior light

Switch positions:

- Off
- To right – a light illuminates when a door opens

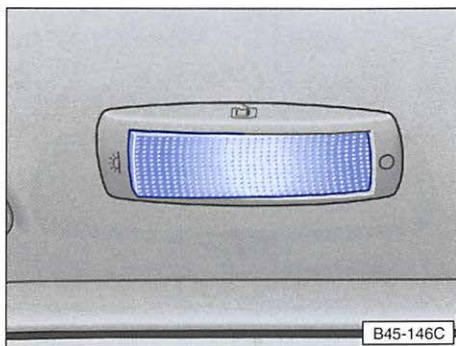
Lights with delayed turn-off will stay on for approximately 30 seconds after you've closed the doors.

- To left – light stays on



B – Front map light

- Press switch **B** to turn light on or off.



Rear interior light

Switch positions:

- Off
- Center position – light illuminates when a door opens
- The light stays on



Interior light control

The interior light illuminates...

- whenever you unlock the vehicle, or
- open a door, or
- remove the ignition key

as long as the switch on either of the interior lights is in position



The light goes off as soon as you lock the vehicle or switch on the ignition.

The light will stay on for about 10 minutes if you leave a door open.

Glove compartment light

The light in the glove compartment only illuminates when the glove compartment is open.

That's why it's important to make sure the glove compartment is **always properly closed**, otherwise you could drain the battery.

Luggage compartment light

The light illuminates when you open the trunk/rear lid, even when the ignition is off. Make sure that the trunk/rear lid is **always properly closed**, otherwise you could drain the battery.

Front door panel light

The light in the front door panel comes on only when the doors are open.

Mirrors

Adjust the outside and inside mirrors before driving and after adjusting your seat to the proper driving position. It's important for safe driving that you have good vision to the rear.

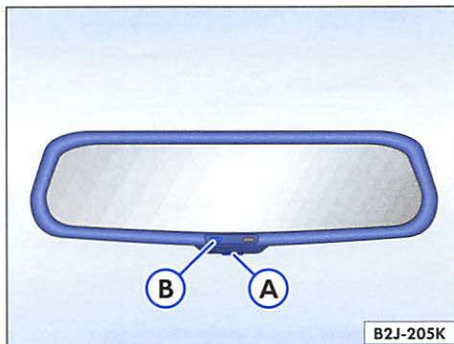
Inside day-night mirror

Manual adjustment

You can adjust the day-night mirror from clear daylight visibility to non-glare visibility at night by moving the lever at the bottom of the mirror.

To ensure the best possible anti-glare effect, the lever on the lower edge of the mirror should be pointing forwards before the basic setting is made.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| Daylight driving | – lever to front |
| Night driving | – lever to rear. |

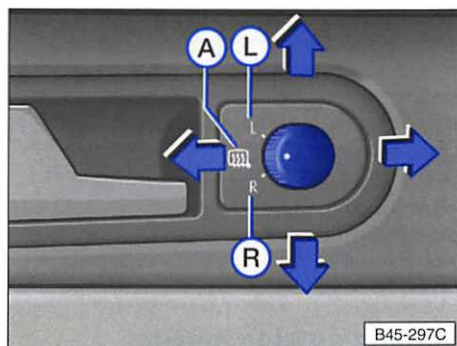


Self-dimming*

When the ignition is switched on the interior mirror will darken automatically depending on the amount of light shining into the vehicle from the rear (e. g. headlights).

The mirror will return to the original state (i. e. not anti-dazzle) when the reverse gear is selected or the selector lever is moved to position **R** on the automatic transmission.

- Press button **A** to switch **off** the self dimming system completely. When the button is pressed, the indicator light **B** will go out.
- Press the button again to switch the system **on**. The indicator light **B** comes on.



Power outside mirrors

You can change the setting of both outside mirrors using the "joystick."

L – Outside mirror on the driver's side

R – Outside mirror on the passenger's side

A – Mirror heating

If you move the joystick to position **A**, the mirrors will be electrically heated. Remember, whenever the switch is in this position, the mirror heating is on, regardless of the outside temperature. When you switch off the ignition, the outside mirror heating is switched off as well.

Note

When the outside mirrors are finally clear of ice or fog, turn the joystick to either the R or L position to switch off the mirror heating.

Switch off the mirror heating when the mirrors are clear. When you save electricity, you use less fuel. See "Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution," chapter "DRIVING AND PROTECTING OUR ENVIRONMENT" Booklet 3.4.

Notes

The mirror surface will move in the same direction as you move the joystick.

If the electrical adjustment of the mirror doesn't respond, adjust the mirror by hand by pushing lightly on the edge of the mirror glass.

Outside mirrors

The adjustment and heating of the outside mirrors works only with the ignition on.

The outside mirrors are hinged and yield when pushed from either direction.

Adjust the outside mirrors so that the side of your own vehicle can just be seen. This setting ensures the best possible field of view and enables you to check the mirror setting at a glance.

WARNING

● The right hand outside mirror has a convex (curved) surface. Remember that vehicles or other objects seen in a convex mirror will appear smaller and farther away than when seen in a flat mirror. If you use this mirror to estimate distances of following vehicles when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause an accident.

● Whenever possible, use the inside mirror to determine the actual distance and size of vehicles or other objects seen in the convex mirror.

Synchronized* mirror adjustment

- If you adjust the driver's outside mirror (**L**) using the "joystick", the passenger's mirror will automatically adjust at the same time. Separate adjustment of the passenger's mirror is not necessarily required. If this should be necessary, just move the joystick to position (**R**) to switch over to the passenger's mirror – the mirror can now be adjusted.

- If the electrical adjustment of the mirror doesn't respond, adjust the mirror by hand by pushing lightly on the edge of the mirror glass.

Memory* for outside mirrors

Vehicles equipped with **memory driver's seat*** also have a "memory" for the outside mirrors.

The position of the outside mirrors will automatically be "memorized" whenever a driver's seat position is memorized – see page 68.

First adjust the driver's seat position. Then adjust the outside mirrors.

Folding down* the outside mirror passenger's side

When you move the gearshift or selector lever of your automatic transmission into "**R**" (Reverse), the outside mirror on the passenger's side will tilt slightly downwards provided that you have moved the "joystick" into position **R**, see illustration.

This makes it possible to see the edge of the curb when parking your vehicle. The mirror will return to its original position as soon as you move the gearshift or selector lever of your automatic transmission out of "**R**" (Reverse) or if you move the "joystick" of the outside mirrors out of position **R**.

You can adjust the position of the right outside mirror according to individual needs – see page 69.

Folding outside mirrors

Towards the vehicle

It is possible to fold the outside mirror all the way against the vehicle. Pull the mirror housing towards the vehicle.

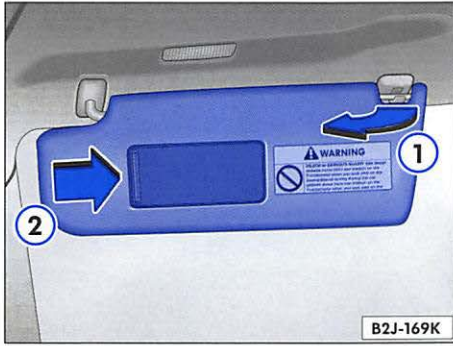
For example, before going through an automatic car wash, pull the mirror housing backwards against the vehicle.



WARNING

When folding a mirror backwards, make sure you do not get your fingers caught between the mirror and the mirror base.

Sun visors



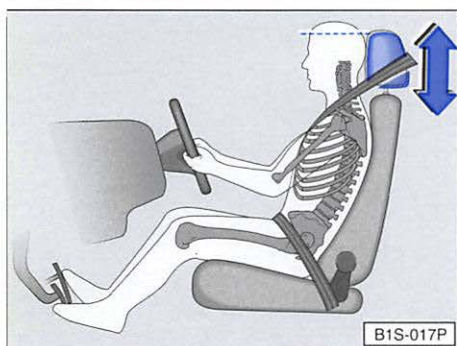
You can lift the visors out of the center mounting (arrow **1**) and move them toward the door windows to protect against side glare.

In certain models there is a little sun visor under the interior light. You can fold it down.

Vanity mirrors may have a sliding cover.

On the illuminated* mirrors, the mirror lights can be turned on and off with the sliding cover (arrow **2**). The lighting is also automatically switched off or on when you raise or lower the sun visor.

Head restraints



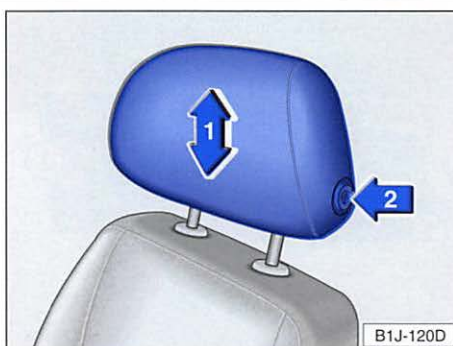
The padded head restraints are adjustable. Position the head restraints according to the occupant's height. Properly positioned head restraints, with the use of safety belts, help to offer effective protection in most accident situations.

For maximum protection, the upper edge should be at least at eye level or higher – see upper illustration.

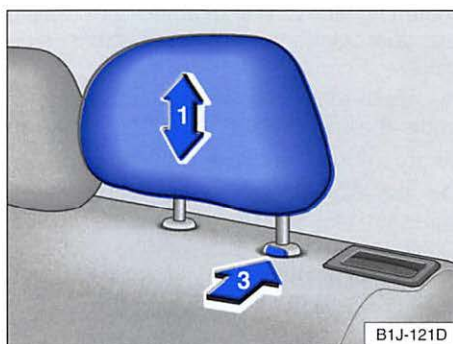


WARNING

Head restraints are designed to help reduce injuries in an accident. Do not drive the vehicle without the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.



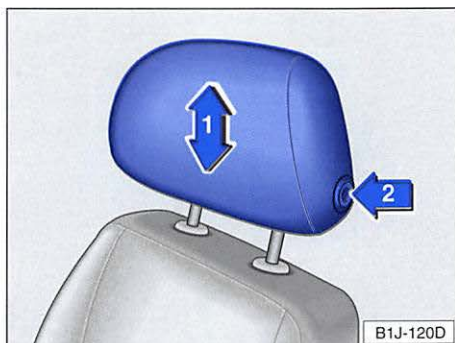
Front head restraints



Rear head restraints

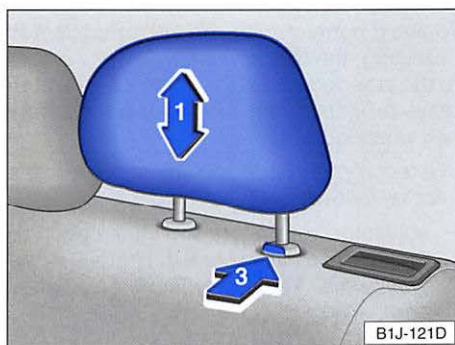
Height adjustment (arrow 1)

For height adjustment, grasp firmly with both hands and pull up or down. To push the front head restraints down, press the button (arrow 2).



B1J-120D

Front head restraints



B1J-121D

Rear head restraints

Installation

Front head restraints

To **reinstall**, guide the two rods of the headrest into the guides, press the button (arrow **2**) at the same time and push the headrest down into place.

Rear head restraints

To **reinstall**, push the two rods of the headrest into the guides and push the headrest down into place.

Removal

Front head restraints

To **remove** the head restraints, pull the head restraint upward until it stops. Then press the button (arrow **2**). While doing this, pull the head restraint upward and remove.

Rear head restraints

To **remove** the head restraints, fold the rear backrest slightly forward and pull the head restraint upward until it stops. Then press the button (arrow **3**) on the rod. While doing this, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

Front seats

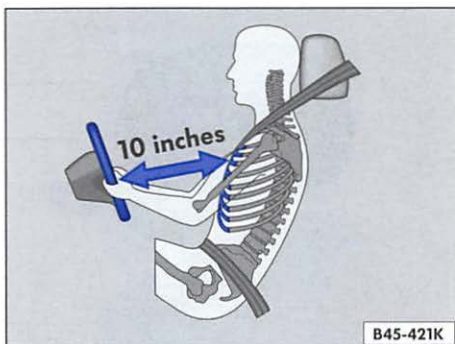
The correct positioning of the seats is important:

- so that you can reach all the controls on the vehicle quickly and safely;
- so that you can drive or ride relaxed which helps reduce fatigue;
- **and for maximum protection offered by the safety belts and air-bag system.**

Therefore, always adjust the position of the seat as described on the following pages. Remember to adjust the seats before fastening the safety belts and before driving off. Always be sure to follow these general guidelines:

WARNING

- **Always sit as far away from the steering wheel and the instrument panel as possible.**
- **Never sit less than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel and the instrument panel.**
- **Do not adjust seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**
- **Passengers must always keep their feet on the floor whenever the vehicle is moving. Never place feet on the dashboard or on top of the seats. In an accident, serious personal injury can result from an improper seating position.**



Driver's seat

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is unfolding, the driver must not sit any closer to the steering wheel than necessary and always properly wear the three point safety belt provided.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat as follows:

- adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals all the way while keeping your knee slightly bent.
- adjust the seatback so that when you sit with your back against the seatback, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
- adjust the steering wheel so that the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel is **at least** 10 inches (25 cm) or more. (See illustration above).

 **Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**

Front passenger's seat

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is unfolding, the adult front seat passenger must not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always properly wear available three point belts.

We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner:

- Adjust the backrest to the upright position. **Do not** recline.
- Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat.
- Adjust the passenger's seat to the rear of the fore and aft adjustment range.

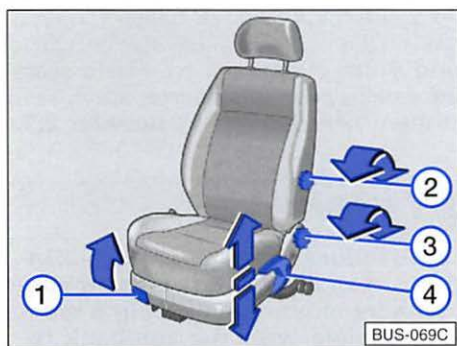
⚠ WARNING

- **Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat.**
- **Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. If the airbag inflates and your feet are on the instrument panel or on the seat, your could receive serious personal injuries.**

For safety information on transporting children on the front passenger seat be sure to read all the information on "Infant seats, Convertible seats and Booster seats," see chapter "*CHILD SAFETY*", **Booklet 2.1.**

⚠ WARNING

- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident, front seat passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts offer protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an out-of-position safety belt.**
- **For driver's and passenger's protection, make sure front seats and seat backs are securely locked in place.**
- **Never store items under the seats. Loose objects can interfere with the seat latching mechanism and can also cause personal injury in an accident.**



Manually adjustable driver and front passenger seats

1 – Forward and backward adjustment

- Pull handle.
- Slide seat into position.
- Release the handle and move the seat slightly back or forth to make sure it is securely locked into position.

2 – Lumbar support*

Adjust the backrest support by turning the adjuster wheel. This give more support to the natural curvature of your spine and will help reduce fatigue especially during longer trips.

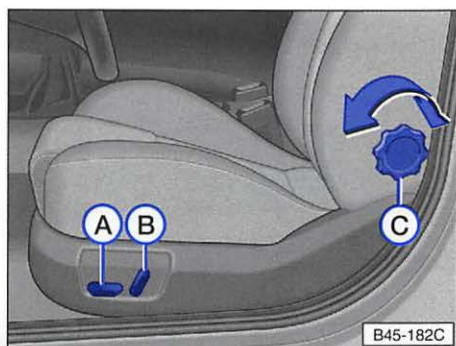
3 – Seatback adjustment

With your body weight taken off the seat-back, turn wheel on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

Height adjustment

By “pumping” the lever on the outside of the seat, you can raise or lower the seat.

- **Raising:** Pull the handle upward in a “pumping” motion to raise the seat.
- **Lowering:** Press the handle downward in a “pumping” motion to lower the seat.



Electrically adjustable driver and front passenger seat*

Before adjusting your seat there are some important considerations to keep in mind.

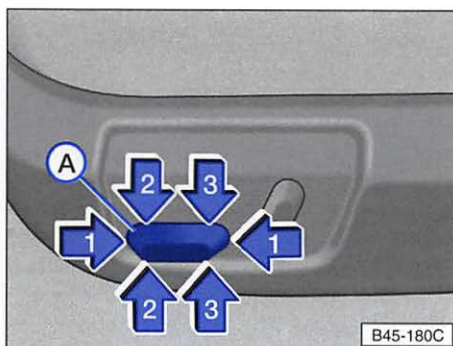
- To prevent interference with the seat adjustment, never store anything under the seats.
- The front seats should be adjusted before fastening the safety belts.

Seat adjustment

The front seat adjustment control switches **A** and **B** are located on the outboard side of each seat. The controls also work with the ignition off.

The adjuster wheel **C** can be used to adjust the **lumbar support** mechanically:

Adjust the backrest support by turning the adjuster wheel in the backrest. This will give you more or less support for the natural curve of your lower back to minimize fatigue, especially during long trips.



Switch A

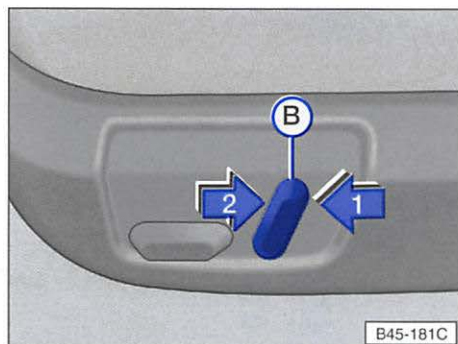
Press the switch as indicated by the arrows to move the seat.

- 1 - moves seat back / forward
- 2 - raises / lowers seat at the front
- 3 - raises / lowers seat at the rear
- 2 and 3 together - raises / lowers whole seat



WARNING

Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition key removed, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury.



Switch B

Press the switch as indicated by the arrows to adjust the backrest.

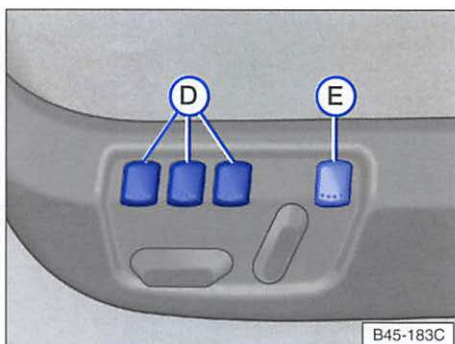
- 1** – forward: backrest further upright
- 2** – to the rear: backrest further reclined

WARNING

The backrest must not be inclined too far to the back when the vehicle is in motion, otherwise, this would hamper the effectiveness of the safety belts.

Memory for driver's seat and outside mirrors*

The memory for the driver's seat and outside mirrors allows you to set and store the position of the seat and outside mirrors for different drivers. Up to three different settings can be "memorized" using the buttons **D**. By simply pressing and holding this button **while the ignition is off**, any driver can recall their "memorized" seat and mirror settings.



Each memory button can be used to recall the following information:

- Driver's seat position
- Outside mirror positions (left and right sides) for **forward driving**
- Outside mirror tilt position (right side mirror only) for **driving in reverse (when backing up into parking spot)**.

Also, using the remote control, you can recall a memorized seat and mirror setting.

Using switch **E** you can turn off the memory system at any time. Then, both the seat and outside mirrors must be adjusted manually.

Memorizing seat and mirror positions* (driving forward)

- Button **E** is depressed.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the seat (see page 67).

- Adjust both outside mirrors (see page 59).
- Press one of the memory buttons **D** and hold it for approximately 3 seconds until you hear an acoustic signal to let you know that the position has been memorized.

The settings are stored under the individual memory buttons.

Notes

- We recommend that when using the memory buttons, you start with the left-most button. Then each subsequent driver can memorize their setting using the next button to the right.
- If you memorize a new setting, the previous setting on that button will be erased.

Mirror tilt position* when backing up

The tilt position for the right outside mirror can be adjusted and memorized to meet individual needs (see page 60).

- Adjust and memorize the seat position first.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Move the "joystick" of the outside mirrors to position **R**, (see page 59).
- Engage reverse gear (manual transmission) or move the gearshift lever to **R** (automatic transmission).
- Adjust the right outside mirror (see page 59).

- Press one of the memory buttons and hold it for approximately 3 seconds until you hear an acoustic signal to let you know that the position has been memorized.

The mirror setting is now memorized.

Notes

- As soon as you have shifted into Reverse gear, the passenger outside mirror will tilt to its memorized position. This procedure will stop if you manually move the mirror to a different position.
- As soon as you shift out of Reverse, the passenger outside mirror will go back to its previously memorized position (forward driving position).
- Each time you memorize a new seating position and inside mirror setting, you have to reset the position of the passenger outside mirror, otherwise the previously memorized setting will remain.

Coordinating the remote control to a memory button*

You can use the remote control to recall an individual seating position stored in memory.

We recommend that you coordinate the left memory button to the master key of your vehicle supplied by the factory, and the center button the other ones.

You can obtain up to four additional master keys for your vehicle from your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Assigning a seat and mirror setting to a memory button using the remote control:

After you have adjusted your seat and the inside mirror, you have **10 seconds** to assign this setting to a memory button via the remote control.

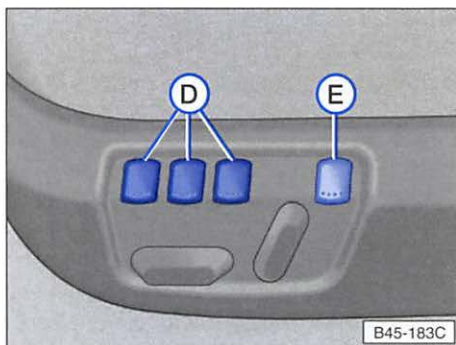
- Remove the key from the ignition lock.
- Press the "open" button on the remote control (see page 30), and hold it until you hear an acoustic signal to let you know that the seat and mirror positions have been assigned to a memory button.

Notes

- If you have assigned a seat and mirror setting to a memory button using the master key, and then reassign a new setting using a different key, the "old" setting will be erased and the new one will be memorized in its place.
- The assignment of a master key to a memory button is maintained even if you store new seat and mirror adjustments to this button.

Retrieving seat and mirror adjustment for driving forward

The settings stored can be retrieved both with the memory buttons **D** and with the radio-operated remote control.



Retrieving using the memory buttons

For safety reasons, the seat and mirror adjustments can be retrieved only with the ignition **switched off**. You can choose between two retrieval options:

"Automatic memory tap:"

With the driver's door **open**, tap briefly on the desired memory button. The seat and the outside mirror move automatically to the stored positions.

"Pressing the Memory button:"

With the driver's door opened **or** closed, press the memory button until the seat and outside mirror have moved into the stored positions.

Note

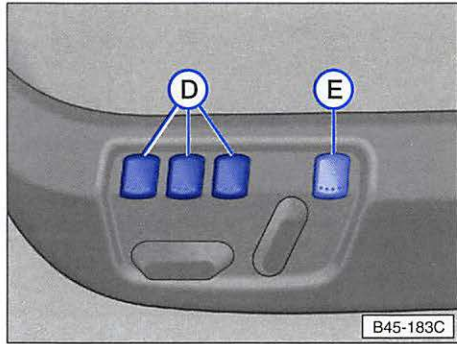
If, during the automatic seat and mirror adjustment, you press one of the memory buttons again, the current retrieval process will be interrupted. If, after that, you again press the button that was first pressed, the interrupted retrieval procedure will continue. On the other hand, if you press one of the two other buttons, the seat and mirrors will go into the positions stored on it.

Retrieval using the master key

The stored seat and mirror settings can only be retrieved with the ignition **switched off** and the driver's door **closed**:

Press the open button of the master key briefly (see page 31), and then open the driver's door.

The seat and the outside mirror now move automatically into the stored positions.

**Retrieving mirror adjustments for driving in reverse**

- Switch the ignition on.
- Switch to the right outside mirror (see page 59).
- Engage the **R (Reverse)** gear.

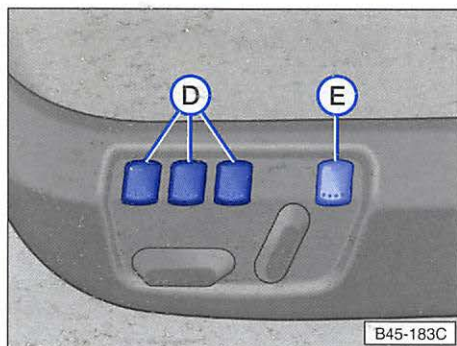
The right outside mirror now moves automatically into the stored position.

Note

As soon as you disengage reverse gear, the right outside mirrors moves back into the position stored for driving forward.

Emergency Off

In an emergency, you can interrupt any retrieval procedure by pressing on the locking switch E (unlocking), tapping one of the memory buttons or pressing one of the seat adjuster switches.

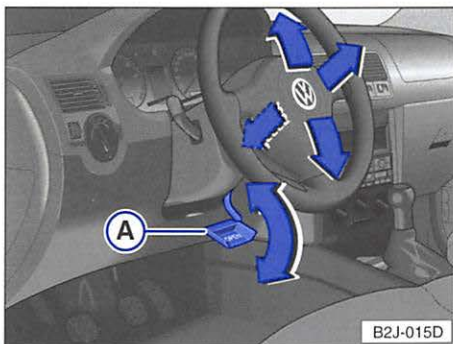


Notes on using the locking switch **E**

- After pressing the locking switch **E**, the memory system is permanently switched off. You can then only adjust the seat and the outside mirrors manually. By pressing the locking switch **E** again, you can switch the memory system back on. However, any retrieval procedure that has been interrupted will **not** be continued.

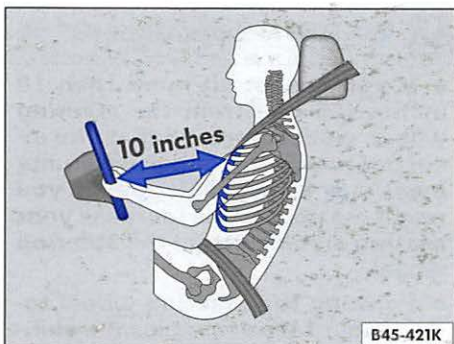
We recommend you switch the memory off with locking switch **E** if the vehicle will be used only temporarily by a driver whose seat and mirror adjustments do not need to be stored.

Adjustable steering column (tilt and telescopic)



The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted to increase your comfort. First adjust the driver's seat, then reposition the steering wheel.

- Push down on the lever **A** below the steering column as far as it will go (See illustration).
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance from the center of your breastbone to the center of the airbag cover on the steering wheel is **at least 10 inches (25 cm)** or more (see right illustration).
- Pull the lever **A** back up as far as it will go and push it against the steering column to lock.



WARNING

- After adjusting the steering wheel, push the steering wheel adjustment lever back up as far as it will go. This ensures the position of the steering wheel cannot be altered unintentionally when the vehicle is moving.
- To help prevent loss of vehicle control and an accident, adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is not moving.
- The front seats must not be pushed too close to the steering wheel or to the instrument panel. Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel.



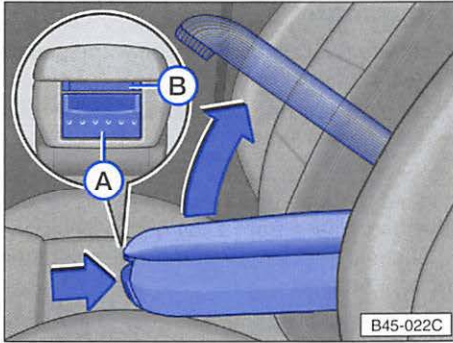
Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.



WARNING continued

- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, we recommend that you investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in an accident.
- Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates. Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub.

Armrest*



The armrests for the driver and front passenger can be adjusted for your comfort.

To adjust the position of the armrest, press the button **A** at the front (arrow) and push the armrest down. Then lift the armrest slowly until it is in a comfortable position.

The **storage bin** in the armrest can be opened by pulling the release catch **B** upwards, which is above the adjuster button.



WARNING

When folded down, the armrest can restrict the driver's movement. When driving in conditions that may call for quick maneuvers, fold up the armrest. This will allow you to react more quickly to avoid an accident.

Pedals

The movement of the pedals must never be obstructed by a floor mat or any other object.

- If one of the two brake circuits fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- You should always be able to depress the accelerator and the clutch pedals all the way down to the floor.
- All pedals must be able to return to their original position unhindered.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.



WARNING

Never place any objects in the area of the pedals. In case of sudden braking or an accident, an object could interfere with pedal function. You would not be able to brake, depress the clutch, or accelerate.

Floor mats*

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals free and unobstructed.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in the footwells of the front seats.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. This will prevent the floor mats from sliding into positions that could interfere with the safe operation of your vehicle.

When reinstalling the floor mat, make sure that the fastener is properly secured. Otherwise there is a risk that the mat could slip forward and obstruct the pedals.

Suitable VOLKSWAGEN floor mats can be obtained from a VOLKSWAGEN dealer.



WARNING

Do not install additional floor mats on top of existing floor mats because you will not be able to fasten them down.

If you remove the floor mats for cleaning, be sure to fasten them again securely when reinstalling.

Rear seat

General hints

You can increase the loading surface in the rear by folding down the rear seatback to form a deck.

The rear seatback is divided into two sections – one third/two thirds. You can fold down either or both parts of the seatback.

WARNING

- **Do not allow passengers to occupy the rear load surface while the vehicle is in motion. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained.**

- **Do not let anyone ride in the vehicle without the head restraints provided. Head restraints help reduce injuries.**

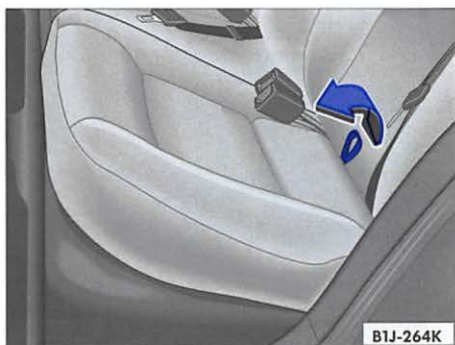
- **Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in an accident or sudden maneuver and injure occupants. Always store articles in the luggage compartment and use the tie-down hooks, especially when the rear seat backs have been folded down.**

Note:

To prevent damage, before the rear seat bench is folded forward...

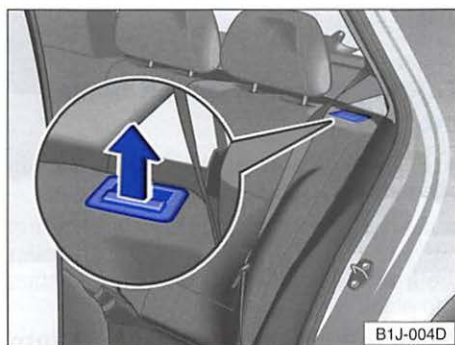
- ...make sure the front seats are moved forward so that the rear seat cushion does not come in contact with them,

- ...remove the rear head restraints (see page 62).



Folding the seat bench forward

Pull up on loop located on the seat cushion and fold the seat bench forward (arrow).



- Pull the release button in the direction of the arrow and fold the seat back forward.

Do not let the safety belt lie over the backrest when it is folded forward, otherwise the belt tensioner may activate in case of an accident.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.



The head restraints can be stored to save place after they have been removed. To do this, the rods on the restraints can be inserted in the appropriate openings in the rear seat cushions.

Folding the seat bench back into place

- Pull the backrest up until it latches securely into place.
- Swing the seat cushion back in place and push it all the way back. Then push down the front part of the cushion until it latches into place.

When folding the backrest back into place, make sure the safety belt doesn't get caught, because it can be damaged and weakened.

WARNING

- The backrest must always be securely latched so that the safety belts can work properly to help protect all back seat passengers.
- Objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts periodically. If belts show damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors, have them replaced.

Luggage compartment

Increasing size of the luggage compartment

You can fold the rear seatback forward to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

Transporting heavy objects

Transporting heavy objects can change the way your vehicle handles. For best handling under these conditions, distribute loads evenly.

Always place heavy cargo as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment. When transporting heavy objects, drive slowly and avoid sudden maneuvers.

Make sure that the heating wires in the rear lid window do not get damaged by objects scraping against them.

Air circulation

Vehicle air circulating in the passenger compartment escapes through slots in the area of the rear lid. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.

Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through slots in the trim panels on the side of the luggage compartment. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.



WARNING

- **Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight ratings can change the way the vehicle handles and could result in accidents, personal injury, and vehicle damage.**
- **Do not allow passengers to occupy the rear load surface while the vehicle is in motion. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained.**
- **Loose items inside the passenger compartment, can fly forward in an accident or sudden maneuver and injure occupants. Always store articles in the luggage compartment and use the tie-down hooks, especially when the rear seatback have been folded down.**
- **To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area, because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

⚠ WARNING continued

● **Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid, as well the vehicle doors, closed when not in use.**

● **If you must drive with the rear lid open under exceptional circumstances always take the following precautions to help reduce the risk of deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust system from being drawn into the passengers compartment:**

- open all of the windows
- turn off the air recirculation switch
- turn on the fan to the highest speed, to position 4.

**Tie-down hooks**

There are four tie-down hooks in the luggage compartment (arrows). Use these hooks to secure objects.

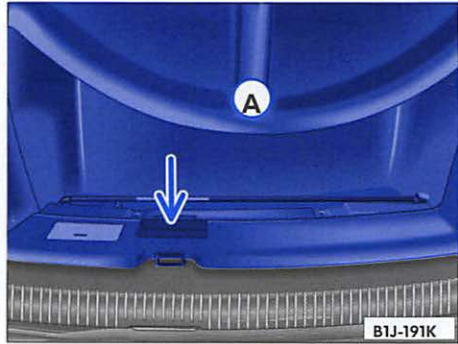
Variable luggage compartment floor



You can increase the space in the luggage compartment by removing the storage trays underneath the luggage compartment floor.

Removing the storage trays

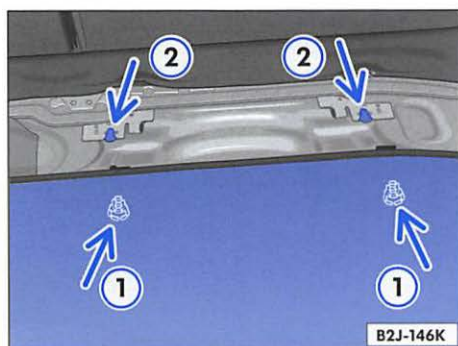
- Grab the rear end of the luggage compartment floor cover and fold it forward (in the direction of the arrow).
- Then pull the floor cover to the rear out of its mounting brackets and remove it completely out of the vehicle.



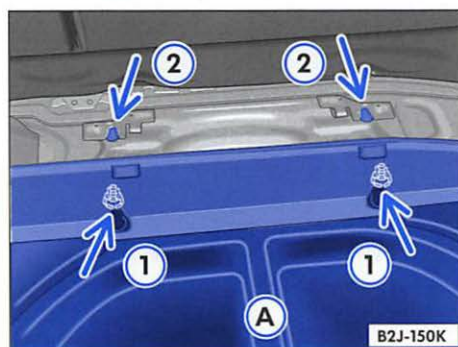
- Unlock storage tray **A** by pulling up the release handle (arrow). Lift the tray up and hold it in this position.



- First remove storage tray **B** out of the vehicle.
- Then pull storage tray **A** to the rear out of its holder and take it out of the vehicle.



● To reinstall the luggage compartment floor cover, push the end of the floor cover with the two round bolts (arrows **1**) into the guides (arrows **2**) attached to the vehicle body.

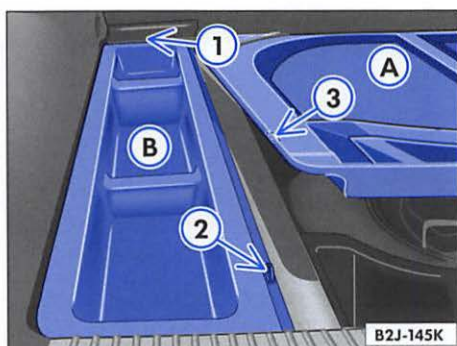


Installing the storage trays

● First, remove the luggage compartment floor cover as described on the previous page.

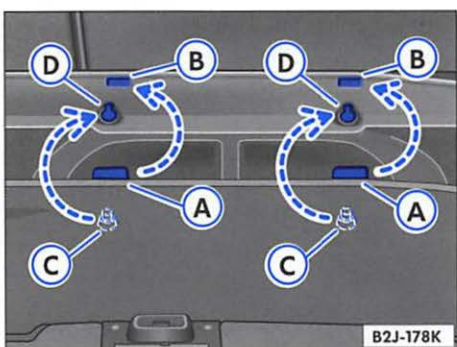
● There are two round bolts (arrows **1**) on the underside of tray **A**. Insert the tray back into place so that the two bolts (arrows **1**) slide into the guides (arrows **2**) on the vehicle body.

● Lift the tray **A** up and hold it.



● Install tray **B**. Make sure the front of the tray **B** is hinged into place (arrow **1**).

● Then lower tray **A** into place. There's a tab (arrow **2**) on tray **B**. This tab must fit in the opening (arrow **3**) on tray **A**.



● The luggage compartment floor cover has two tabs **A**. Push the cover so that tabs fit into the two openings **B** provided for them, and at the same time, push the two bolts **C** (under the luggage compartment floor) securely into the guides **D**.

Luggage compartment cover

You should store only light articles of clothing on the luggage compartment cover.

When you open the rear lid, the luggage compartment cover also opens.

Note

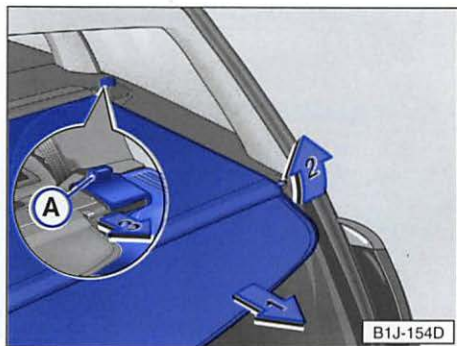
Remember that placing articles of clothing on the luggage compartment cover can block the driver's vision in the rear view mirror. The ventilation openings under the rear window could also be blocked.



WARNING

Whenever driving, never place any hard or heaving objects on the luggage compartment cover. They could become a hazard to vehicle occupants in the event of sudden braking or in an accident!

In addition, make sure that the heating wires in the rear lid window do not get damaged by objects scraping against them.



Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

Removing the luggage compartment cover

If you have to transport larger items, you can remove the luggage compartment cover:

- Pull the luggage compartment cover towards the back (arrow **1**), and lift it up out of the left and right side mountings (arrow **2**) at the same time.
- Continue to pull the cover guiding it manually. **Do not let it fly back into the housing!**
- Now press button **A** while simultaneously lifting the luggage compartment cover upward. Swing the cover a bit to the rear (arrow **3**) and remove it from the left-hand mounting.



Installing the luggage compartment cover

- Insert the cover in the mounting **B** from above and push all the way into the left-hand mounting (arrow) until it clicks in place.
- Press button **A** and then slide the cover all the way into the right-hand mounting **C** until it clicks into place.

Make certain that the luggage compartment cover is securely engaged in both mountings (B and C).

- Unroll the luggage compartment cover, pulling it toward the rear. Hook it into the side mountings.

The partition net prevents luggage, pets or other objects from hurtling forward in the case of sudden braking or an accident.

Roof railing* / Roof rack

If a roof rack or similar luggage carrying equipment is to be installed, please note the following:

- We recommend using factory approved cross bars only.

- These cross bars are the basis for a complete roof rack system. You will need additional mountings if you plan to transport luggage, bicycles, surf boards, skis or small boats.

Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer for necessary hardware.

Never install a roof rack system on your Wagon, which was designed specifically for the Sedan model. It could damage the side panels or the roof.

- **If you improperly install a roof rack system, any damage to the vehicle would not be covered by your Volkswagen Warranty.**



WARNING

- **Use of an unapproved roof rack or incorrect mounting of an approved roof rack can cause the roof rack or the items carried on it to fall off the roof onto the road.**

- **Objects falling from the roof of a vehicle can cause an accident and personal injury.**

- **The roof rack system must be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.**

- When installing the cross bar, make sure you install them so that they match the size of the load you'll be carrying on the roof. If your vehicle has a sunroof*, the front cross must be installed **behind** the sunroof.

- Make sure that when you open the rear lid, the lid does not come in contact with the roof load when it is completely open.

Loading a roof rack

Always distribute the loads evenly. Each cross bar can carry 100 lbs (50 kg) when the weight is evenly distributed over the entire length of the cross bar.

However, the total maximum permissible load carrying capacity of 165 lbs (75 kg) for the roof rack installation (including the weight of the roof rack system) must not be exceeded – see "Weights" Booklet 3.5.

WARNING

- **Improper use of a roof rack can cause accidents and personal injuries.**
- **The use of a roof rack can negatively affect the way a vehicle handles.**
- **Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a greater negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.**
- **Never exceed the maximum permissible load carrying capacity of the roof of your vehicle.**
- **Always drive slowly, avoid sudden braking and maneuvers when transporting cargo on the roof of your vehicle.**

Glove compartment



Your VOLKSWAGEN has a lockable glove compartment. Only the master keys will lock or unlock the glove compartment. To open the lockable glove compartment, lift the handle.

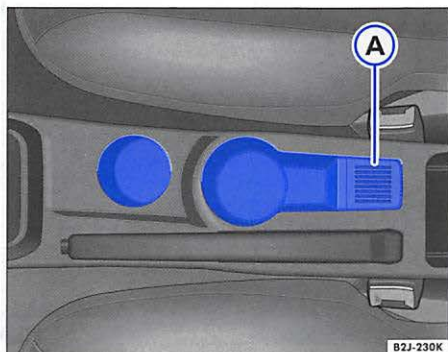
WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.

Owner's literature storage

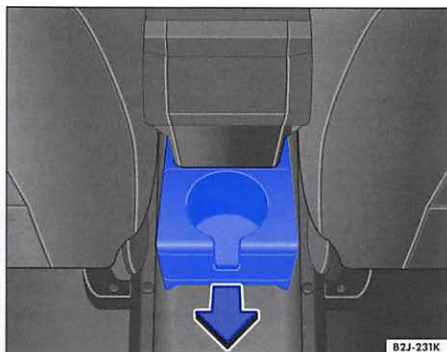
There's a special slot provided where you can store your Owner's Manual – see illustration.

Cup holder



Front cup holder

Your VOLKSWAGEN is equipped with a front cup holder. The row of slots **A** in the cup holder is for parking and toll booth coins (see left illustration).



Rear cup holder

Your VOLKSWAGEN is equipped with a rear cup holder. The cup holder can be pulled to the rear for better access (see arrow in right illustration).

WARNING

Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.

WARNING

Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.

Cigarette lighter* / Socket

Push the knob in. When the **cigarette lighter** is ready for use, the knob will pop out again.

The **socket** for the cigarette lighter can be used for 12 volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 120 watts, such as a hand spot light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter and socket remain functional even after the ignition key is removed.

Therefore, to avoid injury, never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision.

Remember, you can discharge the battery if the engine is not running and power is used to run an appliance connected to the socket. For more information, see "Additional accessories, Modifications and Parts replacement," chapter *"KEEPING YOUR VEHICLE IN GOOD WORKING CONDITION"*, **Booklet 3.4.**



Socket in luggage compartment

There is a socket in the left trim panel in the luggage compartment.

This socket may be used for 12 volt appliances with maximum consumption of up to 120 watts, such as a hand spot light, small vacuum cleaner, etc.

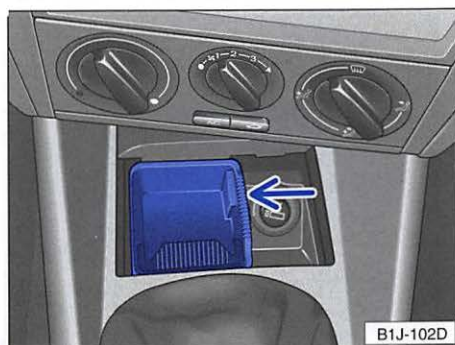
WARNING

The socket remain functional even after the ignition key is removed.

Therefore, to avoid injury, never leave children inside the vehicle without supervision.

Remember, you can discharge the battery if the engine is not running and power is used to run an appliance connected to the socket. For more information, see "Additional accessories, Modifications and Parts replacement," chapter *"KEEPING YOUR VEHICLE IN GOOD WORKING CONDITION"*, **Booklet 3.4.**

Ashtray



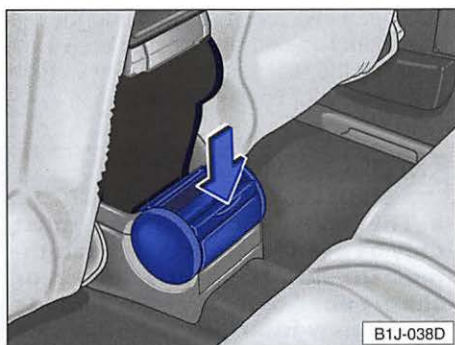
Front

Removing:

Push the panel covering to the front. Then remove the ashtray by pulling it out of the housing (arrow).

Inserting:

Place the ashtray into the guides and push it in.



Rear

Removing:

Push the cover panel to the rear and press the ashtray downward (in direction of arrow – see illustration). The ashtray will spring forward and can then be removed.

Inserting:

Insert the ashtray and push it in.

WARNING

Using ashtrays as waste paper receptacles is a fire hazard.

WARNING

Using ashtrays as waste paper receptacles is a fire hazard.

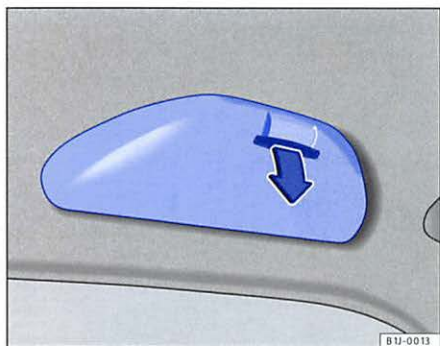
Coat hooks / Assist handles

The coat hooks are integrated into the rear assist handles and are located above the doors for the rear passengers. They are intended for your convenience.

WARNING

- The built-in coat hooks must only be used for light weight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident. Always heed all WARNINGS in chapter "AIRBAG SYSTEM" Booklet 2.1.
- Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.
- Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.

Sunclass holder



A sunclass holder is located in the headliner on the driver's side. Pull down the lid (arrow) to open the sunglass holder.

Air conditioning

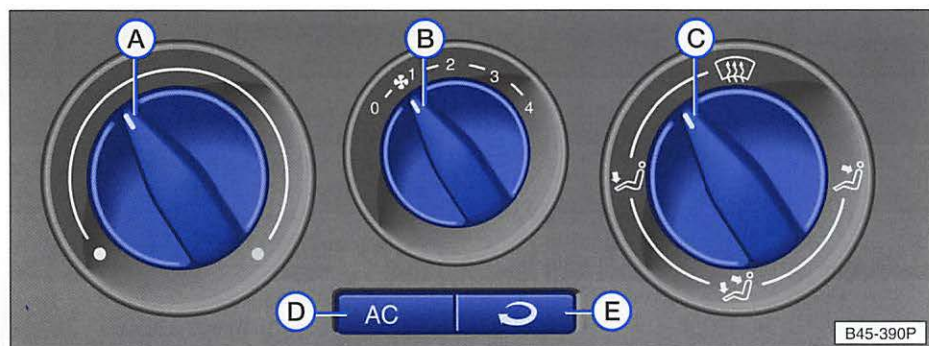
The air conditioning system combines both heating and cooling for maximum comfort. The air conditioning system works only with the engine running and when the outside temperature is higher than +40 °F (+5 °C), and with the fan switch **B** turned to one of positions 1 to 4.

When you switch on the air conditioner, both the temperature and the humidity in the vehicle are reduced. This will help make passengers feel more comfortable and will prevent the windows from fogging up on days when the humidity is very high.



WARNING

- **For clear visibility and safe driving, it is extremely important that you follow the operating instructions on the proper use and function of the ventilation/heating, defogging/defrosting and air conditioning system in this manual. If in doubt, consult your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**
- **Good visibility comes with clean windows free of fog, condensation and frost.**
- **Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will occur only after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before moving your vehicle.**



Operating control

- A – Temperature control switch
- B – Fan switch for ventilation
- C – Airflow distribution switch
- D – Air conditioner ON / OFF button
- E – Air recirculation button

Switch A – Temperature control

- Turn the switch clockwise for warmer air.
- Turn the switch counterclockwise for cooler air.

Switch B – Fan switch

The air flow volume can be set to four different speeds.

To prevent the windows from fogging up, always set the fan to a low speed when driving slowly.

In position 0 of the fan switch the fan and the air conditioning are turned off.

The dust and pollen filter* traps air contaminants regardless of which speed you set the fan switch **B**.

Switch C – Airflow distribution

The airflow distribution switch **C** controls the outlets.

Button D – Air conditioning ON/OFF button

Press this button to switch on the air conditioning. When the button is pressed, the "AC" symbol lights up.

Press the button again to switch the system off. The "AC" symbol goes out.

Button E – Air recirculation

The air recirculation feature helps to prevent fumes (for example, when driving through a tunnel or standing in a traffic jam) and dust from entering the vehicle interior.

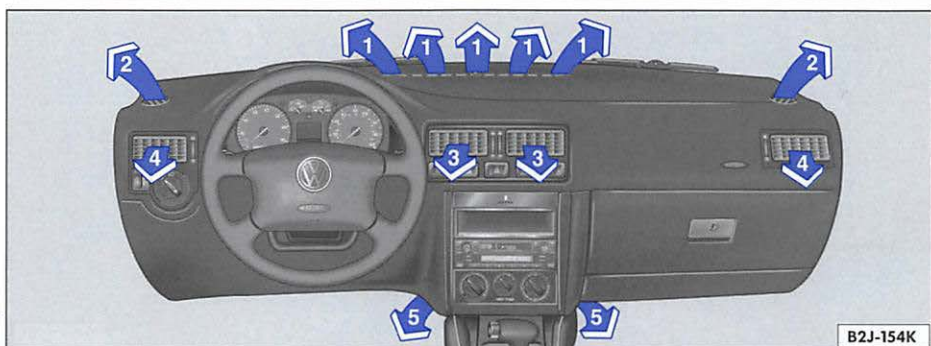
To switch **on** the air recirculation, press button **E**. When you press this button, the symbol lights up.

To switch **off** the air recirculation, press button **E** again. The symbol light will go out.

The control light in the switch is your reminder that the air recirculation switch is switched on.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.



B2J-154K

Turn knob to symbol...	Air is directed...	Air comes out of vents...	Small amounts of air from vents...
	...to the windshield	1, 2	4
	...into the footwells	5	1, 2, 4
	...into the passenger compartment and footwells	3, 4, 5	1, 2
	...into the passenger compartment	3, 4	—

If you need to heat or cool the vehicle quickly, you can use the air recirculation feature. Air from inside the vehicle will be heated and directed back into the vehicle interior.

Note

You can press both the air conditioner button **D** and the air recirculation button **E** at the same time.

WARNING

● **You will not receive any fresh outside air when air recirculation is on. Do not use this setting over long periods of time because stale air contributes to fatigue and reduced driver alertness.**

WARNING continued

● **If the windows fog up, press the air recirculation switch again to switch off the air recirculation function.**

Note

Do not smoke when you select air recirculation. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system will leave smelly deposits on the evaporator, resulting in permanent odors whenever you switch on the air conditioner. These odors can be eliminated only by exchanging the evaporator which is time consuming and expensive.



For safety reasons, **it is not possible to use the air recirculation feature**, when you have switch **C** turned to :

In addition, the air recirculation feature switches itself off whenever you turn switch **C** from the "footwell" setting to the "defrost" setting.

Air outlets

Depending on the setting of the temperature control **A** and buttons **D** and **E**, heated or unheated outside air or cooled air will come out of all vents.

The airflow distribution switch **C** controls the outlets.

Outlets 3 and 4 can be opened or closed separately with the thumbwheel next to each outlet.

Vent closed:

Thumbwheel to 

Vent open:

Thumbwheel to 

By turning the thumbwheel next to vents 3 and 4 in either direction the air flow can be directed up and down.

When the thumbwheel under the grille is rotated to the left or right, the air flow direction is changed to sideways.

The rear footwells are heated and cooled at the same time when you select outlets 5.

Defrosting windshield and side windows

- Turn the temperature control switch **A** all the way to the right
- Turn the fan switch **B** to position 3.
- Turn the airflow distribution switch **C** to 
- Close vents 3.
- Additional warm air can also be directed to the side windows via vents 4.

Defogging windshield and side windows

If high humidity causes your windows to fog up (for example on a rainy day), set the controls as follows:

- Turn the temperature control switch **A**, into the heat range if necessary.
- Turn the fan switch **B** to position 2 or 3.
- Turn the airflow distribution switch **C** to 
- Press the air conditioner button **D** to switch on the air conditioning.
- Close vents 3.
- Additional warm air can also be directed to the side windows via vents 4.

Heating interior quickly

- Turn temperature control switch **A** all the way to the right.
- Turn the fan switch **B** to position 3.
- Turn the airflow distribution switch **C** to 
- If the windshield fogs up, turn the switch **C** to 
- Open vents 3 and 4 partially or all the way and adjust as desired.
- Press the air recirculation button **E**.



Always heed all WARNINGS and the instructions for using the air recirculation feature on page 92.

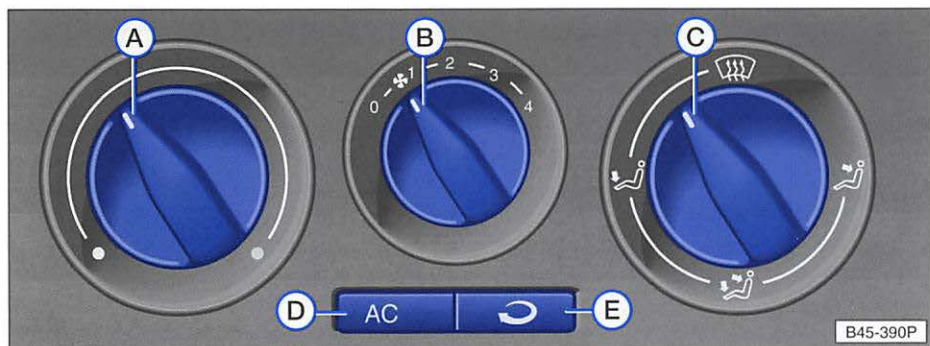
Keeping interior comfortable

After the windows have been defogged, we recommend the following settings:

- Turn the temperature switch **A** to the desired position.
- Turn the fan switch **B** to the desired position.
- Turn the air flow distribution switch **C** between  and 
- If the windshield is fogging up, turn the switch **C** to 
- Open vents 3 and 4 partially or all the way and adjust as desired.

Normal cooling

- Turn the temperature control switch **A** to the desired temperature (you can also set it for heating).
 - Turn the fan switch **B** to the desired position.
 - Turn the airflow distribution switch **C** to the desired position.
- If the airflow distribution switch is in this position, then at least one vent must always be open, otherwise the air conditioner can ice up. 
- Press the air conditioning button **D** to switch on the air conditioning.
 - Adjust vents 3 and 4 as desired.
- Outside air will be drawn in and cooled.



Maximum cooling

- Close all windows and the sunroof*.
- Turn the temperature control switch **A** all the way to the left.
- Turn the fan switch **B** to position 4.

● Turn the airflow distribution switch **C** to 

If the airflow distribution switch is in this position, then at least one vent must always be open, otherwise the air conditioner can ice up.

- Press the air conditioner button **D** to switch on the air conditioning.
- Press the air recirculation button **E** to switch on the air recirculation.



Always heed all WARNINGS and the instructions for using the air recirculation feature on page 92.

- Adjust vents 3 and 4 as desired.

One vent must always be open, otherwise the air conditioner can ice up.

Ventilation (fresh air)

Unheated outside air will flow from vents 3 and 4 when you set the control switches as follows:

- Turn the temperature control switch **A** all the way to the left.
- Turn the fan switch **B** to the desired position.
- Turn the airflow distribution switch **C** to 
- If the windshield fogs up, turn the switch **C** to 
- Press the air conditioner button **D** to switch off the air conditioning.
- Open vents 3 and 4.

How to use the air conditioning more economically

When using the air conditioning, the air conditioner compressor decreases engine power and increases fuel consumption. To keep air conditioner use to a minimum, please keep the following in mind:

- If your vehicle has been standing outside in the hot sun, first open a window or door to let the hot air escape before driving off.

- Do not use the air conditioning if the windows or sunroof* are open.
- If the desired temperature can be reached without having to switch on the air conditioner, then use fresh air operation.

General hints

- To prevent the windows from fogging up, always set the fan switch **B** to a low speed when driving slowly and turn switch **C** to position 
- The controls **A** and **C** can also be set to any intermediate position.
- If the windows still fog up, this may be caused by reduced airflow through the dust and pollen filter – see "Dust and pollen filter," chapter "KEEPING YOUR VEHICLE IN GOOD WORKING CONDITION", **Booklet 3.4**.
- Keep the air intake slot in front of the windshield free of ice, snow and leaves in order to maintain the proper functioning of the heating and ventilation systems.
- If you have not used the air conditioner for a long time, you may notice some odors when you switch it on. To prevent this, switch on the air conditioner even in the winter at least once a month on the highest fan speed. When you do this, open the windows for a short time.
- Air escapes through vents under the rear window. When placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, therefore, please ensure that the openings are not covered.

- Vehicle heating depends upon the temperature of the engine coolant. Therefore, your vehicle interior will warm up faster when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If water drips under the vehicle ...

When the outside temperature is high and the air very humid, condensed water from the air conditioner can drip under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

If the airflow is not cool...

- Outside temperature is below +42°F (+5 °C).
- Check the air conditioning fuse on the fuse panel – see "Fuses", **Booklet 3.4**. Have it replaced, if necessary.

Should you suspect that your air conditioning system is damaged and the fuse is not blown, switch off the air conditioning by pressing the button **D** and see your VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.

Maintenance

The condenser should be checked from time to time by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer to make sure it's clean. If clogged with dirt or insects, the condenser should be washed down with water.

After the winter months and before extended summer use, the air conditioning should be checked and, if necessary, serviced by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Climatronic*

The air conditioner is fully automatic, and is designed to maintain a comfortable and uniform climate inside the vehicle.

The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the fan speed, air distribution and volume of air delivery are regulated automatically.

This automatic climate control program can also be adjusted manually by the driver and the front passenger.

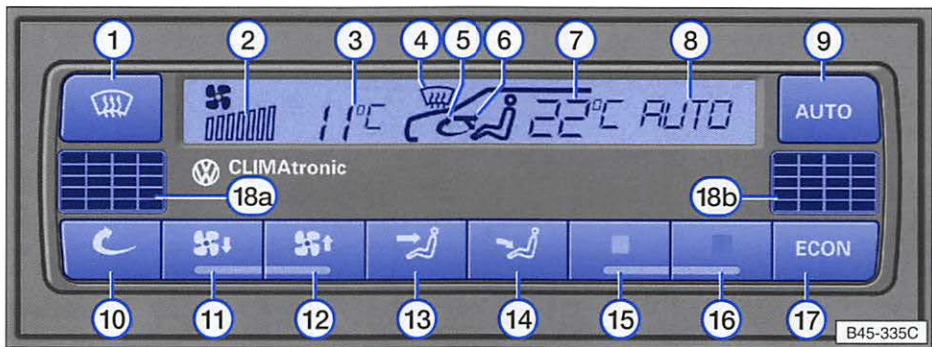


WARNING

- **For clear visibility and safe driving, it is extremely important that you follow the operating instructions on the proper use and function of the ventilation/heating, defogging/defrosting and air conditioning system in this manual. If in doubt, consult your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**
- **Good visibility comes with clean windows free of fog, condensation and frost.**
- **Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will occur only after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before moving your vehicle.**

Note

Do not smoke when you have the air conditioner switched on. With the Climatronic system, the air recirculation feature is on whenever you switch on the air conditioner. Smoke drawn into the ventilation system will leave smelly deposits on the evaporator, resulting in permanent odors whenever you switch on the air conditioner. These odors can be eliminated only by exchanging the evaporator which is time consuming and expensive.



Operating controls

- 1 - Button – windshield defrosting
- 2 - Display – fan speed / OFF (system off)
- 3 - Display – outside temperature
- 4 - Display – windshield defrosting
- 5 - Display – air recirculation
- 6 - Display – airflow distribution
- 7 - Display – selected inside temperature
- 8 - Display – AUTO (automatic setting) or ECON (compressor off)
- 9 - Button – automatic operation
- 10 - Button – air recirculation
- 11 - Button to decrease fan speed and air conditioner "OFF" button
- 12 - Button – increase fan speed
- 13 - Button – air flow into the vehicle
- 14 - Button – air flow into the foot wells
- 15 - Button – "COOLER"
- 16 - Button – "WARMER"
- 17 - Button – "ECON" (compressor off)
- 18 - Passenger compartment temperature sensor (18a and 18b)

Using the system

Recommended standard setting for all-year operation:

Select a temperature of 72 °F (22 °C) and press AUTO button.

With this setting, you attain maximum comfort in the least amount of time.

You only need to change this setting to meet your personal needs.

Air outlets – see page 102.

With the ignition switched on, the system normally works in the "AUTO" mode. Displays **2**, **3**, **7** and **8** will appear, (see list in left column).

The Climatronic* automatically maintains the selected interior temperature.

In addition, the air temperature, fan speed and air flow distribution are maintained.

The system also adjusts the inside temperature even if the vehicle has been left standing in the sun. You do not need to adjust the system manually and then switch it back to "AUTO."



After you switch off the ignition:

- your settings will remain stored.
- if “air recirculation” was **on**, the setting will be erased about 20 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Switching between Fahrenheit and Centigrade

First, press and hold button **17**, then press button **9**.

Notes for using “AUTO”

- You can adjust the inside temperature by using button **15** and **16**. Your setting will be stored in memory until you choose a different temperature.
- You can set the inside temperature between 64 °F and 86 °F (+18 °C and +29 °C). Within this range, the temperature will be automatically maintained.
- If you select a temperature below 64 °F (+18 °C), “LO” will appear in the display. If you select a temperature above 86 °F (+29 °C), “HI” will appear in the display.

In both these settings (“HI”/“LO”), the system will run continuously at maximum heating or cooling.

- AUTO stays on even if you change the fan speed up or down for one stage.
- Under certain conditions, the system will automatically adjust itself for your optimum comfort. For example, after you start your vehicle when it is cold, air will be directed into the footwells. This is to prevent the windows from fogging up if it is humid at the time.

Manual operation of the Climatronic system

AUTO offers the most comfortable setting for you and passengers all year round under most circumstances.

There may be times when you want to override the AUTO operation and change some of the AUTO settings to operate the Climatronic system manually.

- Use buttons **11** and **12** to increase or decrease the fan speed and/or air flow distribution. The number of bars in position **2** of the display will increase or decrease accordingly.

- Press button **1** to:
 - switch off ECON
 - switch off air recirculation
 - defrost the windshield or to keep it from steaming up (point outlets 4 towards the side windows)
 - defrost the windshield or to keep it from fogging up (point outlets 4 towards the side windows) if, for example, someone gets into the vehicle and is wearing wet clothing.

- Press button **10** to switch on **air recirculation**. Symbol **5** appears in the display. Press button **1** and the air recirculation switches off. To switch it on again, simply press button **10**.

The air recirculation feature helps to prevent fumes (for example, when driving through a tunnel or standing in a traffic jam) and dust from entering into the vehicle interior.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

If you need to warm up or cool down the vehicle interior quickly, use the air recirculation feature. Air from inside the vehicle will be heated or cooled and then redirected back into the vehicle.

The symbol 5 will appear to remind you that the air recirculation is switched on.



WARNING

● **You will not receive any fresh outside air when air recirculation is on. Do not use this setting over long periods of time because stale air contributes to fatigue and reduced driver alertness.**

● **If the windows fog up, press the air recirculation switch again to switch off the air recirculation function.**

Avoid smoking when you select air recirculation. Smoke drawn in will leave deposits on the evaporator, resulting in permanent odors whenever you switch on the air conditioner. This can be eliminated only by exchanging the evaporator which is time consuming and expensive.

● You can direct the air flow into the footwells or into the vehicle compartment by pressing buttons **13** and **14**.

You can press buttons **1**, **13** and **14** in different combinations.

● When you use ECON—button **17**, **the compressor will be shut off**. Using ECON reaches and maintains the desired inside temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.



Remember that when you use ECON, you cannot select an inside temperature lower than the temperature outside.

Whenever you press button **1**, ECON switches off automatically.

To switch ECON on again, press **17**.

● Press buttons **15** and **16** to adjust the inside temperature.

To use ECON and the air recirculation at the same time, first press button **10** and then the ECON button **17**.

Pressing buttons **1**, **9** or **10** switches off ECON.

Pressing button **11** switches off the system completely. Press the button until "OFF" appears in the display.

Use this function only in special cases, for example if there is a defect in the heating and ventilation system.

Note

If you no longer require any special setting, press button **9** (AUTO) once again.

Air vents

Heated air, outside air (ECON) or cooled air (AUTO) will come out of all the vents after you have pressed the appropriate button.

Buttons **1**, **13** and **14** control the air vents.

Outlets 3 and 4 can be opened or closed separately with the respective thumbwheel next to the outlets.

Vent closed:

Thumbwheel to **0**

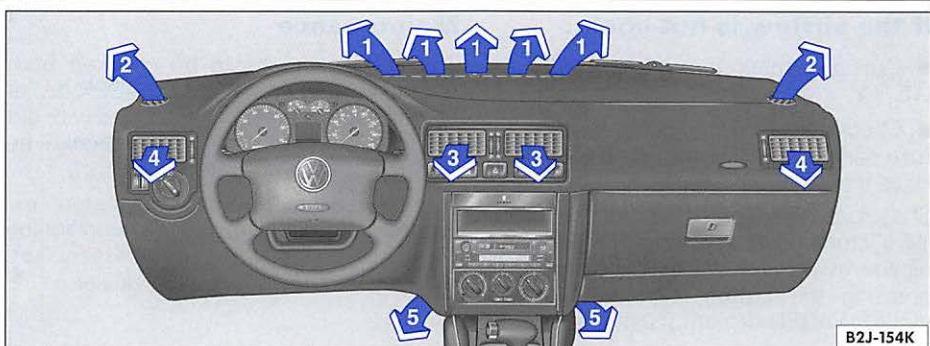
Vent open:

Thumbwheel to

By turning the thumbwheel next to vents 3 and 4 in either direction the air flow can be directed up and down.

When the thumbwheel under the grille is rotated to the left or right, the air flow direction is changed sideways.

The rear footwells are heated and cooled at the same time when you select outlets 5.



General Notes

- Make sure that the temperature sensors next to the display (position **18a** and **18b**) are not covered.
- Keeping the air intake slots in front of the windshield free from ice, snow and debris helps to make sure that the Climatronic* will work properly.
- Vehicle heating depends upon the temperature of the engine coolant – therefore, your vehicle interior will warm up only when the engine has reached its operating temperature.
- If you have not used AUTO for a long time, you may detect some odors when you switch it on.
To prevent this, you should switch on air conditioner – even in the winter – at least once a month and run it at the highest speed. Open the windows for a short time when doing this.
- Air escape through vents under the rear window. When placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, therefore, please ensure that the openings are not covered.

How to use Climatronic* more economically

The air conditioner decreases engine output and increases fuel consumption. Use the air conditioning only when necessary and please keep the following in mind:

- If your vehicle has been standing outside in the hot sun, first open a window or door to let the hot air escape before driving off.
- Do not use the air conditioner if you have any windows or the sunroof* open when driving.
- Use ECON whenever you can to make the vehicle interior comfortable without having to use the air conditioning.

If the airflow is not cool...

- Outside temperature is below +42°F (+5 °C).
- Check the air conditioning fuse on the fuse panel – see "Fuses", **Booklet 3.4**. Have it replaced, if necessary.

Should you suspect that your air conditioning system is damaged and the fuse is not blown, switch off the air conditioning by pressing the button **17** and see your VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.

If water drips under the vehicle...

When the outside temperature is high and the air very humid, condensed water from the air conditioner can drip under the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

Maintenance

The condenser should be checked from time to time by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer to make sure it is clean. If clogged with dirt or insects, the condenser should be washed down with water.

After the winter months and before extended summer use, the air conditioning should be checked and, if necessary, serviced by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

4-speed automatic transmission*



Ignition blue key safety interlock

After switching off the ignition, you can remove the ignition key only when the selector lever is in the **P (Park)** position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the **P (Park)** position.

Shift programs

The transmission is "self adapting" and will **automatically** select the most appropriate shift program suited to the driving conditions and driving style.

The transmission will select one of the **economy** programs when you drive at a steady speed or at gradually changing speeds without heavy acceleration. This gives best fuel efficiency, with early upshifting and delayed downshifting.

The transmission will automatically select the **sporty** shift programs when you drive at higher speeds, or with heavy acceleration and frequently changing speeds. Upshifts are then delayed to make full use of engine power, and downshifting takes place at higher engine speeds than in the economy programs.

The selection of the most suitable shift program is a continuous automatic process. Regardless of this, the driver can also make the transmission switch to a sporty program by pressing down the gas pedal **quickly**.

This causes the transmission to shift down into a lower gear and makes quick acceleration possible (for example to pass another vehicle). You do not need to depress the gas pedal into the kick-down range. After the transmission has upshifted again, the original program is selected according to your driving style.

An additional shift program allows the Automatic Transmission to select the right gear for uphill and downhill gradients.

This prevents the transmission from shifting up and down unnecessarily on hills.

Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

Your VOLKSWAGEN is equipped with an Automatic Shift Lock (ASL). The ASL is an electromechanical device that locks the selector lever in the **P (Park)** and **N (Neutral)** positions when the ignition is on.

You must press the brake pedal before the selector lever can be moved out of either position. This prevents the selector lever from being unintentionally moved into a driving position, resulting in unwanted vehicle movement.

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the "**N**" (**Neutral**) position (for example, shifting from "**R**" to "**D**"). The locking element only locks the selector lever if it is left in the "**N**" (**Neutral**) position for more than approximately one second without the brake pedal being depressed.

In the **N (Neutral)** position, the selector lever will not lock when the vehicle is moving faster than 3 mph (5 km / h).



Display

When the ignition is switched on, the position of the selector lever is indicated by the display in the instrument cluster.

The illustration shows selector position **D** engaged.

The engaged selector lever position will appear bright against a dark background (negative on positive) while the other positions appear just the opposite.

Selector lever positions

P – Park

Engage **P (Park)** only when the vehicle is stationary. Therefore, when parking your vehicle, apply the parking brake first, and then move the selector lever completely to position **P**. **To do this depress the button in the handle of the selector lever and push it through R to P.** The transmission is then mechanically locked.

To move the selector lever out of the **P (Park)** position you must first insert the ignition key into the ignition lock and turn the key.

Before you move the selector lever from the P (Park) position to R (Reverse) or any other position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

Shift out of the **P (Park)** position before releasing the parking brake.

When the vehicle is parked on a steep hill, shifting out of **P (Park)** may be a little harder. This is due to the vehicle's weight exerted on the transmission.

R – Reverse

Reverse should be selected only when the vehicle has come to a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

Before you move the selector lever to the reverse position you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.

When the ignition is switched on, the back-up lights come on when the selector lever is moved into the "**R**" position.

N – Neutral

Shift to this position for standing with brakes applied.

Before you move the selector lever from N (Neutral) to R position you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km / h), you must always apply the foot-brake before and while moving the lever out of N-Neutral.

Do not use N (Neutral) for coasting downhill. Coasting downhill with the transmission in Neutral and the engine not operating will result in damage to the Automatic transmission.

D – Normal driving position

Position **D** is for normal city and highway driving. It ranges from zero to top speed and all four gears shift automatically, depending on engine load, driving speed and automatically selected shift programs.

Before you move the selector lever to position 3 you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.

In some circumstances it may be advisable to temporarily engage one of the following selector positions.

3 – Position for hilly stretches

This selector lever position is recommended in situations where the transmission shifts frequently between third and fourth gears in position **D**. Also, in position **3** the engine's braking effect is greater than in **D**.

In position **3**, the first, second, and third gears will engage automatically.

2 – Position for mountainous regions

This position is to be used for mountain driving with long uphill and downhill gradients or slow driving, and also when you want to make use of the engine braking, which is more effective than in **3**. In **2**, only the first, and second gears will engage automatically.

Before you move the selector lever to position 1 you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.

1 – Position for steep hills

This position is to be used for extremely steep uphill and downhill gradients or slow driving. It also provides for maximum engine braking effect. **To engage this gear, depress the button in the handle of the selector lever first.** In **1** the transmission will stay in first gear and will not upshift.

When manually downshifting, the selector lever will move into the lower gear position, however the Automatic transmission itself will not downshift until there is no possibility of overrevving.

You cannot use cruise control* when you have selected "**1**".



Kick-down device

The kick-down device gives maximum acceleration when the accelerator pedal is pressed down past the full throttle position. Depending on road speed and engine speed, the upshift is either delayed (forced throttle) or the transmission changes down into the next lower gear.



WARNING

Be careful when using the kick-down on slippery roads. Rapid acceleration may cause skidding.

Driving the Automatic transmission

Starting the engine

The selector lever must be in **N (Neutral)** or **P (Park)**. If one of the driving positions is engaged a safety switch will prevent the engine from being started.

Selecting a driving position

WARNING

● When the selector lever is in a driving position, the vehicle may creep even at idle speed. Therefore, do not release the parking brake or foot brake until you are ready to move, because power is transmitted to the wheels as soon as a driving position is engaged.

● If the engine must be running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever is securely locked into the P position with the parking brake firmly set. Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.

● Do not accelerate while selecting a driving position. At this time the engine must run at idle speed so that no undue stress will be placed on the automatic clutches in the transmission.

● If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N (Neutral) while you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait to idle speed before selecting a driving position.

● Never shift into R (Reverse) or P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.

Starting off

Select a gear. **Wait for the transmission to engage the gear** (a slight movement can be felt). Then press the accelerator pedal.

Maneuvering

When alternating between forward (D) and reverse (R) – for instance, while maneuvering the vehicle into a tight parking space – shift only when the vehicle has come to a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

Stuck in snow, mud or sand

When alternating between forward and reverse in an effort to free the vehicle, depress the accelerator pedal slightly while the transmission is in gear, and release the accelerator pedal while shifting. Do not race the engine and avoid spinning the wheels.

WARNING

Wheel spinning in snow, mud, sand or on ice, for example, can cause tires to overheat and explode injuring you or others nearby. Always avoid spinning wheels trying to free a stuck vehicle.

Do not repeat “rocking” back and forth with wheels spinning at high engine speed and heavy throttle, as serious damage may be caused to the automatic transmission and other critical parts.

Parking

Engage **P (Park)** only when the vehicle is not moving. When parking your vehicle, apply the parking brake first, and then move the selector lever completely to position **P**. **To do this, depress the button in the handle of the selector lever and push it through R to P.** The transmission is then mechanically locked.

To move the selector lever out of the **P (Park)** position you must first insert the ignition key into the ignition lock and turn.

Before you move the selector lever from the P (Park) position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

Shift out of the **P (Park)** position before releasing the parking brake.

When the vehicle is parked on a steep hill, shifting out of **P (Park)** may be a little harder. This is due to the vehicle's weight exerted on the transmission.



Always heed all WARNINGS on page 118.

Stopping

- When stopping briefly, at a traffic light for example, it is not necessary to move the selector lever to **N (Neutral)**. Simply apply the foot brakes.
- The driving positions must never be used for holding the vehicle on a hill. Always use your foot brakes when stopped on inclines.



WARNING

- **Never get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running.**
- **If you must get out of the vehicle, move the selector lever securely into the P (Park) position and apply parking brake firmly.**

Emergency starting

Your VOLKSWAGEN with Automatic transmission **cannot be started by pushing or towing**. If engine does not start because of discharged battery, the vehicle can be started with jumper cables.

Refer to "Emergency starting with jumper cables.", **Booklet 3.4.**

Should the engine fail to start, consult your nearest VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Towing

To tow the vehicle, see "Emergency towing", **Booklet 3.4.**

5-speed automatic transmission (Tiptronic®)*



Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled automatic transmission, upshifting and downshifting automatically take place depending on which shift program is chosen. You can also manually select a shift program (Tiptronic®).

Ignition key safety interlock

After switching off the ignition, you can remove the ignition key only when the selector lever is in the **P (Park)** position. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in the **P (Park)** position.

Shift programs

The transmission is "self adapting" and will **automatically** select the most appropriate shift program suited to the driving conditions and driving style.

The transmission will select one of the **economy** programs when you drive at a steady speed or at gradually changing speeds without heavy acceleration. This gives best fuel efficiency, with early upshifting and delayed downshifting.

The transmission will automatically select the **sporty** shift programs when you drive at higher speeds, or with heavy acceleration and frequently changing speeds. Upshifts are then delayed to make full use of engine power, and downshifting takes place at higher engine speeds than in the economy programs.

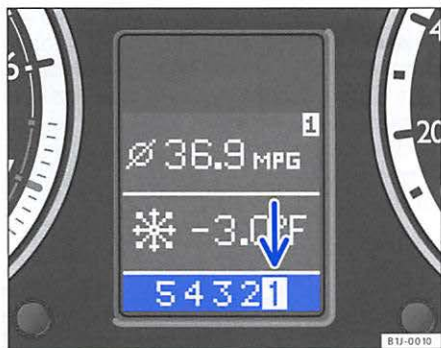
The selection of the most suitable shift program is a continuous automatic process. Regardless of this, the driver can also make the transmission switch to a sporty program by pressing down the gas pedal **quickly**.

This causes the transmission to shift down into a lower gear and makes quick acceleration possible (for example to pass another vehicle). You do not need to depress the gas pedal into the kick-down range. After the transmission has upshifted again, the original program is selected according to your driving style.

An additional shift program allows the automatic transmission to select the right gear for uphill and downhill gradients.

This prevents the transmission from shifting up and down unnecessarily on hills. The transmission will shift down to a lower gear when the driver presses the brake pedal on a downhill gradient. This makes use of the braking effect of the engine without the need to manually shift down.

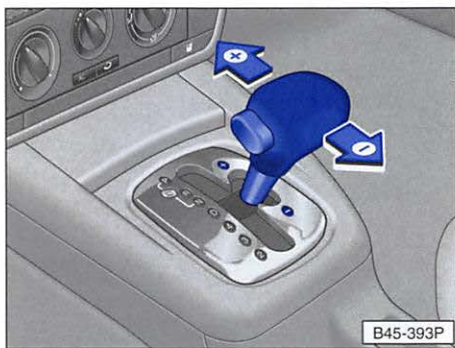
With this function the transmission will only shift down as far as 2nd gear.



Tiptronic®

By using the "Tiptronic®," you can manually select gears.

To use "Tiptronic®", with the selector lever in the "D" position, push the lever to the right. You can do this while the vehicle is moving or when the vehicle is at a standstill. The display will show "5", "4", "3", "2" and "1" as soon as the selector lever is switched over. The gear you select will also be highlighted. See illustration.



To upshift, push the selector lever forward to the "+" plus position. To downshift, pull the lever to the "-" minus position.

When accelerating, the transmission will automatically shift into gears "1", "2", "3" or "4" before it reaches the maximum rpm's.

When you shift into the next lower gear, the engine will downshift only when there is no possibility of overrevving.

When the kickdown is activated, the transmission will shift down to the next lowest gear regardless of the vehicle and engine speeds.

Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)

Your VOLKSWAGEN is equipped with an automatic Shift Lock (ASL). The ASL is an electromechanical device that locks the selector lever in the **P (Park)** and **N (Neutral)** positions when the ignition is on.

You must press the brake pedal before the selector lever can be moved out of either position. This prevents the selector lever from being unintentionally moved into a driving position, resulting in unwanted vehicle movement.

In selector lever positions **P (Park)** and **N (Neutral)**, the following instruction* appears in the instrument cluster as a reminder for the driver:

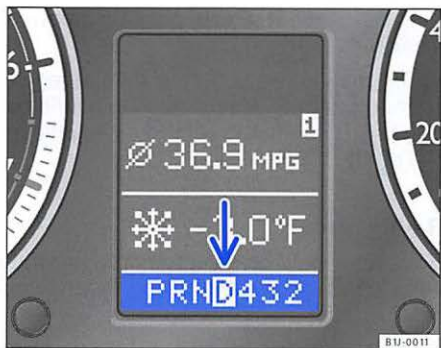
"When Stationary Apply Footbrake While Selecting Gear"

A time delay element prevents the selector lever from locking when it is moved through the "**N (Neutral)**" position (for example, shifting from "**R**" to "**D**"). The locking element only locks the selector lever if it is left in the "**N (Neutral)**" position for more than approx. one second without the brake pedal being depressed.

In the **N (Neutral)** position, the selector lever will not lock when the vehicle is moving faster than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Display

When the ignition is switched on, the position of the selector lever is indicated by the display in the instrument cluster. The illustration shows selector position **D** engaged.



The engaged selector lever position will appear bright against a dark background while the other positions appear just the opposite.

Selector lever positions

P – Park

Engage **P (Park)** only when the vehicle is stationary. Therefore, when parking your vehicle, apply the parking brake first, and then move the selector lever completely to position **P**. **To do this depress the button in the handle of the selector lever and push it through R to P.** The transmission is then mechanically locked.

To move the selector lever out of the **P (Park)** position you must first insert the ignition key into the ignition lock and turn the key.

Before you move the selector lever from the P (Park) position to R (Reverse) or any other position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

Shift out of the **P (Park)** position before releasing the parking brake.

When the vehicle is parked on a steep hill, shifting out of **P (Park)** may be a little harder. This is due to the vehicle's weight exerted on the transmission.

R – Reverse

Reverse should be selected only when the vehicle has come to a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

Before you move the selector lever to R (Reverse), press the button in the handle of the selector lever.

When the ignition is switched on, the backup lights come on when the selector lever is moved into the "R" position.

N – Neutral

Shift to this position for standing with brakes applied.

Before you move the selector lever from N (Neutral) to R position you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), you must always apply the foot-brake before and while moving the lever out of N-Neutral.

Do not use N (Neutral) for coasting downhill. Coasting downhill with the transmission in Neutral and the engine not operating will result in damage to the automatic transmission.

D – Normal driving position

Position **D** is for normal city and highway driving. It ranges from zero to top speed and all five gears shift automatically, depending on engine load, driving speed and automatically selected shift programs.

Before you move the selector lever to position 4 you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.

In some circumstances it may be advisable to temporarily engage one of the following selector positions.

4 – Position for hilly stretches

This selector lever position is recommended in situations where the transmission shifts frequently between fourth and fifth gears in position **D**. Also, in position **4** the engine's braking effect is greater than in **D**.

In position **4**, the first, second, third and fourth gears will engage automatically.

Top speed

Please note that the top speed of the vehicle can only be reached in 4th gear.

3 – Position for mountainous regions

This position is to be used for mountain driving with long uphill and downhill gradients or slow driving, and also when you want to make use of the engine braking, which is more effective than in **4**. In **3**, only the first, second and third gears will engage automatically.

Before you move the selector lever to position 2 you have to depress the button in the handle of the selector lever.

2 – Position for steep hills

This position is to be used for extremely steep uphill and downhill gradients or slow driving. It also provides for maximum engine braking effect. **To engage this gear, depress the button in the handle of the selector lever first.** In 2 the transmission will start in the first gear and only upshift to the second gear.

When manually downshifting, the selector lever will move into the lower gear position, however the automatic transmission itself will not downshift until there is no possibility of overrevving.

Kick-down device

The kick-down device gives maximum acceleration when the accelerator pedal is pressed down past the full throttle position. Depending on road speed and engine speed, the upshift is either delayed (forced throttle) or the transmission changes down into the next lower gear.



WARNING

- Be careful when using the kick-down on slippery roads. Rapid acceleration may cause skidding.

Driving the automatic transmission

Starting the engine

The selector lever must be in **N (Neutral)** or **P (Park)**. If one of the driving positions is engaged a safety switch will prevent the engine from being started.

Selecting a driving position



WARNING

- When the selector lever is in a driving position, the vehicle may creep even at idle speed. Therefore, do not release the parking brake or foot brake until you are ready to move, because power is transmitted to the wheels as soon as a driving position is engaged.
- If the engine must be running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever is securely locked into the P position with the parking brake firmly set. Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.
- Do not accelerate while selecting a driving position. At this time the engine must run at idle speed so that no undue stress will be placed on the automatic clutches in the transmission.
- If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N (Neutral) while you are driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine speed has dropped to idle speed before selecting a driving position.
- Never shift into R (Reverse) or P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.

Starting off

Select a gear. **Wait for the transmission to engage the gear** (a slight movement can be felt). Then press the accelerator pedal.

Maneuvering

When alternating between forward (**D**) and reverse (**R**) – for instance, while maneuvering the vehicle into a tight parking space – shift only when the vehicle has come to a full stop and the engine is running at idle speed.

Parking

Engage **P (Park)** only when the vehicle is not moving. When parking your vehicle, apply the parking brake first, and then move the selector lever completely to position **P**. **To do this, depress the button in the handle of the selector lever and push it through R to P.** The transmission is then mechanically locked.

To move the selector lever out of the **P (Park)** position you must first insert the ignition key into the ignition lock and turn.

Before you move the selector lever from the P (Park) position, you must always apply the brake pedal before and while depressing the button in the handle of the selector lever.

Shift out of the **P (Park)** position before releasing the parking brake.

When the vehicle is parked on a steep hill, shifting out of **P (Park)** may be a little harder. This is due to the vehicle's weight exerted on the transmission.



Always heed all WARNINGS on page 118.

Stopping

- When stopping briefly, at a traffic light for example, it is not necessary to move the selector lever to **N (Neutral)**. Simply apply the foot brakes.

- The driving positions must never be used for holding the vehicle on a hill. Always use your foot brakes when stopped on inclines.



WARNING

- **Never get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running.**
- **If you must get out of the vehicle, move the selector lever securely into the P (Park) position and apply parking brake firmly.**

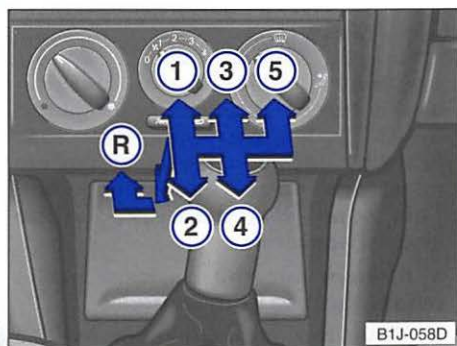
Emergency starting

Your VOLKSWAGEN with automatic transmission **cannot be started by pushing or towing**. If engine does not start because of discharged battery, the vehicle can be started with jumper cables. Refer to "Emergency starting with jumper cables", see **Booklet 3.4**. Should the engine fail to start, consult your nearest VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Towing

To tow the vehicle, see "Emergency towing", **Booklet 3.4**.

Manual transmission



Gearshift pattern

Shift into R (Reverse) only when the vehicle is not moving.

To engage R (Reverse), move lever to left, press down and push forward.

Especially after driving forward, stop the vehicle completely, shift into **Neutral** and rest the shift lever in **Neutral** briefly before shifting into Reverse.

The back-up lights go on when you shift into **Reverse** with the ignition on.

Gearshift lever

Your VOLKSWAGEN with manual transmission is equipped with an "interlock-feature". You must depress the clutch pedal all the way before you can start the engine.

Start the engine with the gearshift lever in Neutral and clutch pedal depressed.

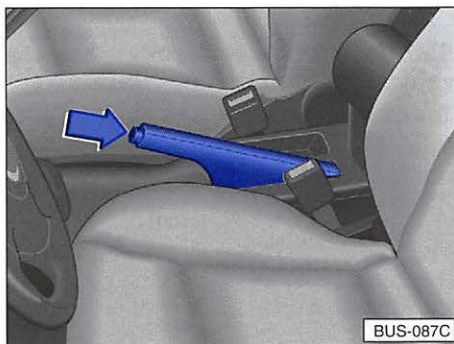
Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially depressed. This may cause premature clutch wear or damage.

Resting your hand on the gearshift lever knob while driving will cause premature wear in the transmission.

Drive in 5th gear for optimum fuel economy when cruising. However, if more acceleration is required (when passing, for example), shift down.

To engage 5th gear, move the shift lever to the right beyond the spring pressure point and push forward.

Parking brake lever



The parking brake lever is between the front seats.

Setting the Parking Brake:

Pull up the lever until strong resistance is felt.

The parking brake must be pulled up all the way to ensure that the vehicle cannot move. When the ignition is on, the brake warning light will illuminate.

Releasing the Parking Brake:

- 1 - Press and hold the brake pedal while releasing the parking brake.
- 2 - Slightly pull up the lever.
- 3 - Press the release button (arrow).
- 4 - Push the lever all the way down.

When the parking brake is fully released, the brake warning light will turn off.

Notes

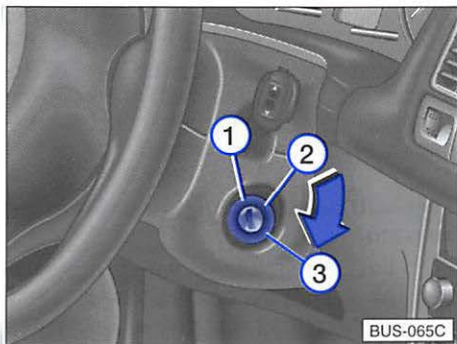
- If you should drive faster than 4 mph (6 km/h) with the parking brake still engaged, you will hear a warning chime in addition to the warning light.
- When the ignition is switched on and the hand brake is not fully released, the daytime running lights (low beam with reduced brightness) will not light up!



WARNING

- Always release the parking brake fully. A partially engaged brake will overheat the rear brakes, reduce their effectiveness, and cause excessive wear. This could lead to brake failure and an accident.
- Always set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.
- Move the selector lever to "P" (automatic transmission) or move the gearshift lever to "R" or "1" (manual transmission).
- When parking on hills, also turn the wheels so that the front wheels will first run into the curb if the vehicle starts to roll.
- parking headed downhill, always turn the front wheels toward the curb.
- parking headed uphill, always turn the front wheels away from the curb.
- Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. A child could release the parking brake and / or move the selector / gearshift lever and allow the vehicle to move causing an accident and personal injury.

Ignition switch



Your VOLKSWAGEN has an ignition switch with an anti-theft steering column lock.

Switch positions

1 - Ignition off / engine off – steering wheel can be locked.

Note

Whenever you leave the vehicle unattended, pull out the key, turn the steering wheel to the left or right until it locks and make sure that the vehicle is closed and locked.



WARNING

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of vehicle controls can cause serious personal injuries.

Ignition key safety interlock

On vehicles with automatic transmission you can remove the ignition key only when the selector lever is in the **P (Park)** position. When the key is removed, the selector lever will be locked in “P.”



WARNING

For vehicles with manual transmission:

● **To prevent sudden and unintended vehicle movement, always firmly set the parking brake when you remove the ignition key. Removing the ignition key will not lock the gearshift lever. The vehicle can move if the lever is moved out of gear.**

● **Never remove the key from steering lock or turn the key off (ignition off) while the vehicle is moving. The steering wheel will lock, causing loss of control.**

2 - Ignition on / steering unlocked / glow plug operation for Diesel engine.

If it is difficult to turn the key from position **1** to **2**, move the steering wheel until the key turns freely.

3 - Starter engages. Key returns to position **2** as soon as it is released. For “Starting procedures”, see following pages.

In position **3**, the power supply to the headlights, windshield wipers, blower motor and rear window defogger is temporarily interrupted to conserve battery power.

Before the starter can be operated again the key must be turned back to position **1**.

The non-repeat lock in the ignition switch prevents the starter from being operated when engine is running (this could damage the starter).

In positions **2** and **3** several warning / indicator lights will come on. Refer to "Warning / indicator lights" for details.

Chime

If you leave the key in the ignition/steering lock, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened. This reminds you to remove the key and lock the doors.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized persons from using your vehicle.

A micro-chip is located in the head of the key which automatically deactivates the immobilizer when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched off.

Note

The engine can thus only be started with a correctly coded Volkswagen key.

Trouble-free operation of your vehicle can only be guaranteed when using Volkswagen keys.

Power steering

When the engine is running, never hold the steering wheel turned all the way to the right or to the left for longer than 15 seconds. The power steering pump will over-heat the hydraulic fluid if you hold the steering wheel all the way turned.

This will damage the power steering system!

Each time the steering wheel is turned all the way to the right or left when stopped, you will hear noises caused by the severe stress placed on the power steering pump. At the same time, engine idle speed drops.

Starting procedures

WARNING

- Always fasten safety belts before driving.
- Never start or let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Exhaust fumes from the engine contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can be fatal if inhaled.
- Never leave the engine idling unattended. An unattended vehicle with a running engine poses a danger of personal injury or theft.

 *To avoid unnecessary engine wear and to reduce exhaust emissions, do not let your vehicle stand and warm up. Be ready to drive off immediately after starting your vehicle. Maintain moderate speed until the engine is completely warm. Remember, the engine performs best at operating temperature.*

Manual transmission

Your VOLKSWAGEN with manual transmission is equipped with an "interlock-feature". You must depress the clutch pedal all the way before you can start the engine.

Automatic transmission*

The engine will start only with the selector lever in **N** (Neutral) or **P** (Park).

Starting gasoline engine

Never depress or even touch the gas pedal while starting the engine regardless of any outside or engine temperature. This applies especially in extremely low temperatures.

- As soon as the engine starts, release the ignition key.
- If the engine does not start the first time, or stalls, turn off the ignition and restart.
- Do not operate the starter for more than 10 seconds.
- Allow approximately 30 seconds between each starting attempt.
- When starting a very hot engine, it may be necessary to slightly depress the gas pedal after starting the engine.
- If the engine still does not start, the fuse for the electric fuel pump may be blown – see "Fuses," chapter "WHAT DO I DO NOW?", *Booklet 3.4*.

Note

- On a vehicle with manual transmission, do not start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle for a distance of more than 50 yards (50 meters). Fuel could get into the catalytic converter and cause damage.
- Your VOLKSWAGEN with automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

● **Before you try to start the engine by pushing, you should try jump starting the engine using the battery from another vehicle – see "Emergency starting," chapter "WHAT DO I DO NOW?," Booklet 3.4.**

Starting Diesel engine

The Diesel engine is equipped with a glow plug system. The required glow plug warm-up time is indicated by a light which is controlled by the coolant temperature.

Cold starting

After switching on the ignition (key position 2) the preglow indicator light will come on – see page 17.

Starting a cold engine

Outside temperature 40°F (+5 °C) or warmer:

You can start the engine **without** having to wait for the preglow to come on. Do not depress the accelerator pedal.

Outside temperature below 40°F (+5°C):

● Insert the key into the ignition lock and turn it to position 2 (see page 119) – the indicator light comes on. When the correct starting temperature is reached, the light will go out.

While glow plugs are working do not switch on any other heavy current consumers. This would place an unnecessary load on the vehicle battery.

● Start the engine immediately after the indicator light has gone out.

● Do not depress accelerator pedal while starting.

● If engine starts to fire irregularly, keep operating starter for a few seconds longer (maximum 30 seconds) until engine runs on its own power.

● If engine does not start, switch glow plugs on again and start as described. If engine still does not start, the fuse for the glow plugs may have blown – see your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.



WARNING

Do not use "starting assist fluids." They may be potentially explosive or cause a "run-away" engine condition. This could result in serious engine damage and personal injury.

Starting a warm engine

● Do not depress accelerator while starting.

● The glow plug light will not light up. You can start the engine immediately.

Stopping engine

Starting the Diesel engine after you have driven until the fuel tank was empty and then refueled again

If you have driven your vehicle with Diesel engine until the fuel tank was almost completely empty, and then refueled, it may take a little longer – up to one minute – to start your engine. This is because air got into the fuel line and must be bled out before the engine will start.

Do not stop the engine immediately after hard or extended driving. Keep engine running for about two minutes to prevent excessive heat build-up.



WARNING

- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Hot components can burn skin on contact.**
- **Never touch the radiator fan, it is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly – even when the ignition is off.**
- **Always heed all WARNINGS on page 124.**

Note

The ignition should not be switched off as long as the vehicle is still moving with a gear engaged. Otherwise fuel could get into the catalytic converter and cause damage.

Engine compartment



WARNING

Before you check anything under the hood:

- Switch off engine – remove ignition key.
- Always fully set the parking brake, move selector lever to P (Park) (automatic transmission) or gearshift lever to Neutral (manual transmission).
- Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- Never spill fluids on hot engine components. These fluids can cause a fire.
- Never touch the radiator fan, it is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly – even when the ignition is off.
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
 - Always disconnect the battery.
 - Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames.
 - Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.



WARNING continued

- To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:
 - Ignition cables
 - Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
- Be especially careful if the engine must be running.
 - Always fully set the parking brake and move the selector lever to P (Park) (automatic transmission) or Neutral (manual transmission).
 - Always exercise extreme caution to prevent neckties, jewelry, long hair or loose clothing from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts.

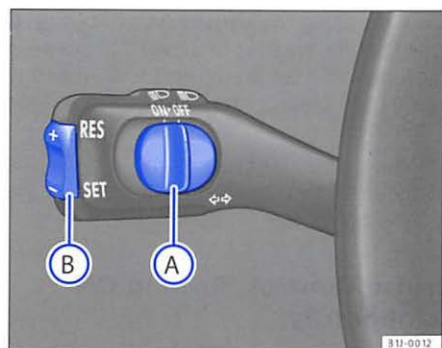
Note

When adding fluids, ensure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening. Otherwise, serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.



For early leak detection, regularly inspect the vehicle floor panel from underneath the vehicle. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a service center.

Cruise control*



For your driving comfort the cruise control system can be used to keep the vehicle speed constant beginning at about 20 mph (30 km/h).

When driving down a slope, the cruise control may not be able to keep the vehicle speed constant. The weight of the vehicle will cause the vehicle to go faster than you may want. Use the foot brake to slow down.

WARNING

- To help keep the vehicle under control, do not use the cruise control when driving on winding or slippery roads, or in heavy or varying traffic.
- Only use cruise control when traffic and weather conditions allow you to drive at a steady speed.
- To prevent unintended operation of cruise control, turn it off when it is not being used.
- It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too fast for existing traffic conditions.

The system is operated with switch **A** and button **B** located on the turn signal lever.

Note

Vehicle with the **multi-function steering wheel** do not come with the button **B** and the position **RES** for the switch **A** on the turn signal lever – see page 26.

Switching the system on

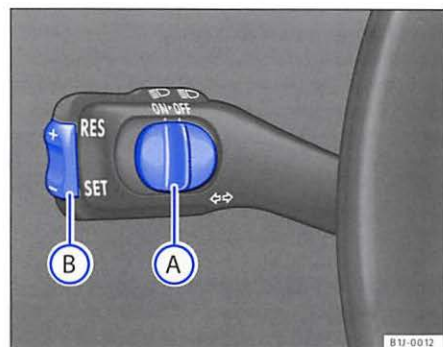
Slide switch **A** to **ON**.

When the cruise control system is switched on an indicator light in the instrument panel will light up.

Setting the speed

When the vehicle reaches the speed to be maintained, depress the **bottom** part of button **B (SET)**. Now you can take your foot off the gas pedal.

- Increase the speed using the accelerator pedal. When the pedal is released, the system continues to control the vehicle at the speed previously set.
- This will not occur if the set speed is exceeded by the vehicle speed for more than 5 minutes and more than 6 mph (10 km/h). The speed will have to be set again.



Changing the speed

Decelerate / Set

Press the **bottom** part of button **B** (–) to reduce the speed.

- By briefly pressing the **bottom** part of button **B** (–), you reduce the speed in stages. If you hold down the button, the speed automatically decreases.
- When you release button **B**, the speed of the vehicle at that time is the new speed that is stored.
- If the button is released below approximately 22 mph (30 km/h), the memory is erased. The speed must be reset using the **bottom** part of button **B** (–) after the vehicle accelerates above 22 mph (30 km/h).

Accelerate / Set

You can increase speed by pressing the **upper** part of button **B** (+) without having to press the gas pedal.

- By pressing the **upper** part of button **B** (+) briefly, you can increase the speed in stages. If you press and hold the button in place, the speed increases steadily.
- When you release the button **B**, the speed of the vehicle at that time is the new speed that is stored.

Cruise Control, Turning Off Temporarily

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

The system is temporarily switched off by stepping on the brake pedal, or by sliding switch **A** towards **OFF**.

The speed of the vehicle is stored at this time and can be retrieved.

The speed you were going at the time you temporarily switched off the system is stored and can be retrieved.

To retrieve and **resume** the speed that was previously stored, slide switch **A** to **ON** and press the **upper** part of button **B** (**RES**) after taking your foot off the brake pedal.



WARNING

It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too fast for existing traffic conditions.

In addition, the system is temporarily switched off if you are in **N** (**Neutral**) or in **1**.

Vehicles with manual transmission:

The system is temporarily switched off by stepping on the brake or clutch pedal, or by sliding switch **A** towards **OFF**.

The speed you are going at the time you temporarily switched off the system is stored and can be retrieved.

**WARNING**

It is dangerous to use the Resume feature when the previously set speed is too fast for existing traffic conditions.

Setting the speed

If the speed was erased, or if no speed was set when the system was temporarily switched off, perform one of the following steps to set the speed:

- Press the **upper** part of button **B (+)** and hold it until the desired speed is reached. Release the switch and speed is stored.

or

- Press the gas pedal until you reach the desired speed and press the **bottom** part of button **B (SET)** briefly. The speed is stored.

Cruise Control, Turning Off Completely**WARNING**

To prevent unintended operation of cruise control, turn it off when it is not being used.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

The system is **completely switched off** by moving the selector lever into:

- **P, N** or **R**

- **1**

or

- by sliding switch **A** to the right stop (OFF).

- by switching off the ignition when the vehicle is stopped.

Vehicles with manual transmission:

- sliding switch **A** to the right stop (OFF)

- by switching off the ignition when the vehicle is stopped.

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A

Adjustable steering column	73	Airbag	<i>See also Booklet 2.1</i>
Adjustable steering wheel	73	– Indicator light	17
Adjusting		Airbag indicator light	17
– Climate controls	92	Alarm system	34
– Head restraints	62	Alarms	
– Mirrors	58	– Anti-theft system	34
– Seats	64	– Setting	31
Adjustments, Head Restraints ..	62	Alternator	21
Adjustments		Alternator/Generator	21
– Climate controls	99	Anti-Slip Regulation	48
– Mirror	58	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ..	19
Air bag system – Seating position	64	Anti-Slip Regulation	18
Air Circulation	79	– Indicator light	18
Air circulation,		Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR),	
– luggage compartment	79	– Switch	48
Air conditioning	91	Anti-theft alarm system	34
– Air recirculation	92		<i>See also Alarms</i>
– Defogging windshield		Armrest	75
and side windows	94	– Storage bin	75
– Defrosting windshield		Ashtray	
and side windows	94	– Rear	89
– ECON cooling	96	– Front	89
– Fan switch	92	Ashtrays	89
– Heating interior quickly	95	– Front	89
– Keeping interior comfortable ..	95	ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation)	18
– Maintenance	97	Assist handles	90
– Maximum cooling	96	Automatic locking	37
– Normal Cooling	95		<i>See also Locks</i>
– Temperature control	92	Automatic Shift Lock (ASL)	17
– Ventilation (fresh air)	96	Automatic transmission	105
– Vents	94	– Back-up lights	107
Air outlets	94, 102	– Emergency start	110
Air recirculation		– Ignition key safety interlock ..	105
– Air conditioning	92	– Kick-Down	115
– Climatronic	101	– Kick-down device	108
Air vents	102	– Tiptronic	112
– Air conditioning	94	– Towing	110, 116
– Climatronic	102		

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Automatic transmission	
(5-speed)	111
– Back-up lights	114
– Ignition key safety interlock ..	111
Average fuel consumption	
indicator	11

B

Back-up lights	107, 114
– Automatic transmission	107
– Automatic transmission	
(5-speed)	114
– Manual transmission	117
Backrest	77
– Folding	77
Backward adjustment of seats ...	66
Battery replacement, remote key .	28
Battery, vehicle. ...	<i>See Booklet 3.4</i>
Beverage holder	87
Brake, – Warning light	20
Brakes	
– Fluid.	<i>See Booklet 3.4</i>
– Pads	24
– Warning light	20
– Wear indicator	24
Buzzer	23
.....	<i>See also Chime</i>

C

Car seat, Child.	<i>See Booklet 2.1</i>
Cargo Net, – Tie-down hooks	80
Central locking system	35
– Rear lid	39
Central locking systems	36
Child Safety, – Child Car Seat	65

Child safety	<i>See also Booklet 2.1</i>
– Safety lock, rear doors	38
Child Safety Lock	
– Disengaging	38
– Engaging	38
Child safety lock for rear doors ...	38
Chime	28, 47, 120
– Door	28
– Ignition	120
– Oil	23
– Safety belt	21
Cigarette lighter	88
Climate controls	91
.....	<i>See also Air conditioning</i>
.....	<i>See also Climatronic</i>
Climatronic	98
– air recirculation	101
– Air vents	98, 102
– AUTO operation	100
– Automatic control	98
– ECON cooling	103
– Maintenance	104
– Manual control	98
– Manual operation	100
– Operating controls	99
– Switching between	
Fahrenheit and Centigrade ..	100
Clock	10
– Setting	10
Coat hooks	90
Cold starting	122
Compartment floor	81
Controls ..	<i>See also Climate controls</i>
– Climate	91
– Interior light	56
– Locks	35
– Remote	30
– Unlocking window	41

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

- Coolant temperature gauge 9
- Coolant temperature gauge, engine 9
- Coolant temperature light 21
- Cooling system
 - Engine. See **Booklet 3.4**
 - Interior. .. See **Climate controls**
- Cruise control 125
 - Activating 125
 - Changing speed 126
 - Turning off, completely 127
 - Turning off, temporarily 126
- Cup-holder 87

- D**

- Dashboard 3
- Data Link Connector (DLC) 25
- Day-Night mirror 58
- Daytime running lights 47
- Defogging
 - Rear window switch 49
 - Side windows 94
 - Windshield 94
 - Windshield and side windows 94
- Defrosting
 - Rear window 49
 - Side windows 94
 - Windshield 94
 - Windshield and side windows 94, 101
- Diesel engine
 - empty fuel tank 123
 - starting 122
- Digital clock 10
- Dimmer switch – Dashboard lights 47

- Displays
 - See **Multi-Function Indicator**
- Distance driven indicator 14
- DLC 25
- Doors 35
 - Automatic locking 37
 - Child safety lock, rear doors .. 38
 - Closing 35
 - Fuel filler flap release 50
 - Locking with key 35
 - Locking with remote 31
 - Power locking switch 36
 - Power locks 35
 - Rear lid release 50
 - Unlocking with key 35
 - Unlocking with remote 31
- Driver position 64
- Driver's Seat
 - Adjustments – Manual
 - Forward and Backward ... 66
 - Height 66
 - Lumbar Support 66
 - Seatback 66
 - Adjustments – Electrical
 - Backrest 68
 - Forward and Backward .. 67
 - Height 67
 - Raise and Lower 67
 - Headrest 62
 - Memory 68
 - Seating Position 64
- Driver's seat-memory 68
- Duplicate key 29

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

E

- ECON cooling 96
- Electrical / Electronic
 - Heated driver's seat 48
 - Heated passenger seat 49
 - Power locks 35
- Electrical Socket 88
- Electrical/Electronic, Seat Adjustment 67
- Electrically heated driver's seat ... 48
- Electrically heated passenger seat 49
- Electronic differential lock (EDL) .. 19
- Electronic immobilizer 19, 120
- Electronic power control (EPC) ... 18
- Electronic Stability Program .. 18, 48
 - Indicator light 18
- Electronic Stability Program (ESP)
 - Switch 48
- Emergency
 - Closing sunroof 46
 - Flasher 49
 - Flasher switch 49
 - Off (Seat Memory) 71
- Emergency brake 118
- Emergency flasher switch 49
- Emission control system
 - Malfunction indicator light 25
- Engine
 - Compartment 124
 - Coolant Level 21
 - Coolant Temperature 21
 - Coolant temperature 9
 - Fuel specifications *See Booklet 3.4*
 - fuel specs. *See booklet 3.4*
 - Oil pressure 23
 - Oil specifications *See Booklet 3.4*
 - Oil specs. *See booklet 3.4*
 - Specifications. . . *See Booklet 3.4*
 - Starting 121
 - Stopping 123
 - Windshield washer container *See Booklet 3.4 and 3.5*
- Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Gauge 21
- Environment
 - Starting procedures 121
- Environment considerations *See Booklet 3.4*
- ESP (Electronic Stability Program) 18

F

- Fahrenheit to Centigrade, setting 100
- Fan
 - Climatronic 98
 - Radiator. *See Booklet 3.4*
 - Switch – Air conditioning 92
 - Air conditioning 91
- Fan switch – Air conditioning 92
- Fastening Cargo Net 80
- Fastening eyes 80
- Flasher, emergency 49
- Floor Mats 76
- Fog lights, – Front 47
- Folding luggage compartment
 - cover 83
- Folding outside mirrors 60
- Folding the seatbench back
 - into place 78
- Folding the seatbench forward ... 77
- Forward adjustment of seats 66
- Fresh air 96

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Front		Gearshift lever	117
– Seat		General illustration	3
– Driver's	64	Generator	21
– Head Restraints	62	Glove box light	57
– Seats.	See Booklet 2.1	Glove Box/Compartment	86
Front armrest	75	– Owner's literature storage	86
Front door panel light	57	Glove compartment / box, – Light	57
Front doors	35	Glow plugs indicator light	17
Front fog lights	47		
Front interior light	56	H	
Front map lights	56	Handbrake	118
Front passenger position	65	Head Restraints	62
Front passenger's seat	65	Height Adjustment	62
Front seats	64	Installing	62
Fuel		Removing	62
– Consumption indicator	11	Head restraints.	See Booklet 2.1
– Momentary consumption		Headlight	
– Average consumption	13	– Dimmer switch	51
Fuel Consumption – Average	13	– Flasher	51
Fuel filler cap	24	Headlight dimmer switch lever	51
Fuel filler flap release	50	Headlight flasher	51
Fuel gauge	10	Heated	
Fuses.	See Booklet 3.4	– Driver's seat	48
		– Passenger's seat	49
		– Window	49
G		Heated driver's seat	48
Gasoline engine – starting	121	Heated outside mirrors	59
Gauge		Heated passenger seat	49
– Coolant temperature	9	Heating	91
– Engine coolant temperature	9	Heating interior quickly	95
– Fuel	10	Heating system	
– Odometer	10		See Climate controls
– Speedometer	10	Height adjustment of seats	66
– Tachometer	8	High beam	18
Gauges – Engine Coolant		High beam lever	51
Temperature	21		

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

High Beams, – Operation	51
Holder sunclass	90
Hood, opening. See Booklet 3.4	
Hooks	80
Tie-Down, Cargo Net	80
Horn	3
..... See also Booklet 2.1	
How to use the air conditioning more economically	96
How to use this Manual	2

I

Ignition	119
– Key safety interlock ...	105, 111
– Switch	119
Ignition key safety interlock	105, 111, 119
Immobilizer	19, 120
Important information about this Manual	2
Increasing size of luggage compartment	79
Indicator, – Multifunction (MFA) ..	11
Indicator light	
– Anti-Slip Regulation	18
– Door open	24
– Trunk / Rear lid	24
Indicator lights	6, 16
– Airbag system	17
– Anti-Lock brake system	19
– Brake	20
– Electronic power control	18
– Electronic Stability Program ..	18
– Engine oil pressure	23

– Front brake pads worn	24
– Fuel level too low	24
– Generator	21
– High beam	18
– Malfunction indicator lamp ...	25
– Safety belts	21
– Turn signals	18
– Windshield washer	24
– Windshield washer fluid level too low	24
Inside day-night mirror	58
Installing wiper blades	55, 56
Instrument Cluster	
– Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Gauge	21
– Instrument illumination	47
Instrument cluster	8
Instrument illumination	47
Instrument panel	3
– Digital clock	10
– Display, Multifunction indicator	11
– Engine coolant temperature gauge	9
– Fuel gauge	10
– Odometer	10
– Speedometer	10
Interior light control	57
Interior lights	56
– Front map light	56
– Light control	57

J

Jump starting. See Booklet 3.4	
-------------------------------------	--

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

K

Keeping interior comfortable	95
Key	
– Coding	32
– Duplicate	29
– Ignition, Safety Interlock	105, 111
– Master with remote	28
– Remote release	28
– Replacement	29
– Tag	29
– Valet	29
Key for remote release	28
Keys	28
Kick-down	108, 115

L

Lane changer	51
Light switch	47
Lighter	88
Lights, – Glove compartment / box	57
Lights	47
– Backup	107, 114
– Brake warning	20
– Daytime running	47
– Fog, front	47
– Front door panel	57
– Hazard	49
– Indicator	6, 16
– Interior control	56
– Interior front	56
– Luggage compartment	57
– Map	56
– Storage compartment	57
– Warning	16
Roof, Rack, Loading	86

Loading a Roof Rack	86
Locking Switch, Power	36
Locking the vehicle	35
Locks	
– Doors	35
– Rear lid	39
– Truck / Rear lid	39
Locks,, Glove Box/Compartment	86
Luggage Compartment	
– Air Circulation	79
– Cover	
– Installing	84
– Removing	83
– Electrical Socket	88
– Increasing size of compartment	79
– Tie-down hooks	80
– Transporting heavy objects	79
Luggage compartment	79
Luggage compartment cover	83
Luggage compartment floor	81
Luggage compartment light	57
Luggage compartment socket	88
Lumbar Support	66

M

Maintenance, – Vehicle	See Booklet 1.2 and 3.4
Malfunction indicator lamp	25
Manual air conditioning	91
Manual transmission	117
– Back-up lights	117
– Gearshift lever	117
Master key	28
– With remote	28

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Mats, Floor	76
Maximum cooling	96
Memory	
Retrieving	
Driving Forward	70
Driving in Reverse	71
Setting	
Driving Forward	68
Driving in Reverse	69
Memory for driver's seat and outside mirrors	68
Memory for outside mirrors	60
Memory Functions	
Driver's Seat	68
Outside Mirrors	68
Memory functions, – Multi-Function Indicator (MFA) .	11
memory Functions, Emergency Off, Seat	71
MFA. See Multi-Function Indicator	
Miles per gallon (liter)	13
Miles per gallon / Liters	
per 100 km	13
Miles per hour / Kilometers	
per hour	14
Mirrors	58
– Outside	59
Outside, Memory	68
Retrieval	
Driving Forward	70
Driving in Reverse	71
Tilt Position, Backing Up	69
Momentary fuel consumption indicator	13
Multi function steering wheel	26

Multi-Function Indicator	
– Average driving speed	14
– Average fuel consumption ...	13
– Erasing the settings	12
– Outside temperature	13
Multi-function indicator	11
Multi-Function Indicator (MFA)	
– Driving time	14
– Momentary fuel consumption	13
– Time driven	14
Multi-function steering wheel ...	26
– Lighting	26
– Radio system	26, 27
Multifunction steering wheel	
– Cruise control	26

N

Normal cooling	95
----------------------	----

O

OBD II	25
Odometer	10, 15
Oil pressure	23
Oil specification. See Booklet 3.4	
On Board Diagnostic System	25
One-touch down feature	41
One-touch up feature	41
Opening the hood. . See Booklet 3.4	
Opening the vehicle	35
Operating controls	
– Air conditioning	92
– Climatronic	99
Outlets, – Air	94

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Outlets, – Air	94
Outside Mirrors	
– Folding mirrors	60
– Synchronized adjustment	60
Outside mirrors	59
Outside mirrors–memory	68
Outside temperature indicator	13
Owner's Literature storage	86
Owner's literature storage	86

P

Panic button / switch	32
Parking	110, 116
Parking brake	118
Parking brake lever	118
Passenger's Seat, – Front	
– Foreward and backward adjustment	66
– Heated seat switch	49
– Height adjustment	66
– Lumbar support	66
Pedals	76
Pinch protection, – Windows	43
Power	
– Locking Switch	36
– Steering	120
– Windows	41
Power controls	
– Locking switch	36
– Locks	35
– Outside mirrors	59
– Roof	45
Power locking switch	36
Power locks	35
Power outside mirrors	59

Power roof	45
– Closing	45
– Convenience closing	46
– Emergency closing	46
– Opening	45
Power Window	41
Power windows,	
– Pinch protection	43

R

Radiator.	See Booklet 3.4
Radio	See also Booklet 3.3
– Control on multifunction steering wheel	27
Radio – see Booklet 3.3	27
Rain sensor	53
Rear	
– Doors, Child Safety Lock	38
– Lid/Trunk Lid	
– Lock Positions	39
– Remote Release	32
– Seat	
– Backrest	77
– Backrest, Folding	77
– Backrest, Unfolding	78
– View mirror	58
– Window defogger switch	49
Seat	77
Rear / Trunk lid	
– Closing	39
– Locks	39
– Opening	39
Rear lid	39
Rear view mirror	58

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

- Rear window defogger 49
 - Rear window wiper blade
 - Removing 56
 - Rear window wiper/washer 53
 - Recirculation air 92
 - Releases
 - Hood. See Booklet 3.4
 - Trunk / Rear lid 39
 - Remote Control
 - Manual programming 33
 - Operating range 30
 - Rear lid release 32
 - Resetting 32
 - Unfolding/Folding master key . 31
 - Unlocking & locking vehicle .. 31
 - Remote control 28, 30
 - Battery replacement 28
 - Remote controls, – Locking, – Release, – Resetting, – Unlocking ... 31
 - Remote locking / unlocking 30
 - Replacement of keys 29
 - Replacing
 - Batteries, remote control 28
 - Bulbs. See Booklet 3.4
 - Keys 29
 - Replacing batteries
 - Remote control 28
 - Replacing rear window wiper blade 56
 - Replacing windshield wiper blades 55
 - Replacing wiper blades 55
 - Restraint System, Head Restraint 62
 - Restraint systems. . See Booklet 2.1
 - Restraints
 - Adjusting seating position 64
 - Head restraints
 - Height Adjustment 62
 - Remove & install, front ... 63
 - Remove & install, rear .. 63
 - Reverse
 - Automatic transmission 107
 - Automatic transmission (5-speed) 114
 - Manual transmission 117
 - Roof 45
 - Roof Rack, – Loading 85
 - Roof rack 85
 - Roof railing 85
 - Roof, power
 - Closing 45
 - Convenience closing 46
 - Lowering 46
 - Opening 45
 - Raising 46
- ### S
- Safety belt warning light 21
 - Safety belts ... See also Booklet 2.1
 - Adjusting seating position 64
 - Seat
 - Electrical Adjustment, Backrest 68
 - Rear 77
 - Seat belts. See Booklet 2.1
 - Seatback adjustment 66
 - Seating position
 - Driver 64
 - Front passenger 65

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Seats	Sensor, rain	53
– Adjustment	Settings	
– Forward and Backward	– Clock	10
– Height	– Odometer	10
– Lumbar Support	Outside Mirrors	68
– Belts. See Booklet 2.1	Seat Memory	68
– Child seats. See Booklet 2.1	Shift Lock, – Automatic	17
– Front, – Driver's	Signals, Turn	51
– front	Signals, turn	18
– Heated driver's seat switch	Socket	88
– Heated passenger's	Socket, Electrical	88
seat switch	Specifications, vehicle.	
Manual Adjustment	See Booklet 3.5	
Head Restraint	Speedometer	10
– Rear	Starter switch	119
– Seat bench, folding	Starting	
– Seat bench, unfolding	– Diesel engine	122
–Foreward and backward	– Gasoline engine	121
adjustment	Starting engine	121
–Height adjustment	Starting procedures	121
–manual adjustment	Steering	
–Seatback adjustment	– Wheel, Multi-function	26
Child Car Seat	– Wheel, Multi-functioni	
Electrical Adjustment	– Sound System	26
Forward & Backward	– Wheel, Multi-functions	26
Height	– Lighting	26
Raising & Lowering	Steering lock	119
Memory	Steering wheel	73
Secondary key	Stopping the engine	123
Securing luggage	Storage	
Selector lever display	– Light	57
Selector lever position display	Box/Compartment	86
Self-dimming mirror	Storage bin	86
	armrest	75

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Storage Compartment	
– Cup Holder	87
– Glove Box/Compartment	86
Storage compartment light	57
Sun roof.	<i>See Power, roof</i>
Sun visors	61
Sunclass holder	90
Switches	47
– Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)	48
– Daytime running lights	47
– Electronic Stability Program (ESP)	48
– Emergency flasher	49
– Fog lights, front	47
– Fuel filler flap release	50
– Heated seat, driver's	48
– Heated seat, passenger's	49
– Instrument illumination	47
– Light switch	47
– Panic button switch	32
– Power locking switch	36
– Rear lid release	50
– Rear window defogger	49
Synchronised mirror adjustment	60

T

Tachometer	8
Tag	29
– Key	29
Temperature control	
– Air conditioning	92
– Climatronic	98
Temperature indicator, outside	13
Tie-down hooks	80
Tie-Down Hooks, Cargo Net	80

Tilt and telescopic steering wheel	73
Time driven indicator	14
tiptronic	112
– Top speed	114
Top speed	114
Towing	110, 116
Transmission	
– <i>See Automatic transmission;</i>	
Manual transmission	
Transporting heavy objects	79
Trip odometer	15
Trunk, – Light	57
Trunk/Rear Lid Release	32, 50
Turn signals	18, 51
– Indicators	18
– Operation	51

U

Unlocking the vehicle	35
Using the air conditioning more economically	96

V

Valet key	29
Variable luggage compartment	
– floor	81
Vehicle battery.	<i>See Booklet 3.4</i>
Vehicle Identification Number.	
– <i>See Booklet 3.5</i>	
Vehicle specifications.	
– <i>See Booklet 3.5</i>	
Ventilation	91, 96, 101

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

W

Warning / Indicator lights		Washer fluid	24
– Airbag system	17	 See also Booklet 3.4	
– Alternator / Generator	21	Washer system	52
– Anti-Lock brake system	19	Window (rear), – Wiper blade	56
– Brake	20	Window / Windshield	
– Electronic power control	18	– Pinch protection	41
– Electronic Stability Program	18	– Rear defogger	49
– Front brake pads worn	24	– Wiper blades	55
– Generator	21	Windows	41
– High beam	18	– Defogging	94
– Safety belts	21	– Defrosting	94, 101
– Turn signals	51	– Ignition off	44
– Washer fluid	24	– Ignition on	44
Warning and indicator lights	6	– Pinch protection	43
Warning lights	6, 16	Windshield wiper	52
Warning/indicator light		Windshield wiper blades	
– Air bag system	17	– Removing	55
– Anti-lock brake system	19	Wiper	52
– Anti-Slip Regulation	18	Wiper / Washer system	
– Door open	24	– Blades	55
– Electronic Stability Program	18	– Rain sensor	53
– Rear lid open	24	– Windshield	52
Warning/Indicator Lights		Wiper blades	55
– Engine Coolant Level	21	– Installing	55, 56
– Engine Coolant Temperature	21	Wiper/Washer system	52
– Glow Plugs	17	– Container capacity.	
Warning/indicator lights		 See Booklet 3.5	
– Air bag system	17	– Fluid.	See Booklet 3.4
– Alternator	21	– Wiper blades	55
– Brake	20	– Wiper speeds	52
– Engine oil pressure	23		
– Front brake pads	24		
– Fuel level	24		
– High beam	18		
– Turn signals	18		
– Washer fluid	24		

It has always been VOLKSWAGEN's policy to continuously improve its products. VOLKSWAGEN, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of VOLKSWAGEN AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice

© VOLKSWAGEN AG



Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable). Printed in Germany



SCAN

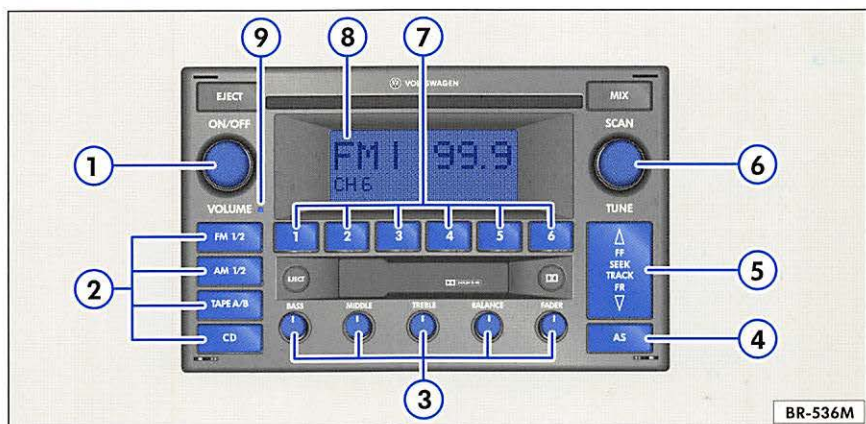
TUNE

△
FF
SEEK
TRACK
FR

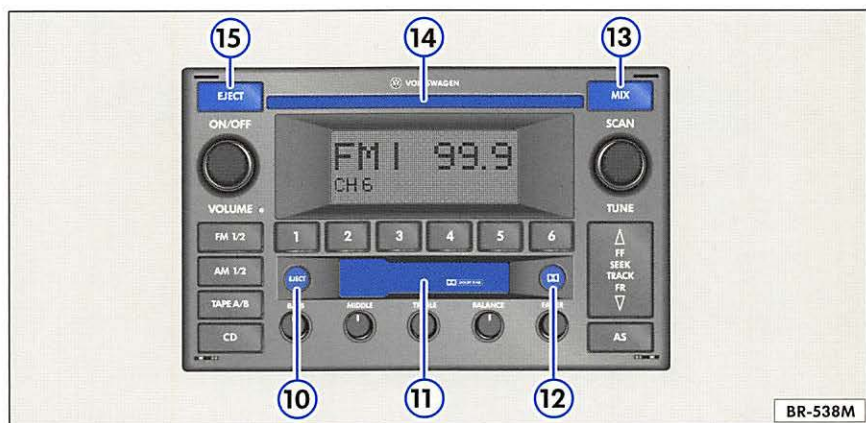
3.4 Sound System

Premium CD / Monsoon

Pos.	Page	Pos.	Page
Radio			
1 – ON / OFF	5	Balance control (BALANCE)	
Tap briefly to turn the unit ON/OFF. Note: The mode that was in use before the unit was last turned off – radio, cassette or CD – will automatically come back on again when you turn on the unit (Last Station Memory)		Turn the knob to adjust the balance.	
If you turn on the unit and there is no sound and the word "SAFE" appears in the display, then you must enter you own personal anti-theft code. See page 19 for instructions.		Fader control (FADER)	
		Turn the knob to adjust the fader.	
Volume control	5	4 – AS button	7
Turn the knob to adjust the volume.		The AS button can be used to store 6 stations automatically.	
2 – Band buttons	6	5 – SEEK button	7
FM 1/2 button		Use this rocker button to automatically seek the next higher or lower frequency (radio station).	
Use this button to select the FM band or to switch to the second set of presets.		6 – Manual tuning (TUNE)	8
AM 1/2 button		Turn the knob to manually tune your radio. Set the desired frequency by turning.	
Use this button to select the AM band or to switch to the second set of presets.		SCAN function	8
3 – Tone buttons	6	Stations or tracks (when listening to a CD or a cassette) can be played briefly. Press the knob to start the scan function.	
Bass control (BASS)		7 – Station preset buttons	8
Turn the knob to adjust the bass as desired.		You can preset one radio station on each of the six buttons in each of the four bands AM1, AM2, FM1 and FM2.	
Middle control (MIDDLE)		8 – Display	
Turn the knob to adjust the middle frequencies as desired.		Radio	9
Treble control (TREBLE)		Cassette player	10
Turn the knob to adjust the treble as desired.		CD player	15
		9 – LED	9
		Blinks when you remove ignition key.	



Cassette and CD mode



Please detach the "Radio Card" and keep it in a safe place away from your vehicle. If you lose the Radio Card containing the code number, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Contents

	next pages
Overview	
Important information	4
How the radio works	5
Cassette Mode	10
CD Mode	13
CD Changer *	16
Anti-Theft Coding	19
Warranty, Replacement, Antenna Care	21
Technical Description	22

The "Radio Card" must be detached and kept in a safe place – under no circumstances in the vehicle. Should the "Radio Card" with the code number be lost, please contact a Volkswagen dealer.

Radio Card Premium CD / Monsoon



Serial Number

VWZ5Z7D3052872

Code Number

1008

Place the self-adhesive labels for the serial number and code number in the appropriate boxes.

Pos.	Page	Pos.	Page
Cassette player		CD player	
TAPE A/B button		CD button	
Tap the TAPE A/B button (2) when you want to listen to a cassette. Press the button while cassette tape is playing to change to the other side of the cassette.		Tap the CD button (2) when you want to listen to a CD.	
Rewind/Fast Forward (FR-FF)		TRACK	
Press the rocker switch (5)		You can "skip" through the tracks on a CD by briefly pressing the rocker switch (5) .	
Upper side: The tape will fast forward.		Upper side: skips upwards	
Lower side: The tape will rewind.		Lower side: skips downwards	
SEEK		CD selection*	
The Music Seek System automatically finds and plays the next title.		You can select an individual CD in the CD changer* magazine by briefly pressing the corresponding buttons (7) .	
To select the desired seek direction, press and hold the rocker button (5) for more than 2 seconds either the upper or lower side to start the seek function.		13 -Mix Mode button 13	
10 -Cassette EJECT button 10		14 -CD-Slot	
Briefly pressed: stops the actual operating mode		Insert the CD with the printed side facing up!	
Pressed longer: Cassette eject		15 -CD EJECT button 13	
11 -Cassette bay 10		Briefly pressed: stops the actual operating mode	
12 -Dolby® button 10			
Press this button when playing cassettes recorded with Dolby® noise reduction.			

Important information

Operating the Sound System while driving

Driving on today's roads demands the full attention of the driver.

The wide range of sophisticated equipment details of modern car radios offer not only a vast source of entertainment, but also important information regarding traffic updates, road conditions, weather reports, etc.

But remember, you should only operate the radio system with its numerous features when the traffic situation really allows.

For example, changing cassettes or reading song titles on a cassette case when driving is often the cause of auto accidents.

You should also set the volume of your radio system so that you can hear signals from other drivers at any time.

Always give your full attention to your driving and traffic conditions.

Important! Please note that items marked with an asterisk (*) may be standard on certain models, optional on others or not available on your model. Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer to see if the feature or item applies to your model.

Anti-theft coding

The anti-theft coding will electronically prevent unauthorized persons from operating the unit if it has been removed from the vehicle.

If "SAFE" appears in the display after switching the radio on, it can then only be operated again after entering the **correct code** – see page 19.

The radio code number and the radio serial number can be found on the "Radio Card" next to the table of contents at the beginning of this instruction booklet.

It is very important that you detach this "Radio Card" and keep it in a safe place - never keep it in the vehicle. Only then is the radio useless to thieves!

CD changer*

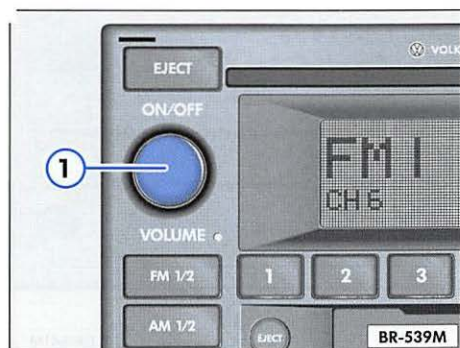
This car radio also has the attractive option of controlling the Genuine Volkswagen CD changer*.

The CD changer is installed in the luggage compartment. It's "remote controlled" by the radio unit. The magazine allows you to load up to 6 CDs in the CD changer. See page KEIN MERKER for further information.

Volkswagen dealers have all the information concerning installing the CD changer.

* Available as a factory installed option, or your authorized Volkswagen dealer can install the optional CD changer for you. Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer if this option is available for your model.

Radio



1 - ON/OFF

Press the button to turn the unit ON / OFF.

Whatever was playing when the unit was last turned off – radio, cassette or CD – will automatically come back on when the unit is turned on again.

The following settings are also saved when you turn off the system:

- Radio: the frequency setting
- Cassette: the selected cassette track
- CD player: the recently played track

The unit turn off automatically when you remove the key from the ignition lock.

The radio can be turned on while the ignition key is removed by simply pressing button 1. The unit will turn off again automatically after about 1 hour. This procedure can be repeated as often as desired.

If the radio does not emit any sound when it is switched on and "SAFE" is displayed, then the unit has been electronically locked up. See page 19 for instructions.

Volume control

Turn the knob to adjust the volume.

Setting the turn-on volume level and Speed Volume Control (SVC)

Turn-on volume level

The volume setting when the unit is turned on is the same as it was when the unit was turned off. You can program the unit for your own personal turn- **hold** the Dolby® button (12, see page 10) on volume level:

- **Press and** for longer than **3 seconds**.

You'll hear a signal tone, and **"SET UP VOL ON LIMIT"** will appear in the display.

The volume level is represented by a numerical value in the display.

Turn the knob (6) to adjust the volume.

Speed Volume Control (SVC)

The Speed Volume Control (SVC) automatically adjusts the volume in accordance with road speed.

- Press the Dolby® button (12) again.

You'll hear a signal tone, and **"SET UP SPEED DEP VOL"** will appear in the display.

The volume level is represented by a numerical value in the display. "0" means that the function is turned off.

Turn the knob (6) to adjust the volume.

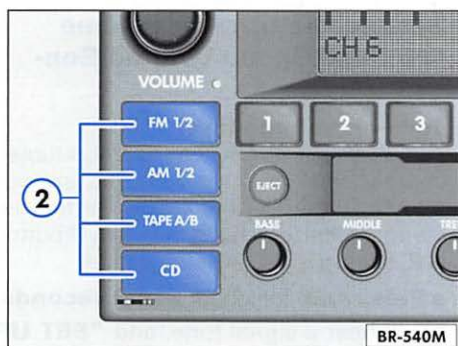
- Press the Dolby® button (12) again for longer than 3 seconds to confirm the settings you've just made.

You'll hear a signal tone. The unit is now in the normal operating mode and your changes are stored.

Notes

- If you do not confirm the setting you have just made, the unit will automatically return to the normal operation mode after about 30 seconds and your changes will not be stored.

- If the custom turn-on volume that you stored is louder than the turn-off volume level, the unit will use the turn-off volume the next time it's turned on.



2 – FM, AM, TAPE and CD buttons

FM1 / FM2 button

- Tap the FM button to select the FM band.
- Tap the button again to toggle between FM1 and FM2.

FM1 or FM2 appears in the display.

AM1 /AM2 button

- Tap the AM button to select the AM band.
- Tap the button again to toggle between AM1 and AM2.

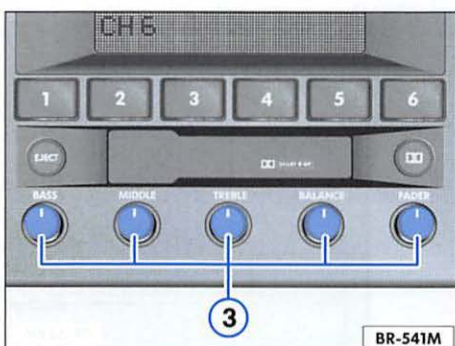
AM1 or AM2 appears in the display.

TAPE A/B button

Tap the TAPE A/B button if you want play a cassette. See page 10 for more details.

CD button

Tap the CD button to select the CD mode. See page 13 for more details.



3 – Tone settings

BASS

- Use the rotary knob to raise or lower the bass.

Midrange control (MIDDLE)

- Use the rotary knob to set the desired midrange tones.

Treble control (TREBLE)

- Use the rotary knob to raise or lower the treble.

Balance control (BAL)

- Use the rotary knob to set the desired balance between the left and right speakers.

Fader control (FADER)

- Use the rotary knob to set the desired balance between the front and rear speakers.



4 – Autostore (AS) button

Using the Autostore feature, you can store the 6 best quality stations on the AM or FM wavelengths. The strongest will be memorized, in order of frequency.

Storing 6 radio stations

- Select AM or FM.
- Press the AS button for approximately 2 seconds. "**STORE AM 1 TO 6**" or "**STORE FM 1 TO 6**" appears in the display. The 6 stations with the strongest signals on the chosen wavelength are automatically stored.

5 – SEEK

Tap the SEEK button to seek the next higher or lower frequency (radio station) automatically.

- Press "▲" to start the SEEK operation to the next higher frequency (radio station).
- Press "▼" to start the SEEK operation to the next lower frequency (radio station).

Once a station has been found, the Auto SEEK stops. Tap the button again to continue Auto SEEK.

Manual SEEK

Pressing and holding "▲" or "▼" allows you to tune to a desired frequency. Simply release "▲" or "▼" just before you reach the desired frequency. The SEEK function will then stop at the next station that offers acceptable reception.



6 – Manual tuning (TUNING)

Use this button to manually tune your radio. Set the desired frequency by turning clockwise to tune upwards or counter-clockwise to tune downwards.

Automatic tuning (SCAN)

"SCAN" will appear in the display when you press this button. The radio immediately begins to scan upwards to the next higher frequency. When the SCAN feature finds a radio frequency, it will stop for approximately 5 seconds, and then continue to the next radio frequency. If you press the button during the 5 second "hold" period, the SCAN feature will stop there.



7 – Station preset buttons

You can preset one radio station on each of the six buttons in each of the four bands **AM1**, **AM2**, **FM1** and **FM2**.

- Select the desired band / preset group (see **2**).

- Tune to the desired radio station (see **5** or **6**).

- Hold down the station button until you hear an audible signal. The sound will first be muted and then return. Your radio station is now preset on this button.

To listen to the station you just stored, press this button briefly.

Note

When selecting stations, only press the button briefly. If you hold it down for some time, the currently displayed frequency will be stored on this button.



8 – What you see in the display when listening to the radio

– Bands

Display: "AM1 . . AM2" or "FM1 . . FM2".

Refer to page 6 (2) for further details.

– Station preset buttons

Display: "CH 1 . . . 6".

Refer to page 8 (7) for further details.

– Frequency display

Display: FM Band "103.1" MHz,
AM Band "980" KHz.



9 – LED

When the unit is turned off and the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock, the LED blinks to let you know the anti-theft coding is on.

Cassette player



TAPE A / TAPE B button

● Tap the TAPE button to start playing a cassette you already have in the cassette bay.

Note

If you don't have a cassette in the cassette bay and you press the TAPE A/B button, you'll hear an audible signal, and "NO TAPE" will appear in the display.

As soon as you insert a cassette in the cassette bay **11**, the unit automatically will start to play the cassette regardless whether the radio is on or if you are listening to a CD.

Selecting a tape side

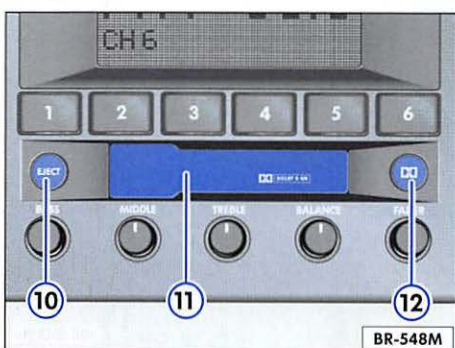
● Briefly press this button while the tape is playing. The unit will switch to the other cassette track.

The tape direction will be displayed:

"TAPE A" = forward direction

"TAPE B" = reverse direction.

At the end of the tape, the unit automatically changes to the other track (auto reverse).



10 -EJECT button

● Press the EJECT button to eject the cassette tape out of the cassette bay.

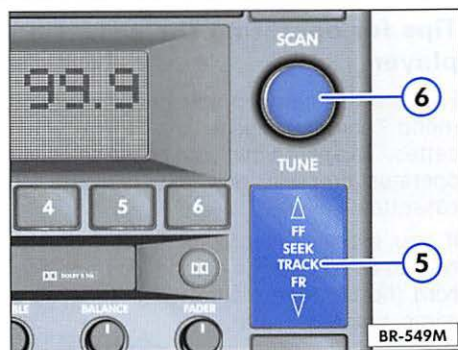
11 -Cassette bay

Insert the cassette all the way into the cassette bay **11** with the tape side facing to the right.

12 -Dolby® Noise Reduction

Press the Dolby button if you are playing a tape which uses Dolby® Noise Reduction. The Dolby® symbol will appear in the display.

® The Dolby Noise Reduction System is manufactured under license from Dolby Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.



Rewind / Fast Forward (FR-FF)

Briefly press the FR-FF rocker switch (5). The tape will begin to fast forward or rewind.

The display will indicate the direction:

"TAPE FR" – Rewind

"TAPE FF" – Fast forward

Press the button again to stop rewind or fast forward at any time.

Music Seek System (SEEK)

The Music Seek System automatically finds and plays the next title.

To select the desired seek direction, **press and hold** either "▲" or "▼" of the rocker switch (5) for longer than 2 seconds.

The seek direction is displayed as:

"MSS FOR" – forward

"MSS REV" – reverse.

To stop the Music Seek, press the button again.

Note

The pauses between music titles must be at least 3 seconds long for the Music Seek System to function properly.

SCAN

When you briefly press the SCAN button (6) "SCAN" will appear in the display. Scanning will begin, and the introduction of the next track will start to play. After about 10 seconds, scanning will move onto the next track. Pressing the SCAN button during the 10 second period stops the scanning.

What you see in the display when listening to a cassette

- "DOLBY B NR ON"

Appears when Dolby® Noise Reduction is selected.

- "METAL"

Appears when metal cassettes are played.

- "TAPE A" or "TAPE B"

Shows you which side of the tape is currently being played.

See page 10 for further details.

® The Dolby Noise Reduction System is manufactured under license from Dolby Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Tips for operating the cassette player

For optimal sound reproduction, we recommend "chrome dioxide" or "metal" cassettes. To ensure that your cassette player operates properly, only use name-brand cassettes.

If you experience problems with pre-recorded cassettes, it's a good idea to re-record the contents of the cassette onto a name-brand cassette.

To avoid problems caused by the cassettes themselves, only use cassettes having a maximum recording time of 90 minutes (C-90 cassettes). C-60 cassettes are especially well suited.

Do not place any adhesive labels or stickers on the cassette housing. Heat can make them come loose while you're playing a tape, and this could cause the unit to malfunction!

Never leave cassettes in the car when the temperatures are very low (below 15 ° F / -10° C) or very high (above 122° F / +50° C). Remember, the temperature inside your car can be much higher than the outside temperature.

Also, avoid exposing cassettes to direct sunlight. The best idea is to store cassettes in their original cases.

If the sound of the cassette has a muffled quality after the unit has been used for a relatively long period (about 100 hours, depending on what kind of tape material is being played), the tape head may be dirty. Clean it using a wet-type head-cleaning cassette. Use only name-brand cleaning cassettes and follow the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

CD player



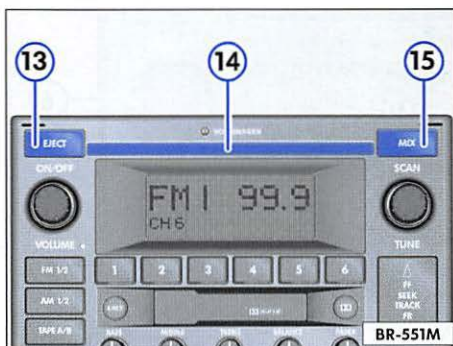
The CD player / CD changer* is operated easily and conveniently using the controls on the radio.

CD button

Press the CD button when you want to listen to a CD.

Note

If no disc is loaded in the CD player or the magazine is not loaded in the CD changer you'll hear an audible signal, and "**NO DISC**" or "**NO MAGAZINE**" will appear in the display.



13 -Mix Mode button

Pressing the MIX button in the CD mode causes the tracks in the selected CD to be played **in random order**.

"**MIX**" appears in the display.

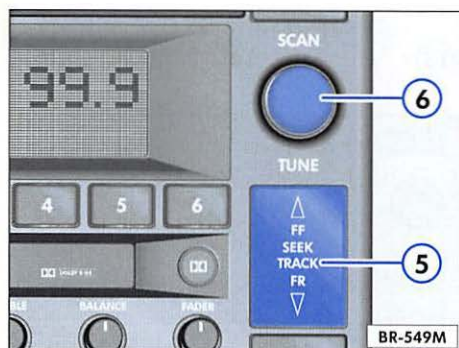
Press the MIX button again to stop the random play operation.

14 -CD slot

Insert the CD with the printed side facing up!

15 -CD Eject button

Press the CD Eject button to eject the CD.



SCAN

Briefly press the SCAN button (6) to start automatic scanning to the next track.

After 10 seconds, scanning will resume and go to the next track.

"SCAN" appears in the display.

To stop scanning, press the SCAN button briefly during the 10 second "hold" time.

Track selection button

You can "skip" through the tracks on a CD in two different ways:

- By briefly pressing the TRACK button (5).
"▲" skips upwards.
"▼" skips downwards.

Tap on the rocker switch repeatedly to select individual tracks.

- Page to the desired track by **turning** the knob (6). Clockwise to page upwards or counter clockwise to page downwards.

The currently selected track appears in the display:

"TR01 . . . TR02 . . . TR03 . . ." etc.

Note

Briefly pressing the "▼" button while a track is playing will cause the unit to "jump" back to the beginning of the track and resume playing from there.



Selecting an individual CD*

CD changer

Each individual CD in the magazine can be selected by briefly pressing the selection buttons **7**.

The currently selected CD will appear in the display – "**CD1**" ... "**CD6**".

Note

- If no CD is in a magazine tray, you'll hear an audible signal and "**NO CD**" will appear in the display.
- If no magazine is loaded in the CD changer, you'll hear an audible signal and "**NO MAGAZINE**" will appear in the display.

What you see in the display when listening to a CD

– CD changer magazine tray

Display: "**CD1** ... **CD6**", or "**NO CD**", if no CD is present in a tray.

Refer to page 15 for further information.

– Which CD track is currently being played

Display: "**TR01** ... **TR02** ... **TR03** ..." etc.

Refer to page 14 for further details.

– "MIX" (random play)

Refer to page 13 for further details.

Error displays when using the CD player

The following error messages can be displayed:

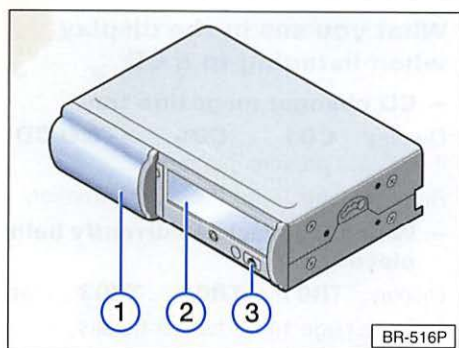
- "**NO CHANGER**" = CD changer not connected
- "**NO DISC**" = No disc in the player.
- "**NO MAGAZINE**" = No magazine in the changer
- "**CD ERR**" = The CD is dirty, scratched or inserted upside down. The next CD is automatically selected.
- "**ERROR**" = The CD changer mechanism is malfunctioning.

● In this case, press the eject button – see page 16.

● Re-insert the magazine in the changer.

If the unit still malfunctions, contact your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for assistance.

CD changer*



The CD changer and magazine are located in the luggage compartment.

16 –Sliding door for closing the CD bay

17 –CD magazine bay

18 –Magazine eject button

CD magazine

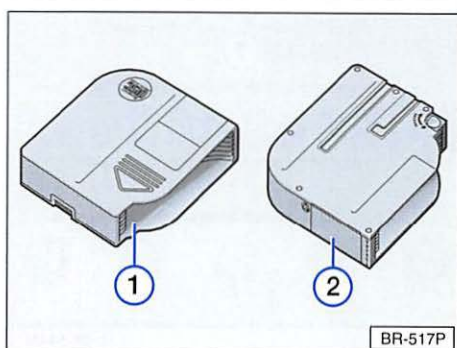
1 – Top

2 – Bottom

Note

● Use CD magazines sold as Genuine Volkswagen accessories* only.

● If there is no magazine in the CD changer, you'll hear an audible signal, and **"NO MAGAZINE"** will appear in the display.



Removing the magazine

- Slide the magazine bay cover open.
- Press the eject button. The magazine will automatically eject.
- Remove the magazine.

Inserting the magazine

- Insert the magazine with the marking "disk" facing upward all the way.

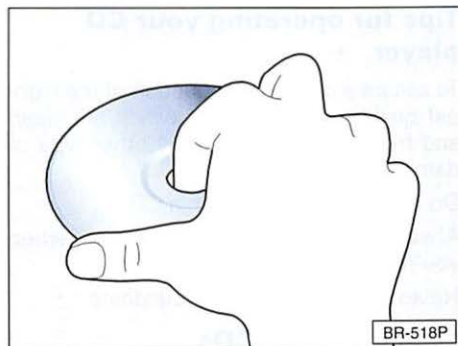
Be certain that the arrow located on the top of the magazine points **toward** the bay.

After you've inserted the magazine, you'll hear a noise indicating that the CD changer is working. The unit is analyzing how many CDs are in the magazine.

- Slide the bay cover close.

Note

Always close the bay cover after you've inserted the magazine to keep dust and dirt from getting into the CD changer.



Loading CDs into the magazine

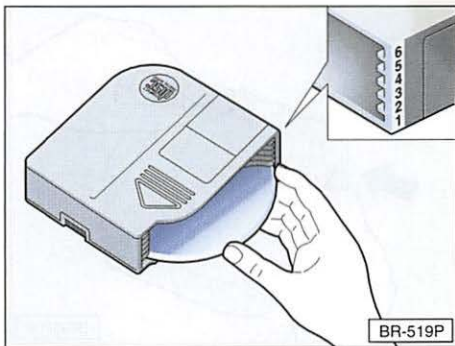
- Hold the CD by the center hold and the outer edge with the printed side facing up.

Note

The magazine holds six standard size CDs. **Do not use any 8 cm CDs (singles)!**

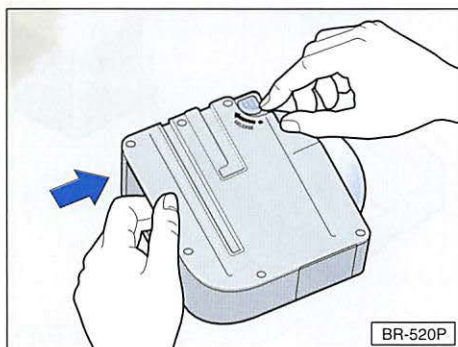
To avoid changer malfunctions, **never use a CD protective film or stabilizer** (commercially available as CD accessories).

If there are no CDs loaded in a given magazine tray, you'll hear an audible signal if you select this tray. **"NO CD"** will appear in the display.



- Hold the magazine with "disk" facing up.
- Individually insert the CDs in the magazine **with their printed sides facing up**. Be sure to align them carefully when you insert them. You'll hear a clicking noise when each CD is properly engaged.

Note the order of the CDs on the right side of the magazine.



Removing CDs

- Turn the magazine over and hold it with the CD release lever facing up.
- Rotate the release lever against the spring force.
- Gently press the CDs through the opening in the back side of the magazine.

Take care not to let the CDs drop!

- Remove the CDs from the magazine.

Tips for operating your CD player

To assure a sound reproduction of the highest quality, use only CDs which are clean and free of scratches or any other type of damage.

Do not stick any labels on a CD.

Always store CDs in their cases when you're not listening to them.

Never leave CDs in direct sunshine.

Cleaning your CDs

For routine cleaning, wipe the playing surface with a clean, soft, lint-free cloth from the center of the disc to the outer edge. If the surface is heavily soiled, dampen a clean soft cloth in a solution of mild neutral commercial detergent before cleaning the disc.

Never use fluids such as benzene, paint thinner or record cleaners, otherwise you may damage the CD surface!

Preventative measures for laser units.

Laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 – 4.

Your VOLKSWAGEN CD changer conforms to safety class 1.

The laser used in Class 1 is so low and so well shielded, that no danger exists with proper usage.

Never remove the cover from the unit. The unit does not contain any parts that can be serviced by the user.

Anti-theft coding

When the unit is turned off and the ignition key is removed from the ignition switch, the flashing LED (9), indicates that the radio is equipped with an anti-theft coding system. See the Radio Card for the code.

If the unit is removed from the vehicle, this anti-theft coding electronically prevents the unit from being re-used by unauthorized persons.

The electronic lock-up is operational if:

- the radio is disconnected from the vehicle electrical system
- the battery is disconnected
- the radio fuse burns out.

If this happens, the **correct** code must be entered before the unit can be operated again.

The code number and serial number are provided on labels which are affixed to the "Radio Card" located in the front of this booklet.

Canceling the electronic lock

Perform the steps in exactly the following order:

- Turn on the radio. "SAFE" will appear in the display.
- After 3 seconds, the number **1000** will appear in the display.
- Use the radio station preset buttons 1 to 4 to enter the code number found on your Radio Card. Use preset button 1 to enter the first digit in the code number. Use button 2 to enter the second digit, etc. The value range for each of the 4 digits is "0 ... 9". The digit will increase by 1 each time you tap the preset button. The number returns to "0" after "9".
- After you finish entering the code, press either the upper side ("▲") of the SEEK button (5) or the SCAN button (6) for longer than 2 seconds until you hear an audible signal.
- If you've entered the code number correctly, "LSM" will appear in the display.

The unit is now ready to use again!

Wrong code number

If you've accidentally entered a wrong code number, "**SAFE**" will appear in the display. Initially it'll flash, then stay on.

You can repeat the procedure again **one time**. The number of attempts will appear in the display.

If the wrong code number is entered again, the unit will be disabled for about 1 hour.

Leave the unit ON and the key in the ignition switch for this hour. After the hour has elapsed, the number of attempts will stop being displayed and you can cancel the electronic lock once again.

Remember, the cycle is....

- 2 attempts
- one hour locked.

Note

If you lose your Radio Card, contact your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Warranty, Antenna Care

Warranty

Our radio systems are covered by the warranty conditions that apply to new cars.

If a warranty claim is made during the warranty period, the unit will be repaired free-of-charge by any authorized Volkswagen dealer – provided that the damage was not caused by improper treatment or attempts to repair it by non-qualified persons, and that the unit has not suffered any external damage.

Care of antenna

The antenna is designed to achieve optimal performance with the radio and is located at a position where reception is good and susceptibility to interference is low.

Vehicles equipped with antennas embedded in the windshield or backlights offer the further advantages of being completely protected from damage and wear.

Care: A dirty telescoping antenna is difficult to retract and can be bent during retraction. When you wash your vehicle, dry off the antenna and clean it occasionally using chrome polish. This also applies to bleack-chromated antennas.

Power antennas also need to be washed and cleaned with chrome polish on a regular basis to keep the functioning properly.

If the power antenna does not retract or extend properly, the telescopic sections must be cleaned. Never forcibly push in or pull out the antenna by hand.

No antenna care is required for vehicles equipped with roof mounted antennas.

Technical Description

Anti-theft protection

The unit is electronically locked whenever the power source is interrupted. It can only be returned to working condition by entering the correct code number.

Frequency ranges

FM and AM

Band selection

Momentary-contact buttons

Displays

Frequency, band, bass, balance, treble, preset button, cassette functions, Dolby® symbol, CD functions, coding

Illumination

The controls and display are illuminated glare-free from the interior (night driving design) – maximum brightness when driving lights are on. When the driving lights are off, the intensity is controlled together with the instrument panel intensity.

Station selection

In the radio mode, the unit automatically plays the last station selected when the unit was turned off (last station memory).

Radio

Automatic and manual tuning. Six station preset buttons each for FM1, FM2, AM1 and AM2. Manual tuning is possible in both directions. Microprocessor-controlled stabilization of station frequencies (PLL quartz tuning).

Cassette player

Low-wear, high performance tape head, latching buttons for fast forward and reverse, auto-reverse, Music Search System (MSS), Dolby® Noise Reduction, automatic detection of metal cassettes.

CD changer*

Remote controlled via radio sound system unit. Changer magazine for 6 CD's with motor-driven ejection, 6 CD selection buttons. Mix mode, automatic track scan / seek.

Sound reproduction

Stereo (radio, cassette, CD), adjustable treble / bass controls, fader control integrated in the radio, multiple speaker system

Max. power output

4 x 20 Watt (high)
2 x 20 Watt (low)
2 x 30 Watt (sub-woofer)

Options

Electronic antenna, CD changer. Additional information on these options is available from authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers.

Interference suppression

The automatic interference suppression circuitry integrated in the unit eliminates most outside interference in the FM band.

Specially tuned interference suppressors eliminate nearly all interference pulses from the engine and other parts of the electrical system such as the heater blower, windshield wipers and radiator fan.

® The Dolby Noise Reduction System is manufactured under license from Dolby Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

A

Adjusting

- Balance between left and right speakers 6
- Bass 6
- Fader 6
- Midrange 6
- Speed volume control 5
- Treble 6
- Volume 5

AM button 6

Antenna, - How to take care of .. 21

Anti-Theft protection 22

Anti-theft alarm system, - How do I know if my radio is electronically locked up? 19

Anti-theft coding 4, 19

- Blinking LED 9
- Canceling the electronic lock-up . 19

- What do I do if I enter an incorrect code number? 19

- When does the Sound System lock up electronically? 19

AS (Autostore) 7

Automatic seek 7

Automatic tuning 8

Autostore (AS) 7

B

Balance control 6

Bands received 22

BASS 6

Broadcasting mode 5

Button

- AM 6
- AS (Autostore) 7
- Balance 6

- Bass 6
- CD 6, 13
- CD Eject 13
- Dolby Noise Reduction 10
- EJECT 10
- Fader 6
- FM 6
- Manual tuning 8
- Midrange 6
- Mix Mode 13
- ON/OFF 5
- Radio station preset 8
- SCAN 11
- SEEK 11
- TAPE 6
- TAPE A / TAPE B 10
- Tone settings 6
- Track selection (when playing a CD) 14
- Treble 6

C

Cassette housing 12

Cassette player 10

- Cassette bay 10
- Changing cassette tracks 10
- Ejecting a cassette 10
- Fast forward 11
- Fast forward to the next track 11
- Fast reverse 11
- Fast rewind to the previous track 11

- How can I tell which side of my cassette tape is being played? . 10

- How do I switch from one side of a tape to the other? 10

- SCAN function 11

- Tape A / Tape B button 10

– Tips for operating	12
– Tips for taking care of your cassettes	12
– What you see in the display	12
Cassettes, – Taking care of your cassettes	12
CD button	6
CD Changer, – Installed in the luggage compartment	4
CD changer	4, 16
CD magazine	16
– How many CDs can I load in the CD magazine?	17
– Inserting into the CD changer	16
– Loading with CDs	17
– Removing CDs from the magazine	18
– Removing from the CD changer	16
CD player	13
– Automatic scan to the next track (SCAN)	14
– Automatic track scanning	14
– CD button	13
– CD ERR – What does it mean when CD ERR appears in the display?	15
– Cleaning your CDs	18
– Display	15
– Ejecting a CD	13
– ERROR – What does it mean when ERROR appears in the display?	15
– Fast forward to next track	14
– Fast reverse to previous track	14
– How to load CDs into the magazine	17
– How to remove a CD from the CD magazine	18
– How to select an individual CD in the magazine	15

– Inserting the CD magazine into the CD changer	16
– Loading CDs	13, 17
– Malfunction display	15
– NO CHANGER – What does it mean when NO CHANGER appears in the display?	15
– NO DISC – What does it mean when NO DISC appears in the display?	13, 15
– NO MAGAZINE – What does it mean when NO MAGAZINE appears in the display?	13
– Random play	13
– Removing the CD magazine from the CD changer	16
– SCAN (automatic track selection)	14
– Selecting a CD	15
– Selecting a CD track	14
– Skipping backward to the previous CD track	14
– Skipping forward to the next CD track	14
– Tips when using	18
– Track selection button	14
– What is the correct way to insert a CD into the slot?	13

CDs

– Cleaning	18
– Take care of your CDs	18
Chrome dioxide tapes	12
Code number	19

D

Digital displays	15
Displays	15, 22
– Radio modes	9
Dolby Noise Reduction	10

E

EJECT	10
Electronic lock	19
ERROR	15

F

Fader control	6
Fast forward	11
FM button	6

I

Identification number	19
Ignition lock	5
Illumination	22
Interference suppression	22
Intro scan (SCAN)	11

K

Key	5
-----------	---

L

LED – What does it mean when the LED is blinking?	9
LSM, – What does it mean when LSM appears in the display?	19

M

Manual SEEK	7
Manual tuning	8
Maximum power output	22
Midrange control	6

MIX, – What does it mean with MIX appears in the display when I am playing a CD?	13
Mix mode	13
MSS – Music Seek System	11
MSS FOR	11
MSS REV	11

N

NO CHANGER	15
NO DISC	13, 15
NO MAGAZINE	13
NO TAPE	10
NO TAPE – What does it mean when NO TAPE appears in the display? ..	10

O

ON / OFF	5
----------------	---

P

Power antennas	21
Preset buttons	8

R

Radio Card	4, 19
Radio card	19
– Where should I keep my Radio Card?	4
Radio code number	4
Radio mode	5
Radio station preset buttons, – How can I store a radio station?	8
Rewind	11
Roof mounted antennas	21

S

SAFE – What does it mean when "SAFE" appears in the display? . . .	4
SEEK	
– Automatic	7
– Manual	7
Serial number	19
SET UP SPEED DEP VOL	5
SET UP VOL ON LIMIT	5
Setting	
– AM radio stations	6
– Balance	6
– Bass	6
– Fader	6
– FM radio stations	6
– Midrange	6
Sound reproduction	22
Speed dependant volume	5
Speed Volume Control (SVC)	5
Station buttons	8
Station selection	22
SVC (Speed Volume Control)	5

T

TAPE A	10
TAPE B	10
TAPE button	6
TAPE FF	11
TAPE FR	11
Technical description	22
– Cassette player	22
– CD changer	22
– Radio	22
Telescopic antenna	21
Tone settings	
– BAL	6
– Bass	6

– FADER	6
– Midrange (MIDDLE)	6
– TREBLE	6
TR01, TR02, TR03, etc.	14
TREBLE	6
Tuning	
– Automatic (SCAN feature)	8
– Manual	8
Turn-on volume level	5

V

Volume control	5
--------------------------	---

W

Warranty	21
--------------------	----

It has always been Volkswagen' policy to continuously improve its products. Volkswagen, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products, without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on knowledge and information available at the time of printing.

Technical specifications are subject to change without notice.

All rights reserved. No part of this manual may be reproduced, copied, or translated without the express written permission of Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG expressly retains all rights provided by copyright laws. Subject to alteration.

This paper is produced from non-chlorine-bleached pulp.

© 2001 VOLKSWAGEN AG
Printed in Germany



3.4 2004 Jetta Wagon

*Tips and Advice
- operating your vehicle
the right way*

Please read this important information before reading your booklet.

Vehicle Equipment

This manual describes all the equipment intended to be offered at the time of printing. Some of the equipment may be available at a later date or not at all.

 Please note that items marked with an asterisk may be standard on certain models, optional on others or not available on your model.

Notes about Environment

 *Texts identified by this symbol and written in italics are important notes regarding the environment and how you can help protect it.*

Illustrations

Each illustration in the manual shows a feature and / or equipment which your vehicle may or may not have, depending on the model. The illustrations are simply to show you how a feature looks and its function.

Alphabetical Index

At the back of this book, you will find an extensive Alphabetical Index. This will help you to find information quickly by using key words.

Table of Contents

On the following page, you will find the Table of Contents which describes all the features of your vehicle in the order they appear in this manual.

Indication of directions

Whenever a direction is specified (for example: left, right, forward, backward, etc.), you should imagine yourself as sitting in the vehicle facing in the driving direction. If something is explained which is different from this position, it will be clearly identified.

WARNINGS



WARNINGS

concern safety and are highlighted like this throughout this manual.

Texts printed in bold type refer to possible damage to your vehicle, or to other important information.



If one of the Warning and indicator lights marked with a STOP-sign comes on while you are driving, move a safe distance off the road, turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Go to listed page in your booklet for explanations.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

FILLING YOUR TANK

Fuel tank	2
Fuel supply	4

OPTIMAL TECHNOLOGY

Braking	7
Electronic Stability Program (ESP)	10
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)	11
Electronic differential lock (EDL) ..	12

DRIVING AND PROTECTING OUR ENVIRONMENT

The first 1,000 miles (1 500 km) – and afterwards	13
Operate your vehicle safely	14
Difficult operating conditions	15
Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution	16
Warranty coverages	20
Trailer towing	20

CARE AND CLEANING

Cleaning and protection	25
Care of exterior	26
Care of interior	31
Maintenance	36

CHECKING AND FILLING

Engine hood	39
Engine compartment	40
Engine oil	42

Engine cooling system	48
Brake fluid	51
Battery	53
Windshield washer container	59

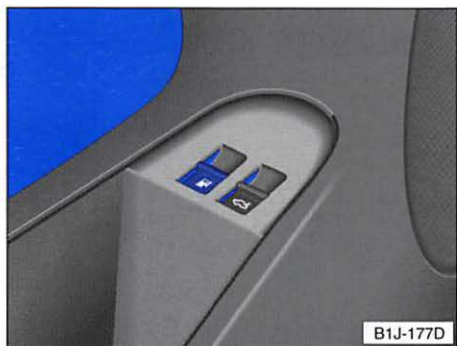
KEEPING YOUR VEHICLE IN GOOD WORKING CONDITION

Additional accessories, Modifications and Parts replacement	60
Installing / replacing a radio	61
Mobile telephones and CB radios .	61

WHAT DO I DO NOW?

Warning triangle	62
Service kit	62
Jack and tool kit, spare wheel	63
Tires / Wheels	69
Changing a wheel	80
Anti-theft wheel bolts	86
Fuses	87
Replacing bulbs	88
Emergency starting	89
Emergency towing with commercial tow truck	92
Lifting vehicle	94
Reporting safety defects	96
Outside the U.S.A. or Canada	97
VOLKSWAGEN Service Information	97

Fuel tank



B1J-177D

Fuel filler flap release...

The switch for the fuel filler flap release is located in the driver's door panel.

Pull the switch to unlock the fuel filler flap. The switch works also with the ignition switched off.

The fuel filler neck is on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap (right illustration). The fuel filler neck is accessible after you have opened the filler flap. When refueling, hang the fuel filler cap on the fuel filler flap as shown in right illustration.

The capacity of the tank is approximately 14.5 US gallons (55 liters). Reserve is approx. 1.9 US gallons (7 liters) of total capacity.

Note

● **Don't drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. Gasoline could get in the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.**



B2J-161K

● **If any fuel has spilled onto the vehicle, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage to the paintwork.**



WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your vehicle. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the containers meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852-86).

Refueling the vehicle

Your vehicle fuel tank has an on-board refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle.

In order to fill your tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully:

- Turn off the ignition.
- Unscrew fuel filler cap and remove.
- Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.
- When filling your tank, select a medium refueling rate so that the nozzle switches off automatically when the tank is full.

 ***As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel, because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled – causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.***

- After filling your tank, twist the fuel filler cap clockwise until you hear a definite click.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel filler cap properly and completely.

Note

Running your engine while refuelling may cause vapors to escape or even fuel to spill out of the tank. This would then shut off the fuel nozzle before the tank is full.

Filling a portable fuel container in exceptional cases



WARNING

To reduce the risk of fire and personal injury when filling a fuel container for a lawn mower or snow blower, etc. please remember:

- **Never fill a portable fuel container leaving it still in the luggage compartment or on top of the car. Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.**

- **Always keep the fuel pump nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling to help prevent static electricity discharge and fire.**

- **Never spill fuel inside the luggage compartment or vehicle interior. Fuel vapors are highly flammable and can cause fire and serious burns.**

- **Always observe local and state (provincial) laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of such containers.**

- **Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852-86).**

Fuel supply

 **Use only unleaded fuel in your vehicle.**

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by pre-ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI (CLC) or RON (ROZ).

Gasolines most commonly used in the United States and Canada have the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

Premium Grade: 91 – 96 AKI

Regular Grade: 87 – 90 AKI

Fuel Recommendation

115 hp engine

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is unleaded regular grade gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI (CLC) or 91 RON (ROZ).

180 hp engine

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is unleaded premium grade gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (CLC) or 95 RON (ROZ).

Notes

● **Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.**

● Do not use leaded gasoline!

The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.

Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 or higher
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents

Note

Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must not contain more than 10% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Notes

- **Do not use fuels that fail to meet the criteria specified above.**
- **If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications above, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.**
- **Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.**

Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified above are not the responsibility of VOLKSWAGEN and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.

- **If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.**

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasolines are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasolines differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasolines contain properties that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine components, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, built-up carbon deposits can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the VOLKSWAGEN New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Diesel engine**Diesel fuel no. 2**

Service stations offering Diesel fuel are generally located on truck routes or major highways. Directories of Diesel fuel stations are usually sold at Diesel fuel stations.

Some states in the USA require permits to purchase Diesel fuel. Check with your State Motor Vehicle Department.

Diesel fuel may not be available outside the USA and Canada. Be sure to check before traveling to other countries.

Notes

● **Your Diesel engine has been specifically designed to operate on Diesel fuel only. Therefore, never use home heating oil or regular gasoline. The properties of these fuels may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system and to the engine. This could lead to additional expense and will also affect your warranty.**

● **If Diesel fuel should get on any portion of a rubber hose, it must be wiped off immediately. Then wash the contaminated hose portion with soap and warm water. Do not allow Diesel fuel to remain on connecting hoses for any length of time. They may develop leaks and cause serious damage.**

Winter operation

At temperatures below 20°F (-7°C), Diesel fuel no. 2 loses its fluidity due to wax separation, which may clog the fuel filter or tank strainer and keep the engine from running. To help in preventing such conditions, the fuel filter in your vehicle is automatically preheated. Preheating the fuel filter makes operation of your vehicle possible with Diesel fuel no. 2 down to -10°F (-24°C).

● If you expect temperatures below 5°F (-15°C) ask your fuel dealer whether their Diesel fuel no. 2 is sufficiently winterized for the prevailing temperatures.

**WARNING**

● **Do not use "starting assist fluids." They may be potentially explosive or cause a "run-away" engine condition. This could result in serious engine damage and personal injury.**

● **Do not use fuel line antifreeze offered for gasoline engines.**

If unwinterized or insufficiently winterized Diesel fuel has already thickened to the extent that the engine will not start, this can be rectified by leaving the vehicle standing for some time in a heated shelter.

It is normal that the engine noise level (dieseling) is louder during the warm-up period in winter. It is also normal that whitish-blue smoke may be emitted from the exhaust after starting and during warm-up. The amount of smoke depends on the outside temperature.

Do not let your Diesel engine idle unnecessarily after a cold start-up. Driving off slowly will shorten the warm-up period.

Always heed all WARNINGS on pages 37 and 40.

Braking

General notes

● The brakes on today's automobiles are still subject to wear depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits. On vehicles which are driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or which are driven hard, the brake linings should be checked by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer more often than specified in the **Maintenance booklet**. See **Booklet 1.1**.

WARNING

- If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed, otherwise the brake system could over-heat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.
- Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest VOLKSWAGEN dealer or qualified workshop.
- New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 100 to 150 miles (150 to 200 kilometres) of normal city driving. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed.

Conditions affecting braking efficiency

Moisture or road salt

WARNING

- Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Cautiously apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few cautious brake applications.
- Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few cautious brake applications.

Overheating the brakes

WARNING

- Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.
 - Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving position. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.
 - If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.
 - Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance.
- Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest VOLKSWAGEN dealer or qualified workshop.**

Brake booster

WARNING

- The brake booster works with vacuum pressure which is created only when the engine is running. Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.
- If the brake booster is not working, for example when towing your vehicle, or because the brake booster has somehow been damaged, the brake pedal must be pressed harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.

Functioning of Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)*

The ABS contributes effectively to vehicle control since it prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied. This means that the vehicle remains steerable and is less likely to skid.

Note

You don't have to "pump" the brake. Just hold the brake pedal down.

However, do not expect that the ABS shortens braking distance under all circumstances. When driving on gravel or on newly fallen snow on top of icy surfaces, braking distance may be even longer. Therefore, under these circumstances, it is especially important that you drive slowly and with great care.

Vehicle modifications (brake system or chassis modifications, for example, or a different wheel/tire combination) can affect the function of the ABS, EDS, ESP and ASR systems.

Please read the information on page 60 regarding modifications to your vehicle.

How the ABS system works

An automatic check is made when a speed of about 4 mph (6 km / h) is reached.

When this happens a pumping noise can be heard.

If an individual wheel begins to rotate too slowly in relation to vehicle speed and tends to lock, the ABS automatically reduces brake pressure to prevent that wheel from locking.

This automatic adjustment process will cause a slight vibration of the brake pedal and some noises to alert you that vehicle speed must be adapted to existing road and traffic conditions.

If ABS is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on. For more details see "Warning / Indicator lights"

See Booklet 3.1.



WARNING.

Although the ABS is very effective, always remember that braking capability is limited by tire traction.

Always adjust your driving speed according to the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the ABS tempt you into taking extra risks. The ABS cannot overcome the laws of physics.

Electronic Stability Program (ESP)*

Vehicles equipped with an Anti-Brake Locking System (ABS)* can also be equipped with ESP (Electronic Stability Program*) and ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation).

ESP – How it works

The ESP applies brake pressure to individual wheels in order to reduce the risk of vehicle spin-outs.

The system uses the position of the steering wheel and speed of the vehicle to determine the direction the driver wants the vehicle to travel, then continuously compares this direction with actual vehicle behavior. If there is a difference between the two – such as when the vehicle is starting to spin-out – the ESP automatically brakes one of the wheels to correct the situation.

The forces generated by braking this wheel restore the vehicle to a stable condition. When the vehicle is oversteering (rear wheels tend to slide out of the curve), the brakes are mainly applied to the front wheel that is on the outside of the curve. When the vehicle is understeering (front wheels tend to slide out of the curve), the brakes are mainly applied to the inside rear wheel.

WARNING

Remember that the ESP is still subject to the laws of physics, and there are limits to what it can do. This is especially the case on wet and slippery roads and when you are pulling a trailer.

Do not allow the extra safety of the ESP system to tempt you into taking risks. Always adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions.

ASR – How it works

On vehicles with front-wheel drive, ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) prevents the front wheels from spinning when the vehicle is accelerated by reducing the engine power directed to these wheels. The system operates in conjunction with the ABS across the entire speed range. If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ASR is also inactive.

Even under poor road conditions, the Anti-Slip Regulation can make starting up, accelerating and driving up inclines easier. Indeed, in some cases these actions would not even be possible without ASR.

WARNING

Do not allow the extra safety of the ASR system to tempt you into taking risks. Always adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions.

General Notes

To ensure that the ESP or ASR works properly, all four wheels must be fitted with identical tires. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

Vehicle modifications (brake system, engine or chassis modifications, for example, or a different wheel/tire combination) can affect the function of the ABS, EDS, ESP and ASR systems. Therefore please pay close attention to the advice provided on page 60.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)*

On vehicles with front-wheel drive, ASR prevents the front wheels from spinning when the vehicle is accelerated by reducing the engine power directed to these wheels. The system operates in conjunction with the ABS across the entire speed range. If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ASR is also inactive.

The ASR is switched on automatically when the engine is started. If required, it can also be switched on and off manually by briefly pressing the switch.

When the system is switched off, the ASR warning light comes on.

The ASR should normally be left switched on. The system should only be switched off in certain circumstances where wheelspin can offer advantages:

- when driving with snow chains;
- when driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces;

- when rocking back and forth to free the vehicle when stuck.

The system should be switched on again afterwards.



WARNING

Do not allow the extra safety of the ASR system to tempt you into taking risks. Always adjust your speed to suit the road and traffic conditions.

Note

To ensure that the ASR works properly, all four wheels must be fitted with identical tires. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

See also "wheel and tire replacement" on page 73.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)*

The EDL operates in conjunction with the ABS. The EDL works automatically, i.e. without the driver's intervention.

With the aid of the ABS sensors, the system monitors the speed of the driven wheels. At speeds up to 25 mph (40 km / h), if a difference of approx. 100 rpm's in the speed of the driven wheels is detected (i.e. **one** driven wheel is on a slippery surface), that wheel will be braked in a controlled manner, and more of the engine's power will be directed to the other wheel via the differential to achieve greater traction.

This automatic adjustment process will make some sounds.

To optimize use of the EDL, accelerate and use the clutch appropriate to the street conditions.



WARNING

When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice or snow, be careful! In spite of the EDL, the wheels could start to spin and adversely affect the stability of the vehicle.

Please note:

● When driving off, always be sure to keep road conditions in mind as you accelerate. If a drive wheel spins because it's on a slipperier surface, gradually increase the pressure on the accelerator pedal until the vehicle starts to move.

● When accelerating on slippery surfaces, such as on ice or snow, always be careful when depressing the accelerator pedal. Even with the EDL working, the drive wheels can spin and reduce your ability to control your vehicle.

● To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating if subjected to excessive loads, the EDL cuts out temporarily. The vehicle remains operational and behaves in the same way as a vehicle without EDL.

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the EDL also does not function. This is indicated by the ABS warning light.



WARNING

The increased safety afforded by EDL does not mean that you can take safety risks. Always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and traffic situation.

Vehicle modifications (brake system, engine or chassis modifications, for example, or a different wheel/tire combination) can affect the function of the ABS, EDS, ESP and ASR systems.

Therefore please pay close attention to the advice provided on page 60.

The first 1,000 miles (1 500 km) – and afterwards

Break-in period

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1 500 kilometers).

For the first 600 miles (1 000 kilometers):

As a rule of thumb:

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not drive faster than $\frac{3}{4}$ of top speed shown on the speedometer.
- Avoid high engine speeds.
- If possible, avoid towing a trailer.



WARNING

- New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in." Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.
- New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 100 to 150 miles (150 to 200 kilometers) of normal city driving. You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed.

From 600 to 1,000 miles (1 000 to 1 500 kilometers):

Speeds can gradually be increased to maximum permissible road or engine speed.

During and after break-in period

- Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

 *Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds – upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment – see also page 16.*

- Do not let the engine labor. Downshift when the engine is no longer running smoothly.

Operate your vehicle safely

The condition of your vehicle is directly related to driving safety.

Therefore, always be sure to observe the following points before you drive off:

- **Check lights and turn signals.**
- **Check fuel level.**
- **Adjust the mirrors.**
- **Make sure that all lights and all windows are clean.**
- **Make sure the air intake slots between the engine hood and the windshield is free of leaves, snow and ice.**
- **Check warning and indicator lights when starting the engine.**

For driving safety, always follow the specified maintenance intervals in your **Maintenance booklet Booklet 1.1** – especially for changing the brake fluid, see page 51 in this booklet.

Your personal driving style and your attitude affect driving safety to a very great extent.

Therefore, for your own safety:

- **Wear your safety belts and wear them properly, even if you're just driving in the city or to the corner store –**
see **"Safety belts" Booklet 2.1.**
- **Make sure that all passengers are wearing their safety belts properly, even those sitting in the rear –**
see **"Safety belts" Booklet 2.1.**

Passengers not wearing safety belts endanger not only themselves in case of an accident, but also the driver and other passengers.

- **Make sure that children always sit on the rear seat properly restrained by a restraint system appropriate for their size and age.**

- **Never transport a child in a rear-facing child or infant seat on the front passenger seat.**

- **Adjust your seat so that you can easily reach all controls as far away from the airbag as possible but no closer than 10 in. (25 cm) –**
see **"Front seats" Booklets 2.1 and 3.1.**

- **The seating position is very important for the airbag performance –**
see **"Airbag system" Booklet 2.1**

- **Always adjust the head restraints to the correct height.**

For maximum protection, the upper edge of the head restraints should be **at least** at eye level, or higher.

- **Always make sure that the movement of the pedals is not restricted in any way –**
see **"Pedals" Booklet 3.1.**

- **Store luggage and light items properly**

- **in the luggage compartment –**
see **"Luggage compartment" Booklet 3.1.**

- **on the roof –**
see **"Roof rack" Booklet 3.1.**

Difficult operating conditions

Driving under difficult conditions

Your Volkswagen has been designed and equipped for normal operating conditions. The frequency and the extent of service requirements as stated in the Maintenance Booklet brochure are based on normal operating conditions.

If you are planning to drive your vehicle under difficult operating conditions (for example, continuous trailer towing, very hot or cold weather, very dusty conditions, poor fuel quality, etc.) you may want to make special preparations such as changing to an appropriate oil viscosity, having your vehicle thoroughly inspected, etc. Furthermore, the maintenance should always be matched to the operating conditions (see page 36).

If you drink, do not drive.

The use of alcohol, drugs and certain medications will seriously impair perception, reactions and driving ability, and substantially increase the risk of an accident and personal injury.

● Do not drive if you are tired.

Make frequent rest stops, at least after every two hours of driving.

● Always adapt vehicle speed to traffic, weather and road conditions.

Remember that especially on smooth, slippery roads, vehicle handling and braking depend a great deal on tire adhesion. On wet roads, the front wheels can hydroplane especially at higher speeds. If this happens, you will then, no longer be able to steer or brake properly.

● Always observe the posted speed limits and use common sense. Your good judgment can mean the difference between arriving safely at your destination and having an accident.

Additional information regarding safety can be found in the individual chapters of this manual. **See Booklet 2.1.**

Operate your vehicle economically and minimize pollution

Various factors influence fuel consumption: engine wear, brakes and tires, environmental impact.

This chapter addresses some of these points.

Your personal style of driving

will determine the economy of your vehicle as well as exhaust and noise levels.

Do not let your vehicle stand and warm up.

When the engine is idling, it takes a very long time to warm up. Moreover, during warm-up, both engine wear and exhaust gas emissions are very high. Therefore, be ready to drive off immediately after starting the engine and avoid high engine speeds.

Avoid full throttle.

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption and engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

Upshift as early as possible – do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds.

The highest fuel economy and the least disturbance to the environment are attained when you drive at low engine speeds and in the highest possible gear.

For example, fuel consumption is twice as high in 2nd gear as it is in the highest gear. Also, lowering engine speeds means reduced engine noise. Therefore, drive as often and as long as possible in the highest gear possible for prevailing road and traffic conditions.

Downshift only when the engine is no longer running smoothly.

Depending on the transmission you have, you can normally drive in the highest gear at 25 to 37 mph (40 to 60 km / h) on flat land and still be able to accelerate.

Avoid driving at high speed.

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permitting.

Drive as smoothly as possible and keep a lookout ahead.

Unnecessary accelerating and braking increase fuel consumption and disturb the environment.

 **Switch off your engine if you are caught in a traffic jam. This saves fuel and reduces emissions.**

The external conditions

in which you drive also affect your fuel consumption.

The following conditions increase fuel consumption:

- Heavy traffic, especially in large cities with many traffic lights.
- Stop-and-go driving, especially short distances so that the engine never warms up as it should.
- Driving in heavy, slow moving traffic in low gear so that the engine speed is relatively high when compared to the distance driven.

 **Plan your trips ahead of time. Organize your trips to include several errands and to avoid heavy traffic..**

Of course, there are some conditions that will affect fuel consumption that you can't control.

For example, fuel consumption increases in the winter or under difficult conditions (bad roads, towing a trailer, etc.).

The technical requirements

for optimum fuel consumption and economy were "built" into your vehicle. Special attention was paid to the environment. To retain and make use of these characteristics, please note the following points:

 **Use only unleaded gasoline in gasoline engines.**

Leaded gasoline causes damage to the catalytic converter and other components of the emission system.

 **Have your vehicle serviced by a VOLKSWAGEN dealer at the specified intervals – see page 36 and your Maintenance booklet *Booklet 1.1*.**

Having your vehicle regularly serviced by a VOLKSWAGEN dealer helps ensure that it runs properly and economically, that it does not disturb the environment, and that it has a long service life.

 **Use the air conditioning only when really needed.**

The air conditioning decreases engine output and increases fuel consumption.

 **Check your tire pressure once a month.**

Low tire pressure increases fuel consumption and tire wear, and impairs vehicle handling.



WARNING

Underinflation and overloading of tires can lead to tire failure. Sudden failure on the road could cause a serious or fatal accident.

See page 70 for inflation information.

 Do not carry unnecessary items in the luggage compartment.

Particularly in city traffic where you must often accelerate, weight influences fuel consumption.

 Remove supplementary roof rack components when not in use.

At high road speeds, the increased air resistance caused by the cross bars also increases fuel consumption.

 Switch off any electrical equipment when no longer needed.

The rear window defogger, additional driving lights and the heater blower consume a lot of electricity. The more electricity you consume, the higher the fuel consumption. For example, if you keep the rear window defogger on for 10 hours, your fuel consumption will increase by about 1 quart (1 liter).

 Check your vehicle's fuel consumption regularly. Keep a written record or use the trip odometer.

Check your fuel consumption each time you refuel. By doing this, you can discover any inconsistencies which could result in increased fuel consumption and have these checked before other problems appear.

 Check your oil each time you fill your tank

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5 000 kilometres) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

● **The published ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada consumption estimates may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.**

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

Using unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine - see page 4.

The catalytic converter will be permanently damaged by:

- Exceeding the correct engine oil level – see page 45.
- Driving until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat;
- Push or tow starting your vehicle;
- Other unusual operating conditions.

Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise gasoline fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.

To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:

- Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Maintenance booklet, *Booklet 1.1*.

Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

- Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.

- Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Note

Do not leave the engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.



WARNING

● **Parking**

Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.

● **Undercoating**

Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Warranty coverages

Your Volkswagen is covered by the following warranties.

- Limited New Vehicle Warranty
- Limited Powertrain Warranty
- Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
- Emissions Control System Warranty
- Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)
- California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your Warranty Booklet.

See Booklet 1.2.

Trailer towing*

Your VOLKSWAGEN was designed primarily for passenger transportation. If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that your car will be performing a service it was not intended for. The additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For these reasons, always follow the operating and driving instructions given and use common sense.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and securely bolted to appropriate place on the vehicle's chassis. Use only a trailer hitch with removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind.



WARNING

When you are no longer towing a trailer, remove the entire trailer hitch. When doing so, seal all bolt holes to prevent water and deadly exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer make the engine work harder. It is important the the engine cooling system be up to the job. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's brake system.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Do not connect the trailer light system directly to the light system of your vehicle. Be sure to check with your VOLKSWAGEN dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you must install extended mirrors. It's important that you always have clear vision to the rear.

Operating instructions

Maximum trailer weight

A trailer for your vehicle is limited to a typical class 1 or class 2 trailer.

The maximum gross trailer weight and the tongue load must not exceed the specifications listed in the Technical Data section, see "Weights" **Booklet 3.5**

Do not exceed the gross vehicle weight, which is the weight of the vehicle, including driver, passengers, luggage, trailer hitch and tongue weight of the loaded trailer.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to guard against shifting, be it forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride without the restraints provided by VOLKSWAGEN.

Tongue load

For best vehicle handling under these changed conditions, adjust the trailer load so that the tongue load is at the maximum allowable or slightly lower. You can get an approximation of the tongue load with a bathroom scale or you can measure the load at a trucking company or weighing station.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under "Full load" on the sticker on the right doorjamb. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

The headlight settings should be checked with the trailer attached before driving off. Adjust as necessary so that you can see the road ahead but not blind on-coming traffic.

Check proper working of vehicle and trailer lights.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Driving instructions

To obtain the best possible handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

● The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. **Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed.** Reduce your speed even more under unfavorable load, weather or wind conditions – particularly when going downhill.

Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.

Reduce vehicle speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.

Observe speed limits. In some areas speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

● Always apply brakes early.

When driving downhill, shift into lower gear (selector lever position 3, 2 or 1) to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

● **The cooling effect of the radiator fan cannot be increased by downshifting because fan speed is independent of engine speed. Therefore, when driving uphill, you can always drive in the highest possible gear with low engine speed.**

If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing in red, pull off the road, stop and let the engine idle for about 2 minutes to prevent a heat build-up.

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic until you learn the feel of your vehicle and trailer unit.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Steering while backing up is generally opposite of that when backing your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop.

To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

After parking, always block the wheels of both vehicle and trailer. Do not park with a trailer on a slope. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

- Apply foot brake.
- Have someone place chocks under both vehicle and trailer wheels.
- With chocks in place, slowly release brakes until wheel blocks absorb the load.
- Turn wheels to curb.
- Apply parking brake.
- Place automatic transmission in "P" and manual transmission in first or reverse gear.

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to "P" before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may require more force later to move the lever out of the "P" position.

When restarting after parking on a slope, reverse the procedure:

- Start the engine.
- Shift transmission into gear.
- Release the parking brake and slowly move away from the wheel blocks.
- Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel blocks.

Notes

● **Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.**

● If you tow a trailer, your VOLKSWAGEN may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load – see also page 36.

Cleaning and protection

Any automobile is subjected to abuse from industrial fumes, corrosive road salt, abandoned lollipops, muddy dog feet, etc. A well cared for VOLKSWAGEN can look like new many years after purchase. Regular and correct care will contribute to maintaining the beauty and value of your VOLKSWAGEN.

Furthermore, good care may be a condition for upholding a warranty claim should corrosion damage or paint defects occur.

Your VOLKSWAGEN dealer has a variety of vehicle-care products and can advise you which ones to use for cleaning the exterior and interior of your vehicle.

Whether you use products recommended by VOLKSWAGEN or other commercially available cleaning agents, please make very sure you apply them correctly.

Never try to remove mud, dirt or dust when the vehicle surface is dry. Never use a dry cloth or dry sponge to clean the vehicle since this can damage vehicle paint and window glass.

Use plenty of water to soften up mud, dirt and duster before trying to remove it.



WARNING

- **Cleaning agents may be poisonous. Keep them out of the reach of children.**
- **Observe all caution labels.**
- **Always read directions on the container before using any product. Follow these directions carefully.**
- **Most chemical cleaners are concentrates which require dilution.**
- **Only use spot removing fluids in well ventilated areas.**
- **Do not use gasoline, kerosene, Diesel fuel, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids. They may be toxic, flammable or hazardous in other ways.**
- **Do not wash, wax or dry the vehicle with the engine running.**
- **Do not clean the underside of chassis, fenders, wheel covers, etc. without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency - see page 7. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash.**



Select only environmentally friendly cleaning products. Any remaining cleaning products do not belong in the household waste.

Care of exterior

Washing

The best protection against environmental influences is frequent washing and waxing.

How often this is required depends on how much the vehicle is used, where it is parked (garage, in the open under trees, etc.), the seasonal and weather conditions as well as environmental influences. The longer bird droppings, insects, tree resin, road and industrial grime, tar, soot, road salt and other materials remain on the vehicle paint, the more lasting their destructive effect will be. High temperatures, as from strong sunlight, intensify the corrosive effect.

Under certain circumstances, weekly washing may be necessary. Under other conditions, a monthly washing and waxing may be adequate.

After the winter, the underside of the vehicle should be thoroughly washed.

Washing the vehicle by hand

 ***In the interest of the environment, the vehicle should only be washed in special wash bays.***

First soften the dirt with plenty of water and rinse off as well as possible.

Then clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, glove or brush starting on the roof and working down using only slight pressure. Special car wash soap should be used only for very persistent dirt.

Rinse the sponge or glove thoroughly and often.

Clean wheels and sill panels last, using a different sponge, if possible.

After washing the vehicle, rinse thoroughly with water and wipe it off.

Notes

- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- If the vehicle is rinsed with a hose, do not direct the water into the lock cylinders – otherwise they may freeze up in the winter.

Automatic car wash

The vehicle paint is so durable that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint depends to a large extent on the design of the facility, the filtering of the wash water, the type of wash and care material, etc. If the paint has a dull appearance after going through the car wash or is scratched, bring this to the attention of the operator immediately. If necessary use a different car wash.

- Before going through a car wash, be sure to take the usual precautions such as closing the windows and power roof*.

- To avoid damage to the outside mirrors make sure that you fold them towards the side windows – see “Mirrors”

See Booklet 3.1.

- If you have installed additional accessories on the vehicle – such as spoilers, roof rack, etc. – it is best to ask the car wash operator if these should be removed.

- It is normally not necessary to remove the roof antenna that came with your vehicle.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on page 25.

Washing your vehicle with a power washer

- Always follow the operating instructions for the power washer – especially for pressure and spraying distance.

- Make sure that the jet on the spray hose produces a “fan shape” spray. Do not use a jet which sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a rotating jet.

- Water temperature should not exceed 140°F (60°C).

To avoid damaging your vehicle, always make sure that there is an adequate distance between the sprayer and soft materials like rubber hoses, plastic parts and sound-deadening materials. This also applies to cleaning painted bumpers.

Remember: the closer the nozzle is to the surface of the material, the greater the stress on the material.



WARNING

Never wash tires with a jet that sprays the water out in a direct stream. This could invisibly damage and weaken the tires, even if they are sprayed from a relatively long distance for a very short amount of time. Damaged and weakened tires can fail and cause accidents and personal injury.

Polishing

Polish your vehicle only if the paint has lost its shine and the gloss cannot be brought back with wax. If the polish used doesn't contain preservative compounds, the paint must be waxed afterwards.

Do not treat matte-painted and plastic parts with polish or wax.

Touch-up paint

Your VOLKSWAGEN dealer has touch-up paint for minor scratches and stone chips. Scratches should be touched up soon after they occur to prevent corrosion.

If a spot starts to rust, however, a simple touch-up job won't be enough. The affected surface must be smoothed with sand paper and covered with an anti-rust primer before the painted finish can be restored.

The number for the original vehicle paint can be found on the vehicle identification label see "Vehicle identification". **See Booklet 3.5.**

Waxing

- A good wax coating protects the vehicle paint to a large extent against the environmental influences listed under "Washing" and even against light scratches.
- When water doesn't form small drops and roll off clean paint, apply a coat of good hard wax. Even if a wax solution is used regularly for washing your vehicle, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.
- To protect bright metal trim, use car wax.
- Protect plastic body parts painted the same as the vehicle body with car wax.

- Do not use car wax on ...
 - matte or anodized metal trim
 - rubber or rubber-like trim.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on page 25.

Bright Metal trim

Bright or black anodized metal trim will come clean with regular washing. Remove spots or dirt from chrome and stainless steel with a chrome cleaner. Apply a chrome polish for continued luster and protection.

Trim strips

Dirty patches and marks on the trim strips should be removed with a **pH-balanced** cleaning agent (do not use a chrome cleaner). VOLKSWAGEN dealers carry cleaning products which have been tested for use on your vehicle and are not harmful to the environment.

To avoid corrosion on the exterior trim strips, only a pH-balanced solution should be used for the windshield washer.

Weatherstrips

Keep silicone sprays off the windshield to avoid wiper smear in rain.

To seal properly, weatherstrips around hood, rear lid, doors, etc., must be pliable. Spray with silicone or coat with talcum powder or glycerine to retain flexibility of the rubber and to protect against freezing in the winter.

Dull finishes and plastics

Plastic parts, such as light bulb lenses, decorative stripes, panels, bumpers, etc., will come clean with regular washing. Should additional cleaning or spot removal be necessary, use a soft brush or cloth soaked with a mild detergent solution. Then rinse thoroughly and immediately with clear water.

Do not use anything which could mar the plastic or dull finished surfaces, such as wax, polish, abrasive detergents or chemical cleaning solvents.

Windows

Clean all windows regularly to remove road film and car-wash wax buildup. Use a luke-warm soap and water solution or an alcohol-based commercial window cleaning agent. If a chamois is used for polishing the glass, it should be used exclusively for that purpose. Also, be sure to clean all windows regularly on the inside.

The best way to remove **snow** from windows and mirrors is to use a brush.

Use a nonabrasive plastic ice scraper – better still, a spray deicer – to remove **ice** from windows and mirrors.

To help prevent dirt from scratching the window, always scrape in a forward direction – pushing the scraper away from you – never back and forth.

Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!

Windows should also be cleaned on the inside at regular intervals.

Never dry windows with the same chamois that you use to dry painted surfaces. Wax residue on the chamois can impair vision through windows.

Note

To prevent damage the **wires of the rear defogger**, do not place any adhesive stickers in the inside of the rear window over the wires.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on page 25.

Steel wheels

Always include the hub caps and wheel rims when washing your vehicle to remove road dirt, salt sprays and brake dust. If necessary, use a commercial wheel cleaner to remove accumulated brake dust. Paint scratches should be touched up as soon as possible to prevent corrosion.



WARNING

Moisture, ice, and road salt on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each washing. Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on pages 7 and 25.

Light alloy wheels*

To preserve the decorative appearance of the light alloy wheels, some special care is necessary. In addition to road dirt and salt sprays, brake dust is also corrosive. If left on too long, brake dust can cause pitting. Wash the wheels with a sponge or hose brush every other week.

Road salt should be removed weekly with an acid free cleaning solution. Every three months (after regular cleaning) coat the wheels with petroleum jelly or car wax. Rub it in firmly with a soft cloth. Never use abrasive or metal polishing cleaning agents.



WARNING

Moisture, ice, and road salt on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each washing. Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on pages 7 and 25.

Body cavity sealing

All body cavities which could be affected by corrosion have been given thorough protection at the factory.

This sealing does not require any inspection or additional treatments. If any wax should seep out of the cavity when the outside temperature is high, it can be removed with a plastic scraper and a suitable solvent.



WARNING

- **Benzine is flammable and toxic. If you use benzine for removing the wax, keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away. Never dump benzine on the ground, into open streams or down sewage drains.**
- **Be sure to observe all safety and environmental regulations. Follow all instructions on the container.**

Chassis

The lower body shell of your VOLKSWAGEN is also thoroughly protected against corrosion. Any damage to the undercoating caused by road hazards should be repaired promptly.



WARNING

Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Care of interior

Taking Care of Chrome Parts

Use a damp cloth to clean chrome parts, and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth. If this is not enough, use a chrome cleaner/polish.

Use a chrome cleaner/polish to remove spots and deposits that build up on chrome parts. Regular use of a chrome cleaner/polish prevents deposits from building up on the surface. Make certain that you apply the product uniformly over the entire surface.

Notes

- **Never use any cleaning agent that has an abrasive action.**
- **Never clean or polish chrome surfaces in a dusty or sandy environment.**

Windows

Use the same cleaning agents as for exterior glass surfaces and polish dry. For more details see page 29.

Fabric

Use a vacuum cleaner or a soft bristle brush to remove dust and loose dirt from carpeting, upholstery, headliner and other trim. Dirt stains can usually be removed with a lukewarm soapy water or all-purpose cleaner solution, or a dry foam cleaner.

For greasy, oily and other stubborn stains, use a spot remover. Do not pour the liquid on the fabric. Dampen a clean cloth and rub carefully, starting at the edge and working inward.



Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on page 25.

Plastic Parts, Instrument Panel and Leatherette

Always use a clean cloth moistened in clear water to clean these areas. If this fails to do the trick, use a Volkswagen approved **solvent-free** plastic cleaner/protectant.

Cleaning agents containing solvents will attack the material.



WARNING

Never clean the instrument panel or the surface of Airbag modules with cleaning products that contain solvents.

Products containing solvents will make the surface of this part porous. Serious injuries can result if plastic parts come loose when the airbag is deployed.

Plastic and vinyl

Use a clean, damp cloth or sponge to remove dust. For other soil, use a lukewarm all-purpose cleaning solution or a mild saddle soap for vinyl trim. Remove water spots and soap traces with a clean, damp cloth or sponge. Use a clean, soft cloth to rub dry.

Grease, tar or oil stains can be removed with a clean cloth or sponge soaked with all-purpose cleaner or with a solvent type vinyl cleaning agent.

Occasionally apply a colorless vinyl or leather preservative to retain the material's luster and pliability.

Cleaning and care of leather upholstery*

Do not expose leather upholstery to intense sunlight for long periods of time. It will bleach out.

Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar materials.

If you have any stains or dirt spots which are very difficult to remove, have them treated by professionals so that you do not damage the upholstery.

VOLKSWAGEN does everything possible to preserve the special qualities of natural leather upholstery. When treating the hides, care is taken to avoid all processes which could impair the natural advantages of the material which make for extra comfort.

Because of the exclusive nature of the hides selected and the natural properties of the leather, this kind of upholstery requires a certain amount of care in everyday use since the leather is sensitive to materials such as oil, grease and dirt or wet clothing. If it is given regular attention, the leather upholstery will retain its high quality for many years.

Dust and small particles of dirt lodging in the pores, grain and seams can have an abrasive effect and damage the surface and the seams. If the vehicle is left standing for a long time in the sun, cover the upholstery or use the sun blinds to protect the leather from direct sunlight and prevent fading or discoloration.

Depending on the amount of use, clean the natural leather upholstery occasionally.

For normal cleaning of leather-covered steering wheels, leather seat upholstery, etc., slightly moisten a cotton or woollen cloth with water and wipe over the areas affected.

More stubborn dirt can be removed using a mild soap solution (pure liquid soap: two teaspoons dissolved in 1 quart of water).

It is very important not to let the water soak through the leather or penetrate into the seams. Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

In addition to this regular cleaning, it is worthwhile treating the leather with a suitable leather-care product. This should be done about twice a year for upholstery in normal use. Apply these products very sparingly and follow the manufacturer's directions.

Safety belts

Keep belts clean! Dirty belts may not retract properly.

For cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution. Let belts dry thoroughly and away from direct sunlight.

Do not allow inertia reel safety belts to retract before they are completely dry.



WARNING

- **Anything that might damage your safety belts could mean that you and your passengers would not be adequately protected in an accident.**
- **Safety belt performance depends on correct installation. Never remove belts from the vehicle to clean them.**
- **Do not use chemical cleaning agents, bleach or dyes. They have corrosive properties which weaken the webbing.**
- **When cleaning your safety belts, inspect them for damage. If you discover damage, see your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.**

Engine compartment

WARNING

- **Before working in the engine compartment, be sure to read the WARNINGS on page 40.**
- **Before reaching into the front plenum panel, always remove the ignition key. Otherwise, the windshield wiper system could unintentionally be switched on, possibly causing personal injury from the moving wiper linkage.**
- **Do not wash, wax or dry the engine with the engine running. Moving or hot parts could injure you.**
- **Do not clean the underside of the chassis, fenders, wheel covers, or other hard to reach parts without protecting your hands and arms. You may cut yourself on sharp-edged metal parts.**
- **Moisture and ice on brakes may affect braking efficiency. Test the brakes carefully after each vehicle wash.**

The engine compartment and transmission have been corrosion protected at the factory.

Remove leaves from the plenum panel in front of the windshield under the engine hood. This prevents the water drain holes from becoming blocked, and it prevents debris from entering the vehicle interior through the heating and ventilation ducts.

 **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on page 25.**

Good anti-corrosion treatment is very important, particularly in the winter. If the vehicle is frequently driven on salted roads, the entire engine compartment and plenum panel should be thoroughly cleaned at the end of winter and retreated to prevent salt damage. At the same time, the underside of the vehicle should be washed as well.

WARNING

Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly – even when the engine is off and the ignition key has been removed.

Always switch off the ignition before cleaning the engine.

If the engine compartment is cleaned at any time with grease removing solutions¹⁾, or if you have the engine washed, the anti-corrosion treatment is almost always removed as well. It is therefore essential to ask for a long-lasting corrosion protection of all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment.

 ***If you must rinse off gasoline, oil residue or grease while you are cleaning your engine, then the dirty water should be run through an oil separator filter. We recommend that you have your engine cleaned at a qualified workshop or service station.***

General notes

● We recommend that you have the engine compartment and the underside of your vehicle inspected twice a year for any damage to the protective coating, preferably before and after the winter season. Have necessary repairs done as soon as possible.

● Also, whenever the lower body shell, axle, transmission or engine assemblies have been repaired, any anti-corrosion coating lost on the affected surfaces should be reapplied.

¹⁾ Use only the correct cleaning solutions. Never use gasoline or Diesel fuel.

● Oil-based protective sprays must not be applied. Only tar- or wax-based anti-corrosion protectors are compatible with the factory applied corrosion protection. Before application, road dirt, salt spray deposits and oily substances must be removed.

Your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer stocks the cleaning and preservation solutions recommended by the factory for this purpose and has the equipment necessary to apply them. Therefore, any additional corrosion protection work should be performed by a VOLKSWAGEN dealer. Using incorrect cleaning solutions could damage rubber parts or painted surfaces.



WARNING

- **Use only the correct cleaning solutions. Never use gasoline, Diesel fuel or solvents which could cause a fire.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and the information given on page 25.**

Maintenance

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum.

However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability.

 ***By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.***

For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Maintenance booklet. **See Booklet 1.1.**

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified.

This applies particularly to:

- Oil changes, and cleaning or replacing the air filter.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle:

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop.

We strongly urge you to give your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.



Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40 and on next page.



WARNING

- **Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.**
- **Be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Follow commonly accepted safety practices and good judgment. Never risk personal injury.**
- **Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed. Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.**
- **The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area.**
- **Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.**

 WARNING continued

● Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly – even when the engine is off and the ignition key has been removed.

The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops. This may last up to about 10 minutes.

● If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started. Always remove the ignition key before anyone gets under the vehicle.

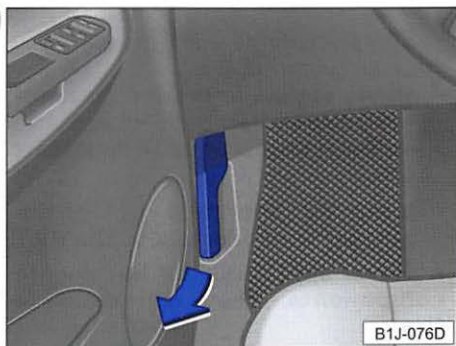
Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in "P" (Park position) and the hand brake is firmly applied.

● Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.

 ***Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.***

Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.

Engine hood



To unlock the engine hood, pull the release lever on the left under the dashboard (see arrow in left illustration). The hood pops up slightly under spring pressure.

At the same time the hood release lever will pop out between the louvers of the front radiator grille – see right illustration.



To close

Grasp the engine hood on the side where the gas pressure strut is located. Pull the hood down until the pressure from the strut is reduced. Then let the hood fall and latch in place – **you do not need to press the hood down again.**

Note

Before opening the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wipers are folded flat against the windshield. Otherwise, they could damage the paint on the hood.

To open, lift the engine hood slightly. Pull the release lever in the direction indicated (see right illustration). This will release the hook under the hood.

Open the hood all the way. It will be held up by gas pressure in the strut.

WARNING

● A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving. When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.

● If you ever notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

Engine compartment

WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood. Before you check anything under the engine hood:

- Switch off the engine. Remove the ignition key.
- Set the parking brake fully. Move the selector lever to P (Park) (Automatic transmission) or Neutral (Manual transmission).
- Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.
- Never touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly – even when the ignition is off and the ignition key has been removed.
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
 - Always disconnect the battery.

WARNING continued

- Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.
- Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.
- To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:
 - Ignition cables
 - Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
- If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:
 - First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever to P (Park) (Automatic transmission) or Neutral (Manual transmission).
 - Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and wear no clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.

California Proposition 65 Warning:**⚠ WARNING**

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

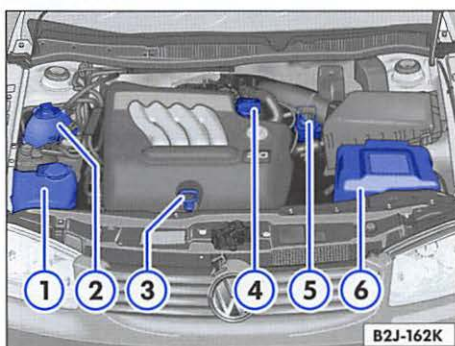
When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

 *To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or qualified workshop.*

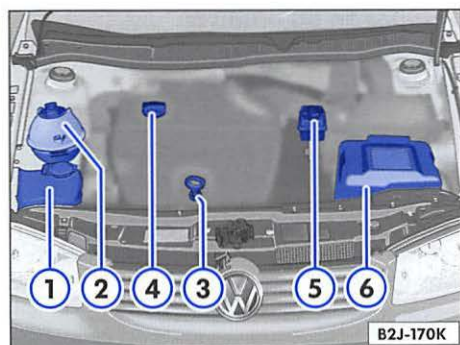
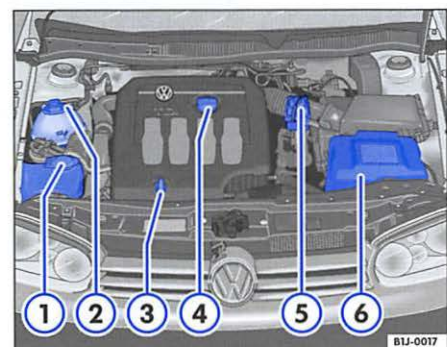
Applies to all engines:

⚠ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on pages 40.

Always exercise extreme caution when working under the engine hood.

**Gasoline engine 115 hp (2.0L)**

Pos.	Page
1 - Windshield washer container	59
2 - Coolant expansion tank	49
3 - Engine oil dipstick	45
4 - Engine oil filler cap	45
5 - Brake fluid reservoir	51
6 - Vehicle battery (protected by a cover)	53

**Gasoline engine 180 hp (1.8L)****Diesel engine 100 hp (1.9L)**

Pos.	Page
1 - Windshield washer container	59
2 - Coolant expansion tank	49
3 - Engine oil dipstick	45
4 - Engine oil filler cap	45
5 - Brake fluid reservoir	51
6 - Vehicle battery (protected by a cover)	53

Engine oil

Specifications and viscosity

Your engine was factory filled with an all season high quality engine oil that has a viscosity grade of SAE 5W-40. You can use this oil over all temperature ranges for normal driving. If you need to add oil between oil changes use any high quality synthetic-based oil with correct specifications. If engine oil viscosity grade SAE 5W-40 is not available, you can also use SAE 5W-30.

To assure that the oil you use is of the highest quality required by your vehicle the following terms must appear on the oil container singly or in combination with other designations:

Gasoline engine

- VW 502 00 or VW500 00 or VW501 01
- ACEA A2 or ACEA A3
- API Service SJ

Diesel engine

- VW 505 01

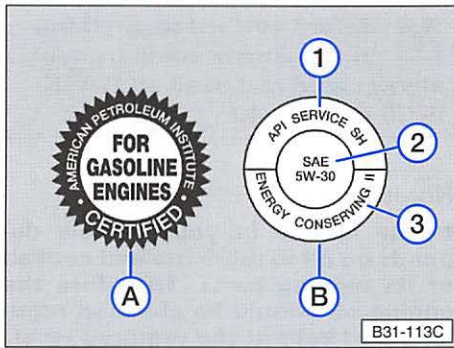


WARNING

Failure to use engine oil for your Diesel engine that expressly conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01 can cause engine failure on the highway that can cause a crash and serious personal injury.

● **Never use any amount of engine oil in the Diesel engine that does not conform to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01.**

● **Always carry with you an extra quart (liter) of engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01 in case you must top off the oil while on the road.**



General recommendations

If SAE 5W-40 or 5W-30 viscosity grade oil is not available in your area, be sure to always use a viscosity grade suitable for the climate and seasonal conditions that exist where the vehicle is being operated. Always make sure that the oil meets the quality standards listed above.

Your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer has the most up-to-date technical information regarding the correct oil specification and viscosity for your engine. Always ask your Service Advisor about the correct oil to use when topping off your engine.

Engine oil identification symbol

Oils of the proper quality for your vehicle will be identified with a new "starburst" symbol **A**. The starburst symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

Another oil identification symbol **B** could be added to the oil container to help you select the correct oil.

- 1 - The top portion indicates the oil quality by API designations.
- 2 - The center portion shows the SAE oil viscosity grade.
- 3 - The lower portion indicates that the oil has fuel saving capabilities.

Note

Look for one of these symbols on the front of the oil container, and use only oils that display these symbols.

Engine oil consumption

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines use a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines which have a break-in period use more oil during the break-in period than they do when oil consumption has stabilized after the break-in period.

Volkswagen recommends that you use the type of oil which meets the specifications described under "Engine oil, Specifications and viscosity".

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality of the oil as well as its viscosity, the rpm's (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the outside temperature, the road conditions, as well as the amount of oil dilution by condensation water or fuel residue and by the oxidation level of the oil. As engines wear, oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn engine parts may become necessary.

Because of all of these variables, it is not possible to specify a standard or "normal" rate of oil consumption. For this reason, we urge you to check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably every time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.

The oil pressure light is not an indicator of low engine oil level. If the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving (above 1500 engine rpm) a buzzer will sound. It indicates that the oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately, check the engine oil level, and add oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal, but the light continues to flash, do not continue to operate the vehicle. Engine damage may occur.

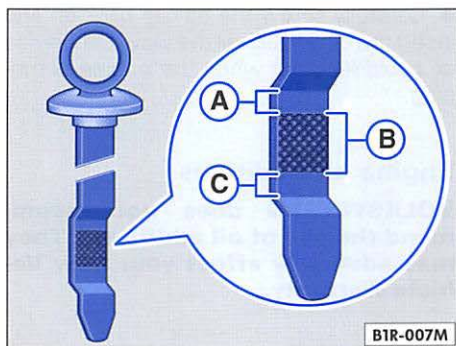
If you believe your engine uses excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer so that the cause of your concern can be properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Volkswagen dealer has instructions on how to measure oil consumption accurately.



Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

Notes

- **The engine in your vehicle depends on oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts. Therefore the engine oil should be checked regularly and kept at the required level.**
- **Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked every time you refuel.**
- **Lack of sufficient engine oil may cause severe engine damage.**
- **The oil pressure warning light is not an oil level indicator.**



Checking the engine oil level

The position of the oil dipstick and the engine oil filler opening can be seen in the illustrations beginning on page 40.

The best time to check the engine oil level is when the oil is warm.

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground.

⚠ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

- After turning off the engine, wait a few minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.
- Pull out dipstick and wipe it clean with a rag.
- Reinsert dipstick; push it all the way in.
- Pull dipstick out again and read the level:

A – You **must not** add oil.

B – You **can** add oil. The oil level may go into the **A** range, but not above the **A** range

C – You **must** add oil.

After filling in oil, make sure that the oil level is somewhere within the **B** range.

- After checking the oil level, please make sure that the dipstick is pushed back in all the way.

Adding engine oil

⚠ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

Your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer has the most up-to-date technical information regarding the correct oil specification and viscosity for your engine. Always ask your Service Advisor about the correct oil to use when topping off your engine.

Important information for vehicles with Diesel engines

Vehicles with Diesel engines require and **must always** use special engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01. **Never** use any other kind of engine oil in your vehicle, not even to top off the oil level. **If you use engine oil that does not expressly conform to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01, very serious and very expensive damage to your vehicle's engine will occur. Engine damage caused by using the wrong engine oil will not be covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty.** Not all commercially available oils conform to this very rigid Volkswagen oil quality standard even though they may have the same viscosity.

At the time of printing, we are aware that Castrol® produces an engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01. This oil may not yet be available throughout North America. Other oil manufacturers may offer engine oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01 at this time or at some future date. Please be sure to consult with your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for information on availability of the proper engine oil for your vehicle's Diesel engine and for the latest technical information.

Because this special engine oil may not be available when you need it, we strongly recommend that you always carry with you extra quart (liter) of oil that conforms to Volkswagen Oil Standard 505 01, in case you have to top off the oil while on the road.

For all engines

- Turn off the engine.
- Unscrew the oil cap from the cylinder head cover.
- Add oil by a half quart (half liter) at a time.
- Check the oil level with the dipstick.

The oil level must never be above the A range – see page 45.

Otherwise oil could be drawn into the crankcase breather and get into the atmosphere through the exhaust system. **On vehicles with a catalytic converter, the oil would burn in the converter and cause damage.**

WARNING

Spilled oil is a fire hazard. The oil filler cap must be secure to avoid an oil spill.

- Carefully screw the oil cap back on and insert the oil dipstick all the way. Otherwise oil could leak out when the engine is running.

Engine oil additives

VOLKSWAGEN does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.

Changing the engine oil

 **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.**

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Maintenance booklet. **See Booklet 1.1.**

This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

 **Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.**

WARNING

- If you must change the engine oil in your vehicle:
- Wear eye protection.
- To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil let the engine cool down to the touch.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
- Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
- Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
- Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

 *Before changing your oil, you should first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the old oil.*

Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into streams or down sewage drains.

Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or a qualified workshop.

 **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.**

Engine cooling system

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of water and the manufacturer's coolant additive **G 12 A8D** – antifreeze on a glycol base with anti-corrosion additives (50% for USA and Canadian models). This mixture assures the necessary frost protection and protects alloy components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water.

The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 40% but not more than 60% to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

-31°F (-35°C) USA and Canada



Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

Never use any coolant additive other than our G12 A8D additive (check label) for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at VOLKSWAGEN dealers.

Other types of antifreeze can, above all, significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and therefore serious engine damage.

When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, please remember:

Under no circumstances may G12 A8D be mixed with other coolant additives (for example G 11).

You can recognize G12 A8D in the expansion tank by its red color. If the liquid in the expansion tank is brown, G 12 A8D has been mixed with another coolant additive. In this case, your vehicle's coolant must be changed as soon as possible.

Note

Mixing coolant additives can result in serious malfunction or engine damage!



Checking the engine coolant level

⚠ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

The coolant expansion tank is located on the right side in the engine compartment.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood and following the precautions on the next page.

The correct coolant level is important for proper functioning of the cooling system.

Therefore, check the coolant level regularly – preferably at every fuel filling when you check the oil.

To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

Since the expansion tank is transparent, the cap need not be removed to check the coolant level.

The coolant level must be between the **reference lines** when the engine is cold and can be slightly above the **upper line** if the engine is warm.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level checking device.

When the coolant level is too low, the warning light (see "Warning / Indicator lights," chapter "INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONTROLS". See **Booklet 3.1.**) will blink until the coolant level has been restored to normal.

Coolant losses

Coolant losses may indicate a leak in the cooling system. In the event of coolant losses, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a sealed system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating.

Note

Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Adding coolant

WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.

- Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
- Protect face, hands and arms escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
- To help avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze (see previous page) must be restored as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

Do not fill coolant above the upper line.

Note

Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.

Screw cap on again tightly.

WARNING

Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store antifreeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children. If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked "poison."

 **Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant observing all environmental regulations.**

Radiator fan

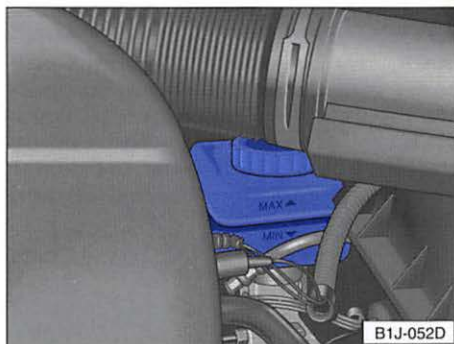
The electric radiator fan is controlled by thermostats that switch on and off depending on coolant and engine compartment temperatures.

WARNING

- **Never touch the radiator fan** It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly – even when the ignition is off and the ignition key has been removed
- **The radiator fan switches on automatically** when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.

 **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.**

Brake fluid



Checking brake fluid level

 **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.**

The brake fluid reservoir is below the left side of the plenum panel, see illustration above and on page KEIN MERKER.

The correct fluid level is important for the proper functioning of the brake system. The fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir should always be between the "**MAX**" and "**MIN**" markings.

The fluid level may drop slightly after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is no cause for alarm.



If the brake fluid level falls considerably below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning light will come on. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by a VOLKSWAGEN dealer or another qualified workshop and the cause corrected.

The brake warning lamp lights up to indicate a low fluid level in the reservoir.

For more details see "Warning / Indicator lights," chapter "INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONTROLS". See Booklet 3.1.

Contact a VOLKSWAGEN dealer immediately.

Changing brake fluid

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer. Your dealer has the correct tools and know-how to do this for you.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed every 2 years.

Note

Remember that brake fluid is harmful to the paint of your vehicle.

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid along with the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have your brake fluid changed by your VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

It is advisable to have the fluid changed during a Maintenance Service.



WARNING

Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:

- Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct-type of brake fluid is also found labeled on the brake fluid reservoir.
- The brake fluid must be new.
- Brake fluid is poisonous. Therefore, it must be stored only in the closed original container out of reach of children.

Battery

WARNING

Always heed the following **WARNINGS** and safety precautions when working on the battery.



Shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.



No
- sparks
- flames
- smoking.



Sulfuric acid.
Can cause blindness or severe burns.



Flush eyes immediately with water.
Get medical help fast.



Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.



When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.



Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing.



Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light. Do not smoke. Do not reverse polarity.



Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings. If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor. If you should ingest any battery acid, get a doctor immediately.

● **Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.**



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

● When working on the battery, be sure not to short circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.

● Never force a battery open— you could burn yourself on the battery acid or even cause an explosion. Do not connect a battery which is damaged or leaking. Dispose of damaged batteries properly.

California Proposition 65 Warning:



WARNING

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running. Otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.

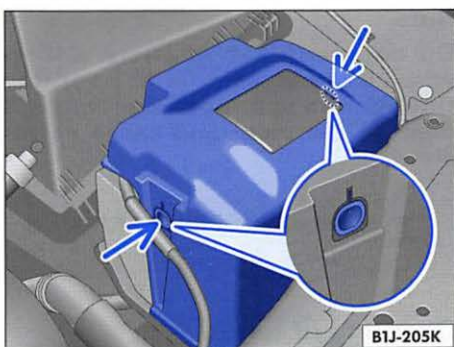
When working on the engine, protect the battery housing from ultra violet (UV) rays by not parking the vehicle in direct sunlight.

Winter operation

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. More power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, blower fan, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your VOLKSWAGEN dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems but will also last longer.

If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged.



Location of vehicle battery

⚠ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

The vehicle battery is located at the front of the engine compartment on the left side (protected by a cover).

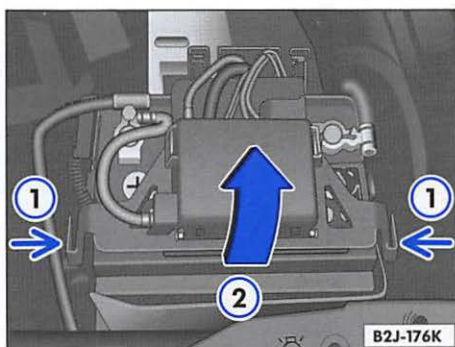
Battery acid level

⚠ Always heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your VOLKSWAGEN does not need any maintenance. At high outside temperatures it is advisable, however, to check the fluid level at regular intervals.

First, open the battery cover .

- Press the retaining straps in the direction of the arrows and lift up (see illustration).



Press the retaining straps in the direction of the arrows **1** and fold back the safety cover – arrow **2**.

⚠ WARNING

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- Do not let battery acid come in contact with skin, eyes, fabric, or painted surfaces.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor.
- Do not expose the battery to an open flame or electric spark. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery can explode and cause personal injury.



On the upper side of the battery, you'll find a round "window". This window (magic eye) changes color as the battery charge and electrolyte level change. This color helps your authorized Volkswagen dealer when diagnosing your battery.

Air bubbles in the window can cause an inaccurate reading. Carefully tap on the side of the window.

If the window **has no color or is bright yellow**, the acid level is low. Add distilled water to top up.

We recommend you have your authorized Volkswagen dealer inspect your battery.

A battery that is older than five years and has a low acid level should be replaced.

Note

Do not overfill the battery. Otherwise battery acid will overflow through the vent opening. This will damage the paint and cause corrosion.



Always heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

Charging of battery



WARNING

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 53.**
- **The battery contains sulfuric acid. Therefore, keep battery out of reach of children.**
- **Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.**
- **Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.**
- **If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and call a doctor.**

⚠ WARNING continued

- **Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent mechanic with the proper equipment.**
- **Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.**
- **Do not reuse batteries which have frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.**

⚠ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

- **Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.**
- **Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as glow plugs*, control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger.**

Slow battery charging**⚠ WARNING**

Heed all WARNINGS and follow instructions that come with your battery charger.

- Before charging the battery, switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
- It is not necessary to remove the battery from the engine compartment, and it is also not necessary to disconnect the battery cables.
- Remove the battery cover – see page 55.
- Connect charger cables.

Charger cables must be connected POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) and NEGATIVE (-) to NEGATIVE (-).

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.

- Switch on charger.

For more details see next page.

Charging rate not over 6 amps.

Normally, a battery should be charged at no more than 10 percent of its rated capacity. For example, a charging current of 4.5 amps. would be used on a battery rated at 45 Ah. Rated capacity of the battery in your vehicle is listed on the battery housing.

- After charging, first turn off the charger and then disconnect charger cables.

When disconnecting and connecting the battery ...

When you **disconnect** the vehicle battery please note the following:

- all the data stored in the **MFA*** (Multi Function Indicator) are erased,
- the digital clock goes out,
- the factory installed radio locks up,
- the one-touch-up and one-touch-down functions of the power windows* no longer work.

After you **reconnect** the battery, you must reset the digital clock. **See Booklet 3.1.**

You also have to reset the one-touch-up and one-touch-down feature on power windows – see "Power windows". **See Booklet 3.1.**

The radio must be re-coded with the correct radio code – see your radio Operating Instructions. **See Booklet 3.3.**



Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

Replacement battery

A replacement battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off.

 ***Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend that you have your VOLKSWAGEN dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly observing all environmental regulations.***

Windshield washer container



The windshield washer container is located on the right side of the engine compartment. It can be identified by the blue cap – see illustration.

The fluid container for the windshield washers system holds about 3.2 quarts (3.0 liters).

The washer fluid container in the engine compartment also supplies washer fluid for the rear window washer system.



Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.

Filling the container

To add washer fluid, just lift the filler cap by the small tongue. The container can be filled to the top.

Since clear water is usually not adequate for cleaning the glass, add a cleaning solution to the water.

Use winterized windshield washer solvent during the cold season even though the vehicle may be equipped with **heated* washer jets**. It helps to keep your windshield clean and prevents the fluid from freezing in the winter.

Do not use engine coolant anti-freeze or any other solution that can damage the vehicle paint.

Follow the directions on the can for the correct amount to be used.

After filling the container, press the cap onto the filler neck.

Adjusting washer jets

You need special equipment to adjust the jets for the windshield and the headlight washer system*. See your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Additional accessories, Modifications and Parts replacement

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the original new-vehicle condition. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced or if any modifications are made to the vehicle, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

- **Always consult** an authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer **before** purchasing accessories and **before** any modifications are carried out.

- Approved VOLKSWAGEN accessories and genuine VOLKSWAGEN parts are available from authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers. These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

- Our guidelines must be consulted before any modifications of a technical nature are undertaken. This will ensure that the vehicle is not damaged in any way, that highway and operating safety is maintained and that the modifications are permissible.

Authorized Volkswagen dealers will perform this work in a professionally competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a firm that specializes in such modifications.



WARNING

- **In your own interest, we advise you to use only expressly approved VOLKSWAGEN accessories and genuine VOLKSWAGEN spare parts. These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.**

- **Accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders should never be installed on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!**

- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.**

Installing / replacing a radio

If you wish to install a radio or replace the factory installed radio*, please note the following:

- The factory installed radio connectors* are designed for genuine VOLKSWAGEN radios.

When installing a different radio, difficulties could arise such as:

- the radio may not fit into the space provided
- the electrical connections may not be compatible
- different connector terminals may be needed.

- Therefore, we recommend that you have your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer install or replace the radio. They are the most familiar with the technical features of your vehicle. They also offer Genuine VOLKSWAGEN Radios with the necessary installation components and instructions.



WARNING

Improperly installing a radio could cause a short circuit. This could result in an electrical fire.

Mobile telephones and CB radios

Mobile telephones or CB radios should not be used in the vehicle unless a separate outside antenna is installed.

If you use a mobile telephone or CB radio inside the vehicle without an outside antenna, the high frequency energy (resonance effect) emitted inside the vehicle can cause malfunctions in the vehicle's electronic system.

Moreover the unit achieves maximum pick-up only if an outside antenna is installed.

Always heed the instructions of mobile telephones and CB radios.



WARNING

- **Using a mobile telephone or CB radio inside the vehicle without having a separate outside antenna could be dangerous to your health due to the high frequency energy emitted!**

- **Always keep your attention on the road and traffic!**

- **Never install telephone cradles on airbag covers or within airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident! Refer to Booklet 2.1, chapter "Airbag system".**

Warning triangle*



You can mount a special traffic warning triangle behind a cover on the left side of the luggage compartment.

To open the lid, pull the handle in the direction of the arrow – see upper illustration.

Note

If you want to equip your vehicle with a warning triangle, contact your authorized VOLKSWAGEN Dealer.

Service kit*



You can mount a first-aid kit in the luggage compartment.

The first-aid kit is stored in a special storage bin on the right side of the luggage compartment. To open the lid, pull the handle in the direction of the arrow – see left illustration. The rubber strap will hold it in place.

Notes

- Your vehicle **does not** come equipped with a first-aid kit or a warning triangle.
- **The first-aid kit and warning triangle must meet all legal requirements.**
- **Don't forget to look at the expiration date on the contents of your first-aid kit. If the date has expired, you should purchase another one as soon as possible.**

Jack and tool kit, spare wheel



Stowing the jack and tool kit and the spare wheel

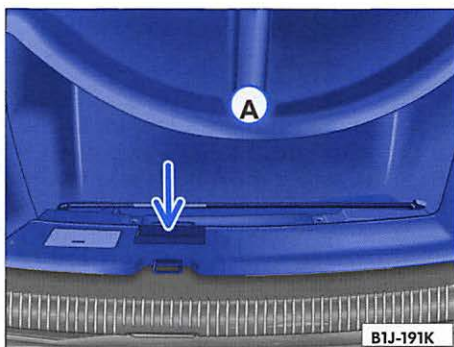


WARNING

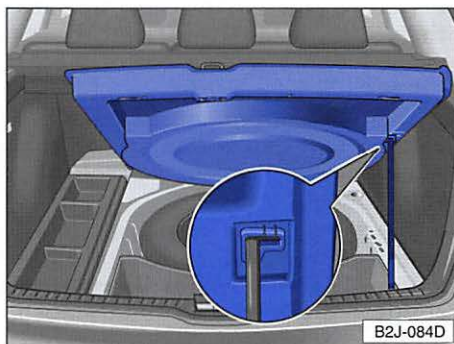
Always make sure the jack and tools are secured in place and not loose, otherwise they could fly forward causing personal injury to passengers in the vehicle in an accident or sudden maneuver.

The vehicle tools and spare wheel are located in the luggage compartment under the storage tray.

- Grab the rear end of the luggage compartment floor cover and fold it forward (in the direction of the arrow).



- Unlock storage tray **A** by pulling up the release handle (arrow). Lift the tray up and hold it in this position.



- Unlatch the storage tray support from its mounting and hook the support into the opening of the tray provided for this purpose.

Jack and tool kit

WARNING

● Always make sure the jack, the tools, the spare wheel and even a flat tire are secured in place and not loose. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

● The jack must never be used as a support to work underneath the vehicle. If the jack is accidentally dislodged, you could be seriously injured.

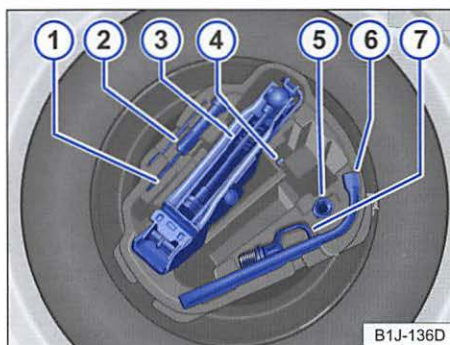
● Before you use the jack, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.

● Using a bumper jack to raise the vehicle will cause damage to the bumper system. Also, the jack may slip, causing injury.

● Do not support your vehicle on cinder blocks, bricks or other objects. These may not be able to support the load and could cause injury.

● Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

● If you must work under the vehicle, always use safety stands specifically designed for this purpose.



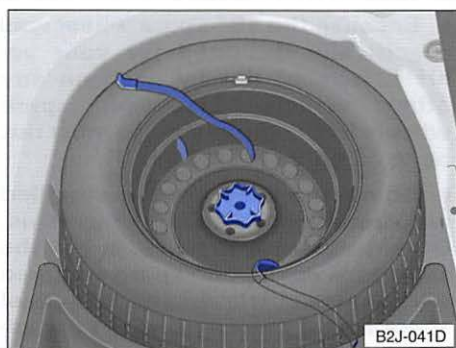
The tool kit is located in a foam case, which, is stored inside the center of the spare wheel.

Your vehicle comes equipped with the following tools:

- 1 - Screwdriver with a hexagonal socket in the handle for removing previously loosened wheel bolts.
The screwdriver has a reversible blade (flat blade on one end and Phillips head on the other).
- 2 - Open ended wrench 10 x 13 mm
- 3 - Vehicle jack
Before you put the jack back into the tool box, make sure it is completely re-wound.
Then, the handle must be fastened to the jack.
- 4 - Wire clip for hub cap or wheel bolt covers
- 5 - Adapter* for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 6 - Lug wrench
- 7 - Towing eye (see page 68).

Note

Never use the hexagonal opening in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.



Spare wheel

The 16" steel spare wheel is stored under the carpeting in the luggage compartment. A large plastic nut holds it in place.

Vehicles with standard suspension and 16" road wheels

If your vehicle is equipped with standard suspension and 16" road wheels with either steel or light alloy wheels, you can use the 16" steel spare wheel just like the 16" road wheel it replaces.

Vehicles with sports suspension* and 17" road wheels

If your vehicle is equipped with the optional sports suspension, it will be factory-equipped with 17" road wheels and a 16" steel spare wheel. This smaller spare wheel fits completely in the spare wheel well. Because it is smaller than the regular road wheels, it cannot be used for longer distances or at highway speeds. See next page for important **WARNINGS** and information.

Removing the spare wheel

In order to have both hands free when removing the spare wheel, unlatch the storage tray support from its mounting and hook the support into the opening of the tray provided for this purpose, see page 63.

Loosen the strap and remove the foam piece.

Turn the plastic nut counterclockwise and remove.

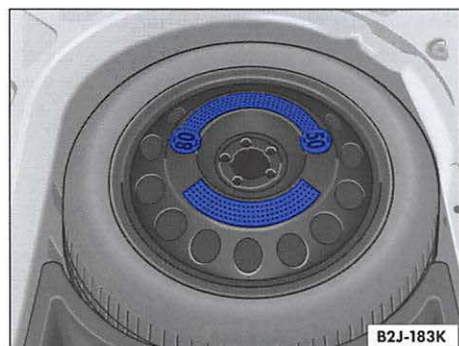
Securing the flat wheel in the luggage compartment.

- First thread the strap through the holes in the tire rim – see illustration.
- Place the flat tire into the tire well and secure it with the mounting nut.
- Turn the mounting nut clockwise until the tire is securely in place.
- Place the foam piece on top with the vehicle tools and secure the strap.
- Unhook and lower the luggage compartment carpeting.



WARNING

Always make sure the jack and tool kit, the spare wheel and even a flat wheel are secured in place and not loose, otherwise they could fly forward causing personal injury to passengers in the vehicle in an accident or sudden maneuver.



16" steel spare wheel for vehicles with sports suspension*

The 16" steel spare wheel is stored under the carpeting in the luggage compartment. A large plastic nut holds it in place.

When temporarily using the 16" steel spare wheel to replace a 17" road wheel, note the following:

- After installing the 16" steel spare wheel, the tire inflation pressure must be checked and if necessary, increased or decreased to the air pressure required depending on whether the spare wheel is installed on the front or the back and depending on the loading of the vehicle. See tire pressure sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

- The 16" spare wheel must be returned to the spare wheel well as soon as the standard road wheel can be repaired or replaced.

- The load carrying capacity is marked on the tire sidewalls and must not be exceeded.

- Because the 16" spare wheel was specifically designed for your vehicle, it must not be used on any other vehicle. Likewise, spare wheels from other vehicles must not be used on your vehicle.

- Do not use the spare tire supplied with your vehicle on any other rims. Do not mount a tire that is not the same size as the 16" spare supplied with your vehicle on the 16" steel spare wheel that came with your vehicle. Do not use wheel covers or trim rings unless they were specifically designed and approved for use on the 16" steel spare wheel supplied with your vehicle. If your vehicle was supplied with 16" road wheels with steel rims and wheel covers, you can use these wheel covers on the 16" steel spare.

WARNING

Improperly using the 16" spare to replace a 17" road wheel can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- The 16" steel spare wheel is for temporary use only on vehicles with sports suspension and 17" road wheels and is so marked on the sidewalls.



Always heed all WARNINGS on next page.

 WARNING continued

- Any continuous road use of the 16" spare wheel can result in tire failure, loss of vehicle control and injury to vehicle occupants.

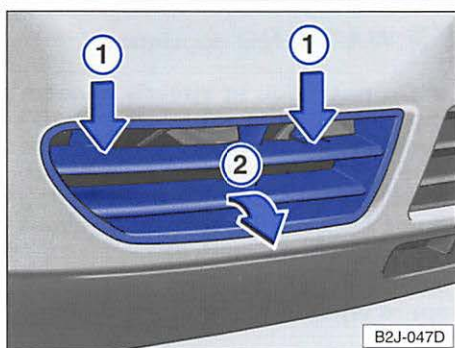
- Do not put a snow chain on your 16" spare wheel when the other road wheels have a different diameter. Due to the smaller tire size, the chain will not fit properly and can thus damage your vehicle. You could also lose the chain, as well as control of the vehicle.

In the event of a flat front wheel in road conditions which require snow chains, remove the undamaged rear road wheel on the same side first and mount the 16" spare wheel there. Then remove the damaged 17" front wheel, take off the snow chains and attach them to the rear road wheel prior to mounting on the front. Check and adjust tire pressure promptly.

 WARNING continued

- Do not drive at speeds exceeding 50 mph (80 km/h) with the 16" spare wheel mounted in the place of a 17" road wheel. Also rapid, hard braking and hard cornering must be avoided to help prevent loss of vehicle control!

- Never use two or more 16" spare wheels at the same time.



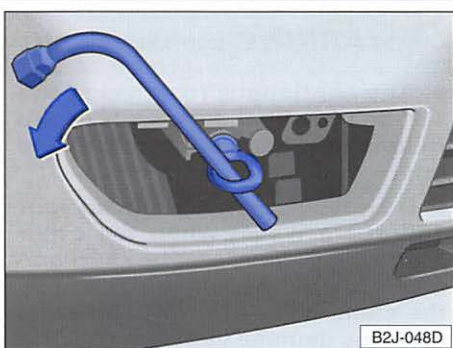
Towing eye

The towing eye should only be used in exceptional cases, for example, if you need to pull your vehicle out if it's stuck in mud or snow.

Attaching the towing eye

Before you can attach the towing eye, you must first remove the small grille located on the right-hand side, in the lower part of the front bumper. You'll find the towing eye with the vehicle tools.

Press the top edge in the direction of arrows **1** and remove the grille in the direction of arrow **2** at the same time – see left illustration.



The towing eye has a left-handed thread. Insert the towing eye into the threaded opening and **turn it to the left all the way until it stops**. Then, tighten it using the wheel bolt wrench – see right illustration.

When you're finished using the towing eye, unscrew it and store it once again with the other vehicle tools.

Then, re-install the grille into the bumper.

Tires / Wheels

Tires are important but often abused parts of a vehicle. They not only influence comfort and ride, but perform vital safety functions. This section is intended to provide you with important information regarding their proper use, care and replacement.

- Be sure to inspect your tires at least every 2,000 miles (3 000 kilometers) for wear and damage.

- Damage to wheels and tires is not always easy to see. If you believe that a tire or wheel has been damaged, it is best to have it replaced as soon as possible. Internal tire damage can never get better or "heal" itself, it can only get worse over time. Tire damage can lead to tire failure and loss of vehicle control. See your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for advice and assistance.

- Mark tires before removing them. Remount tires on the same vehicle side because the rotation direction must stay the same.

- Store removed tires in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. Tires which are not on wheels should be stored standing up.

- New tires may have different tread depths due to the configuration and design by the tire manufacturers. When replacing tires, use ones with matching tread depth.



WARNING

- **Tires age even if they are not being used. Tires which are more than 6 years should be used only in an emergency and then with caution.**

- **Avoid damaging tires and wheel rims. If you must drive over a curb or other obstacle, drive slowly and as nearly as possible at a right angle. Frequently check tires for uneven wear and damage.**

- **Remove embedded material.**

- **Replace worn or damaged tires immediately.**

- **Replace missing valve dust caps.**

- **Keep oil, fuel, brake fluid, etc. away from tires.**

- **Keep tires inflated correctly.**

New tires

New tires tend to be slippery and cannot offer full traction until they have been properly broken in.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in." To help avoid loss of control, always operate a vehicle with new tires at lower speeds and with special caution for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

Tire service life

The service life of your tires depends for the most part on the following factors:

Tire pressure

Required **cold** tire inflation pressures are listed on a sticker on the driver's door lock jamb.

WARNING

- **Incorrect tire pressures can lead to a serious or fatal accident:**
- **Incorrect tire pressures cause increased tire wear and can affect handling of the vehicle.**
- **Incorrect pressures can also lead to sudden tire failure and deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.**

Low tire pressures increase fuel consumption which is detrimental to the environment.

Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip.

Tire pressures are very important, particularly when the vehicle is driven at higher speeds.

Vehicles which have full hub caps have valve extenders instead of dust caps. To check tire pressure or to add air, you do not need to remove the extender.

Always check tire pressures when the tires are cold. When the tires are warm, the pressure will be higher. **Do not reduce the pressure of warm tires.**

Don't forget to check the spare wheel.

Use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking inflation pressures. Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall. Cold tire inflation pressure means: the vehicle has been standing for at least 3 hours or driven for less than 1 mile (1 km).

Do not forget to reinstall the valve stem caps after checking tire pressure.

Driving habits

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tire wear.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. When driving, however, various conditions can cause a wheel to become unbalanced. This may be noticed as vibrations in the steering.

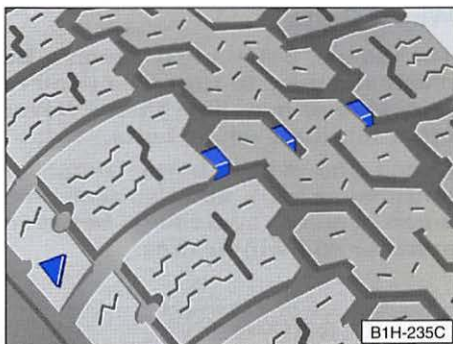
Since tire imbalance can cause wear on the steering, suspension and tires, you should have your wheels re-balanced. A wheel should always be balanced if a new tire has been mounted or a tire was repaired.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive and uneven tire wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If you notice excessive tire wear, contact your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Tire wear

The original tires on your vehicle have built-in wear indicators. They are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves and will appear as approximately $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (12 mm) bands when the tire tread depth wears down to $\frac{1}{16}$ inches (1.6 mm). Depending on the tire manufacturer, there are six to eight wear indicators evenly spaced around the circumference of the tire. Markings on the sides of the tires (e.g. the letters "TWI", a triangle or other symbols) show the locations of the wear indicators.



When the indicators appear in two or more adjacent grooves, it is time to replace the tires. We recommend, however, that you do not let the tires wear down this far. Worn tires cannot grip the road surface properly, and are even less effective on wet roads.



WARNING

- **Worn tires can lead to a serious accident.**
- **Tires showing cuts, bruises or other damage may lead to tire failure, sudden deflation and loss of vehicle control.**
- **Since worn tires do not grip the road surface properly when the vehicle is driven on wet roads, the vehicle may tend to hydroplane sooner.**

Wheel Bolts

The wheel bolts must always be clean and easy to turn when you're removing or installing them. Never oil or lubricate wheel bolts.

Check the wheel bolts whenever you change a tire, and also each time when you're switching between summer and winter tires.

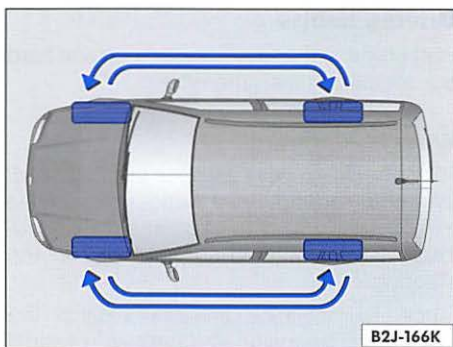


WARNING

- The use of wheel bolts that do not meet specifications of the original factory installed equipment will adversely affect the safe operation of your vehicle and may cause an accident and personal injury.
- If insufficient torque is used to tighten wheel bolts, they can come loose and cause an accident during vehicle operation! Extremely high torques can damage the wheel bolts and/or their threads.

Tire rotation

If the front tires are worn more than rear tires, then you must rotate the front tires with the rear tires as shown in the illustration. By doing this, all tires will have approximately the same service life.



Tires should always remain on same side of vehicle.

Only when tires show unusual wear such as feather-edging should they be rotated diagonally. Your vehicle may be equipped with tires which have a specified rotation direction. The rotation direction is identified by arrow markings on the sides of the tires. The rotation direction must not be reversed. Therefore, these tires cannot be switched diagonally. If in doubt, discuss any unusual tire wear with your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer's service department.

After rotation adjust tire pressure and torque wheel bolts diagonally to 88 ft lb (120 Nm). Refer to "Changing a wheel" on page 80 for details.

Wheel and tire replacement

Wheels and tires approved by the manufacturer have been specially matched to your vehicle and contribute greatly to the road-holding, driving characteristics and safety of the vehicle.

WARNING

● Installing improper or unmatched tires on your vehicle can lead to a very serious accident. Be sure always to use tires of the recommended size and type and follow all replacement recommendations below.

● If the spare tire is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wide profile tires), then use the spare tire for a short period of time only and drive with extra care. Replace the flat tire with a tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.

● Fitting and repairing tires requires expert knowledge and special tools. This work should only be performed by a specialist.

● We recommend that you have your tires changed by a authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer, because they have the special tools and necessary expertise.

Furthermore, your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer stocks a range of tires and wheels.

● For safety reasons, tires should be replaced in pairs and not individually. The tires with the deepest tread should always be mounted on the front wheels.

● Never mount used tires if you are not sure of their previous history.

● Whenever replacing a tubeless tire, always install a new valve stem. Tire repair should only be performed by a specialist.

● In the interest of maximum safety and best all-around vehicle handling, always buy replacement radial tires that have the same specifications with regard to tire size, design, load carrying capacity, speed rating, tread pattern, tread depth, etc. This also applies to VOLKSWAGEN recommended alternate replacement tires.

Make sure that the new tires also meet the specifications listed on the label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

If you wish to equip your vehicle with tires or wheels other than those installed at the factory, please note the following:

● Before you plan on exchanging steel wheels, light alloy wheels, or winter tires already mounted on wheel rims, consult your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer. They have the technical information necessary to advise you which wheel rims and wheel bolts are compatible with the original factory installations.

⚠ WARNING

● For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles – under certain conditions not even wheels from the same vehicle model.

● Wheel rims and wheel bolts are matched to fit your VOLKSWAGEN.

When installing different wheels (for example, wheels with winter tires), the correct wheel bolts with the proper length and conical shape of the bolt head must be used. The secure fit of the wheels and the proper functioning of the brake system and safety are dependent upon this.

● If wheel trim discs or a front spoiler are installed, make sure the airflow for cooling the brakes is not obstructed.

● Incorrect tire/wheel parts may cause an accident and personal injury. Such parts will adversely affect the safe operation of your vehicle. Always use tires, wheel rims and wheel bolts that meet specifications of the original factory-installed equipment.

Tire specifications**⚠ WARNING**

Never mix tires of different design such as steel belted radials with radial bias belted or bias ply tires etc. Mixing tire types will adversely affect road holding and can lead to loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

A knowledge of tire designations makes it easier to choose the correct tires. Radial ply tires have the following designations:

e.g. **195 / 65 R 15 91 H**

195	= Tire width in mm
65	= Height / width ratio in %
R	= Tire construction: R adial
15	= Rim diameter in inches
91	= Load rating code
H	= Speed rating code letter

The speed rating letter code indicates the maximum permissible road speeds:

Summer tires:

S – up to 110 mph (180 km / h)

T – up to 118 mph (190 km / h)

H – up to 130 mph (210 km / h)

V – up to 150 mph (240 km / h)

Z – over 150 mph (240 km / h).

"Z" tires carry the speed rating code letter in combination with the tire construction letter "R."

Winter tires see page 77.

 WARNING

- **Driving faster than the maximum speed for which tires are rated and approved can lead to sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and lead to an accident and personal injury.**
- **Never operate a vehicle at speeds greater than the maximum speed rating of its tires.**
- **Always observe speed limits and adjust your vehicle to prevailing road and traffic conditions.**

Note

Your vehicle is normally factory equipped with all season tires, which possess excellent driving characteristics and give your VOLKSWAGEN optimum driving comfort. The speed limit of this tire is 130 mph (210 km / h).

 WARNING

Never operate this vehicle at speeds greater than 130 mph. Exceeding 130 mph (210 km / h) under any conditions will lead to sudden tire failure which can cause loss of vehicle control and personal injury. Always observe speed limits and adjust your vehicle speed to prevailing road and traffic conditions.

The manufacturing date on the tire side wall (possibly only on the inside of the wheel):

DOT ... **181** ... means that the tire was produced in the **18th** week of 200**1**.

Tire strength and performance decline with age – even if the tires are not used. Tire manufacturers caution that a tire more than six years old cannot be expected to perform reliably and safely even in normal use.

 WARNING

Old tires can fail in use, causing loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

Replace tires after six years regardless of tread wear. Always reduce speed and drive cautiously if you must use an old tire in an emergency. Replace the tire as soon as possible.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread, shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Tread wear 200, Traction AA, Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half ($1\frac{1}{2}$) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Replacement tires / wheels

If you wish to equip your vehicle with tires or wheels other than those installed at the factory, please note the following:

● **For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles – under certain conditions not even wheels from the same vehicle model.**

● **Wheel rims and wheel bolts are matched to fit your VOLKSWAGEN.** When installing different wheels (for example, wheels with winter tires), the correct wheel bolts with the proper length and conical shape of the bolt head must be used. The secure fit of the wheels and the proper functioning of the brake system and safety are dependent upon this.

● **Wheel rims and wheel bolts are matched to fit your VOLKSWAGEN.**

● **Before you plan on exchanging steel wheels, light alloy wheels, or winter tires already mounted on wheel rims, consult your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.** They have the technical information necessary to advise you which wheel rims and wheel bolts are compatible with the original factory installations.



WARNING

● **Incorrect tire/wheel parts may cause an accident and personal injury.** Such parts will adversely affect the safe operation of your vehicle. Always use tires, wheel rims and wheel bolts that meet specifications of the original factory-installed equipment.

● **If wheel trim discs or a front spoiler are installed, make sure the airflow for cooling the brakes is not obstructed.**

Winter tires

The tires for your vehicle were selected for optimal performance under a variety of driving conditions.

For winter driving, the driveability of your vehicle can be improved by installing radial winter tires (M+S) with or without studs¹⁾.

The **all season tires** with which your vehicle may have been equipped at the factory are performance tires advertised by the tire manufacturer as suitable for all weather use or with special mud and snow (M+S) capability.

Winter tires, sometimes also called snow tires, are designed for maximum traction in mud and snow.

If your VOLKSWAGEN is equipped with high performance tires (identified by code letter V on the tire flank) and you drive frequently on ice or snow, you should consider the installation of all season or winter tires. Let your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer advise and assist you.

When installing winter tires, please note the following:

● Only radial ply winter tires may be installed. Ask your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer for the recommended tire size.

¹⁾ Check with your local Motor Vehicle Bureau for possible restrictions.

- Winter tires **must** be mounted on all four wheels.
- Because of the special design characteristics of radial ply M+S tires, they must be inflated 3 psi above the cold tire inflation pressures required for the regular radial ply tires. However, never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall.
- Winter tires will not do their job if the tread depth is less than 5/32 of an inch (4 mm).

 WARNING

- **Tires with badly worn treads and studs are very dangerous. Make sure they are replaced immediately.**
- **Never mix tires of different design such as steel belted radials with radial bias belted or bias ply tires, etc. Mixing tire types will adversely affect road holding and can lead to loss of vehicle control and personal injury.**

- Winter tires with studs should be run only at moderate speeds when new in order to give the studs time to settle.

Do not drive a vehicle equipped with winter tires at prolonged high speed.

Winter tires use a softer rubber compound and a deeper tread pattern and therefore have a lower speed rating and reduced traction and durability when used on dry roads.

- Winter tires must have the same load capacity as original equipment tires.

 WARNING

- **Winter tires available for your vehicle may have a maximum speed rating which is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle.**
- **Driving faster than the maximum speed for which tires are rated and approved will lead to sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and lead to an accident and personal injury.**
- **Never operate a vehicle at speeds greater than the maximum speed rating of its tires.**
- **Always observe speed limits and adjust your vehicle to prevailing road and traffic conditions.**

Snow chains



WARNING

For your own safety, pay close attention to the installation instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.

Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only.

Snow chains must only be used on tires with 195/65 R 15 or 205/55 R 16 rims.

Snow chains may not be used on the 16" spare wheel when the road wheels have a different diameter, such as the 17" wheels with the sports suspension. See page 67 for more details.

When necessary the vehicle must be equipped with smaller tires – ask your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Only use chains with fine pitch links protruding no more than $\frac{1}{2}$ inch (15 mm), including tensioner, from tire tread and side walls. Wheels must rotate freely in all steering positions with chains mounted to prevent damage to body, axle or brake components. **Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.**

Remove chains when roads are free of snow. Otherwise, the chains can damage the tires and impair vehicle handling.

Changing a wheel

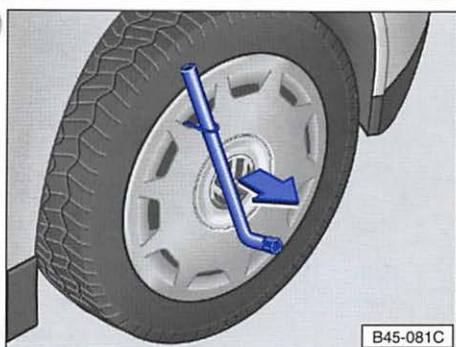
WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow safety precautions:

- If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flasher on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
- Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up. This includes children as well as adults.
- Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the roadway and traffic.
- Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
- After installing the spare tire, make sure that you remount the flat tire in its storage area properly and tighten the nut securely.

WARNING continued

- Use only the jack which came with your vehicle. It was designed specially for your model.
- Never use jack from other Volkswagen models. These jacks could slip while you are using them and could cause personal injury!
- Never leave the engine running when your vehicle is jacked up.
- To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.
When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic transmission in P (Park), or engaging a gear in a manual transmission will not prevent vehicle movement.
- After installing the spare tire, make sure that you remount the flat tire/wheel in its storage area properly and tighten the nut securely.
- If you're pulling a trailer, you'll have to unhook the trailer before you can change a tire.



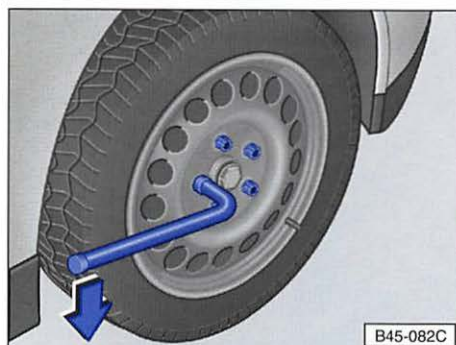
To change the wheel:

- Take the jack and tool kit and the spare tire out of the luggage compartment.

- Depending on the type of wheel on your vehicle, you will have to do one of the following to remove the cover from the wheel on the vehicle:

- Attach the hub cap puller clip onto the edge of the full wheel trim. Slide the lug wrench through the clip and pull off – see left illustration.

- Pull the center cover off using the clip.



● Mount the lug wrench over the wheel bolt all the way and turn counterclockwise – see illustration. When doing this, hold the lug wrench at the end.

If the wheel bolts do not come loose, you can push the end of the lug wrench, if necessary, using your foot. Make sure you are standing firmly on the ground and hold on to the vehicle for support. **Never support yourself on the vehicle when it has been jacked up.**

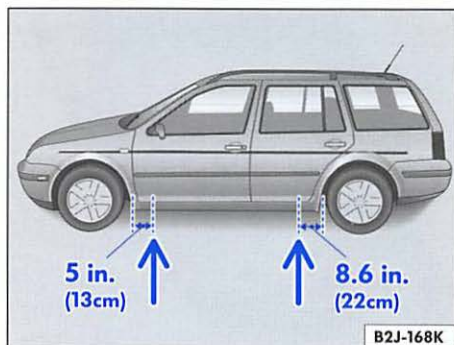
Loosen all wheel bolts about one turn.

Do not yet remove the bolts.

To remove the anti-theft bolts*, see the information on page 86.

WARNING

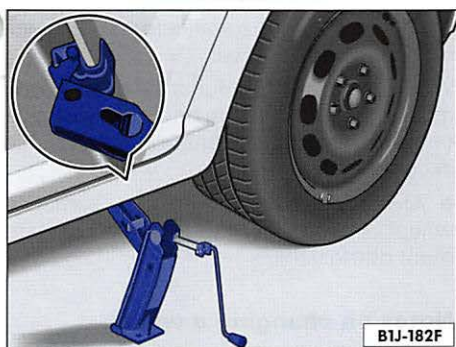
Jacking at any place other than those specified may damage the vehicle or make it fall on the jack and result in personal injury.



● **Mounting points for the vehicle jack:**

There is **one** location at the front and **one** impression at the back under the body to show you where to position the jack – see arrows in illustration. Place the jack **directly** at the impression.

The front impression is located approx. 5 inches (13 cm.) behind the front wheel cut-out. The rear impression is located approx. 8.6 inches (22 cm.) from the rear wheel cut-out.



● **Position the vehicle jack under the vehicle:**

The illustration shows the jack positioned on the left rear side.

WARNING

An unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.

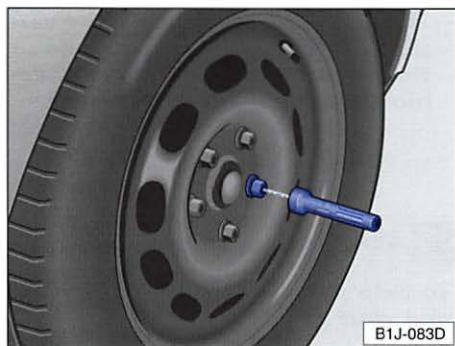
- Place the jack exactly under the positioning point on the rocker panel so that the spacer touches the rocker panel – see illustration.
- Turn the handle on the jack until the jack claw is just underneath the vehicle.

- **The jack claw must cradle the vertical rib underneath the vehicle so that it cannot slip when the vehicle is lifted – see illustration.**
- Place a sturdy board under the jack if you are parked on soft ground.

WARNING

To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers.

- **Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.**
 - **Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.**
 - **Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the roadway and traffic.**
 - **Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.**
- **To raise** the vehicle, turn the handle clockwise. Only raise the vehicle as much as is needed to change a wheel.



- Use the screwdriver handle to remove the previously loosened wheel bolts.
- Fully unscrew the wheel bolts and remove the wheel. Remove any dirt or corrosion present on mounting surface of wheel or vehicle before wheel replacement.

- Install the wheel and tighten the wheel bolts using the lug wrench.

Use the special adapter to tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt*, see the information on page 86..

The wheel bolts must be clean and easy to turn – never grease or oil them! See page 72 for more details.

- **To lower** the vehicle, turn the handle counterclockwise until the jack is fully released. Then go crosswise from one bolt to another tightening them firmly.

- On vehicles with a standard spare wheel, mount the wheel cover.

When installing the full wheel trim, you must first press the trim onto the valve cut-out, and then snap the entire circumference in completely.

- Always securely store the damaged wheel or flat tire in the luggage compartment of the vehicle.

Notes on changing a wheel.

The hexagonal opening in the screwdriver handle makes it easier to handle the wheel bolts. Remove the blade first before using.

Please read the information on pages 65 and 73 if you are going to be using the spare tire or a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

Always observe the following steps in the order given when taking off a wheel and installing a spare tire:

Never use the hexagonal opening in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

After you change a tire:

- **Check the tire air pressure immediately.**

- Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or qualified service station.
- On steel and alloy wheel rims, the correctly tightened bolts should have a torque of 87 ft. lbs (120 Nm).

If you notice while changing a tire that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

- Have the flat tire repaired as quickly as possible and remounted on your vehicle. Remount the wheel cover or protective caps for the wheel bolts.

Stowing the spare tire



WARNING

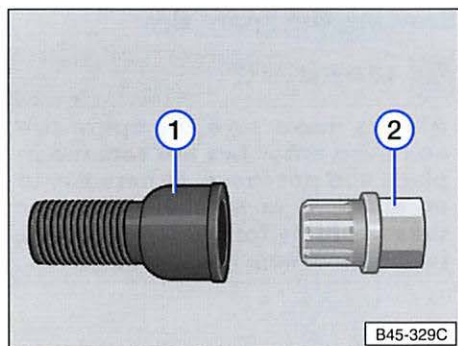
Always make sure the spare tire and even a flat tire are secured in place and not loose. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.



WARNING

- If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims that differ from those that were factory installed, be sure to read the information on page 73.
- Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are secured in place and not loose.
- In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.

Anti-theft wheel bolts*



We recommend you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolt in the vehicle – the best would be in the tool kit.

The code number for the wheel bolt safety device is stamped on the front side of the adapter.

Please write down this number and store it separately.

Replacement adapters can be obtained only from authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers using the code number.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

- 1 - Wheel bolt
- 2 - Wheel bolt adapter.

(The adapter is located in the tool kit).

Loosening or tightening a wheel bolt

Push the adapter **2** all the way over the bolt **1**.

Slide the lug wrench from the tool kit onto the adapter **2** until it stops. The wheel bolt can now be loosened or tightened.

After changing the wheel, pull the adapter off the wheel bolt.

Fuses

A problem in the electrical system may be caused by a blown fuse.

Fuses are arranged in one centralized unit. The unit is located under a cover at the end of the dashboard on the driver's side.

It is a good idea to keep a supply of spare fuses on hand. They are available from your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer.

Replacing a fuse



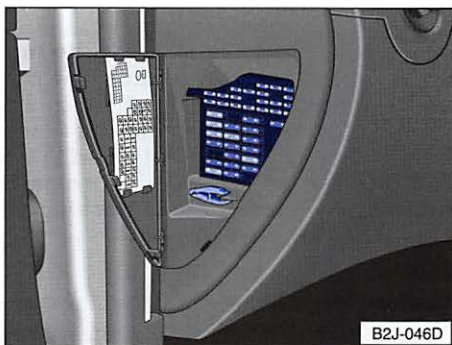
WARNING

A fuse with too high amperage could damage the electrical part and cause a fire. Do not use a fuse with a higher amperage than the fuse being replaced.

● **To avoid damaging the electrical system, turn off all lights and accessories and remove the ignition key before replacing a fuse.**

● Open the cover of the fuse box by inserting a screwdriver in the slot below the cover and pry it off.

● Check the fuse listing on the separate fuse card attached to the inside cover to find out which fuse belongs to the component that has failed.



Color codes:

light brown:	5 amps
brown:	7.5 amps
red:	10 amps
light blue:	15 amps
yellow:	20 amps
transparent (white):	25 amps
light green:	30 amps

● Remove the blown fuse with the plastic clip provided. The clip is located near the fuse box (see illustration).

● Replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the **same** amperage. You can recognize the blown fuse by the burnt metal strip.

● Close the fuse box cover.

Notes

● **If a fuse blows repeatedly, do not keep replacing it. The cause of the short circuit or overload must be found. On no account should fuses be repaired (e.g. patched up with tin foil or wire) as this may cause serious damage elsewhere in the electrical circuit or cause fire.**

Circuit breaker

The power windows are also protected by a circuit breaker. If these fuses are overloaded (for example, if the windows are frozen shut), the circuit breaker will automatically switch off and then on again after a few seconds to help prevent the fuse from being blown.

Replacing bulbs

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the vehicle must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.



WARNING

- **H7 bulbs* are pressurized and can explode when being changed. Potential risk of injury!**
- **On vehicles equipped with gas discharge bulbs* life-threatening injuries can result from improper handling of the high-voltage portions of such lamps!**

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.



WARNING

- **Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on page 40.**

Emergency starting

Starting by Pushing or Towing

- Vehicles with an automatic transmission must not be started by pushing or towing.
 - Vehicles with a manual transmission must not be started by pushing or towing.
- Damage to the catalytic converter and / or other parts of the vehicle may result.

Starting with jumper cables

WARNING

- Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.
- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A discharged battery can already freeze at temperatures just below 32°F (0°C). Before connecting a jumper cable, the frozen battery must be thawed completely, otherwise it could explode.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.

WARNING continued

- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
 - Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
 - Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
 - The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-Volt rating.
- The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different Ah rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery; allow it to first thaw out completely. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
 - Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different amp. (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.

Note

● Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as glow plugs*, control units, relays, radio, etc.

● **Vehicle with discharged battery:**

- Turn off lights,
- Only turn on the blower and the rear window defroster to draw off any voltage spikes that might occur when the battery is disconnected,
- Move lever of automatic transmission to **N (Neutral)** or **P (Park)** or move gearshift lever of manual transmission to **neutral** and
- Set parking brake all the way.

Use of jumper cables



WARNING

● To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

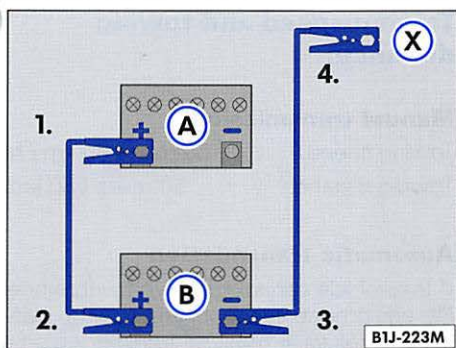
● The jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.

● When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the alternator.

Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (-) to ground on engine block (x).

For more details see next page.



A – Discharged vehicle battery

B – Booster battery

X – To ground on engine block.

⚠ Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS on pages 40 and 89.

Before you can connect the jumper cable to the battery, you have to remove the battery cover – see page 55.

- 1 - Connect clamp of plus cable to positive (+) terminal (1) of discharged vehicle battery.
- 2 - Connect clamp on opposite end of cable to positive (+) terminal (2) of booster battery.
- 3 - Connect clamp of minus cable to negative (-) terminal (3) of booster battery.

- 4 - Connect clamp on opposite end of cable (4) to a bare metal part bolted directly to the engine block or to the engine block itself (X) of vehicle with discharged battery. Connect clamp as far away from battery as possible!
- 5 - Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- 6 - Start engine with discharged vehicle battery in the usual manner. If engine fails to start, do not continue to crank but contact your nearest authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealer or qualified workshop.
- 7 - With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in exact reverse order: Steps 4 through 1.



Always heed all WARNINGS on page 40

Emergency towing with commercial tow truck

The following information must be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

General hints

- Whenever possible, tow with the front wheels off the ground.
- The vehicle may be lifted in rear and moved to position for front hook-up.
- If a vehicle with a manual transmission must be towed with the front wheels on the ground, make sure transmission oil has not leaked or been drained.

Note

Your VOLKSWAGEN **cannot** be towed with conventional sling-type equipment or non-self-loading wheel dollies.

Towing with this type of equipment will cause bumper and body panel damage.



WARNING

A towed vehicle is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a towed vehicle for any reason.

Towing speed and towing distance:

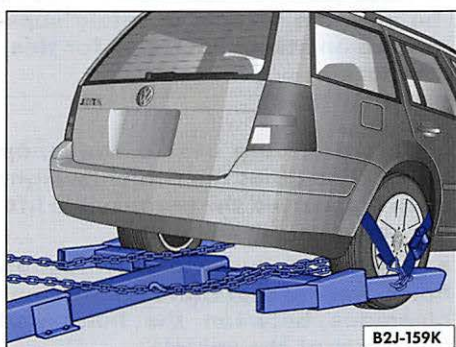
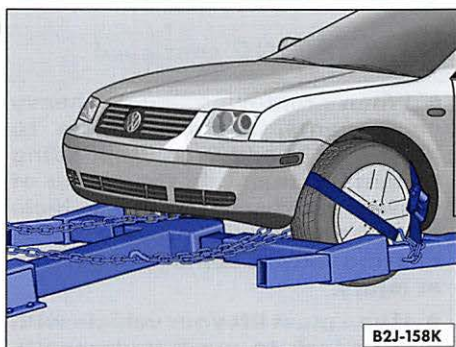
Manual transmission:

Towing speed: 50 mph (80 km / h)

Towing distance: 50 miles (80 km)

Automatic transmission

If the vehicle cannot be towed with wheel lift equipment in combination with self-loading dollies, it must be transported on a flat bed to avoid damage to the transmission caused by the lack of lubrication.



- 1 - Attach wheel lift equipment to wheels.
- 2 - Attach safety straps to wheels.
- 3 - Attach safety chains to lower control arms (**Front hook-up**).
- 3 - Attach safety chains to axle beam (**Rear hook-up**).
- 4 - Towing clearance: 6 – 12 inches
... (15 – 30 cm) between tires and ground.

Lifting vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.

The same lifting points as illustrated on the next page for the hoist also apply when a floor jack is used.

To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, it is necessary to insert a rubber pad between the floor jack and the lift points.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious personal injury and vehicle damage, lift vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated. Failure to lift vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift when, for example, heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed resulting in a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance.

WARNING continued

- When removing such heavy components, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious damage or personal injury.
- If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.
- Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.
- Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.

Note

The vehicle may only be lifted at the points are shown on next page.

**Lifting point front**

On the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill in the area of the marking for the on-board jack.

**Lifting point rear**

On the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill in the area of the marking for the on-board jack.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to "Changing a wheel" on page 80.

Reporting safety defects

Applicable to U.S. only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Volkswagen of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at:

1-800-424-9393

(or 366-0123 in Washington, D.C. area)

or write to:

NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation,
Washington, D.C. 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

Applicable to Canada only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Volkswagen Canada, Inc.

To contact Transport Canada, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at: 1-800-333-0510 (or 613-998-8616 in the Ottawa area)

or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety
2780 Sheffield Road
Ottawa ON K1B 3V9

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

Outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that

- unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
- fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
- service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
- replacement parts may not be readily available.

VOLKSWAGEN cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

VOLKSWAGEN Service Information

Volkswagen Official Factory Service Manuals are published as soon as possible after model introduction.

Service manuals are available from: Robert Bentley, Inc.

Telephone: **1 (800) 423-4595** from 8:30 AM to 5:00 PM EST, Monday thru Friday.

Internet: **www.rb.com**

To order service manuals and other VOLKSWAGEN service literature contact:

DDS Distribution Services, Ltd.

Telephone: **1 (800) 544-8021** from 8:00 AM to 8:00 PM, EST, Monday thru Friday.

Internet: **www.vw.ddsltd.com**

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

A

ABS (Anti-Lock Brakes)	8
Accessories, – What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle?	60
Adding	
– Brake fluid,	52
– Engine coolant,	50
– Engine oil	45
– Windshield washer fluid	59
Additional accessories	60
Adjusting, – Washer jets	59
Anti-Lock Brakes	
– How they work?	8
– Warning light .. see Booklet 3.1	
– What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal?	8
Anti-Lock Brakes (ABS)	8
Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)	11
Anti-theft wheel bolts	86
ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation)	11
Automatic car wash	
– Precautions when taking your vehicle to the car wash, ..	26
– Should I remove the roof antenna?	26

B

Battery	53
– Battery acid level – checking ..	55
– Charging	56
– Connecting charger cables ...	57
– Disconnecting – What you must do after you reconnect the battery!	58
– How often should I replace my auxiliary battery?	56
– How often should I replace my engine battery	56
– Important information to know before you disconnect the battery!	58
– Location	55
– Precautions	53
– Replacing	58
– Slow charging	57
– Winter operation	54
Body cavity sealing	30
Brake booster	8
Brake fluid	51
– How often should the brake fluid be changed?	52
– What is the correct brake fluid level?	51

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

- What is the correct brake fluid level?	51
- What kind of brake fluid should I use?	52
- What should I do if the brake warning light comes on?	52
Brake fluid reservoir	51
Brake system	7
Brakes	7
- How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes?	7
- Overheating, 8	
- What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal?	8
Braking	7
Break-in period	13
Break-in period, - What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? ...	13

C

Capacities	
- Fuel tank	2
- Windshield washer fluid container	59

Care of	
- exterior	26
- interior	31
Catalytic converter	18, 19
CB radios	61
Changing a tire	80
Changing a wheel	80
Changing engine oil	46
Checking	
- Battery acid level	55
- Brake fluid level	51
- Engine coolant level	49
- Engine oil level	45
- Fuses	87
- Tires / Wheels	69
- Windshield washer fluid level .	59
- Windshiled washer fluid level .	59
Checking oil level, - Engine	45
Chrome parts, Taking care of chrome parts	31
Cleaning	25
- Alloy wheels	30
- Automatic car wash	26
- Body cavity sealing, 30	
- Bright metal trim	28

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

- Dull finishes and plastics	29
- Engine compartment	34
- Glass	31
- Inside of vehicle	31
- Interior	31
- Interior chrome parts	31
- Interior fabric	31
- Interior plastic parts	32
- Leather upholstery	32
- Light alloy wheels	30
- Outside of vehicle	26
- Polishing	27
- Safety belts	33
- Steel wheels	30
- Touch-up paint	28
- Trim strips	28
- Using a power washer	27
- Washing your vehicle	25, 26
- Waxing your vehicle	28
- Weatherstrips	29
- Windows	29
- Exterior	26
- Interior leather	32

Chassis	31
Interior plastic and vinyl	32
Cleaning and protection 25	
Coolant losses	49
Coolant, - see engine coolant	48
Cooling system	48
- Expansion tank	49

D

Diesel fuel	5
- Winter operation	6
Differential lock	12
Difficult operating conditions	15
Do-it-yourself service	62
Driving economically	16
Driving in foreign countries	97
Driving outside of the U.S.A. or Canada, - Precautions	97
Driving under difficult conditions	15

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

E

EDL (Electronic differential lock) ..	12	Engine oil	
Electronic differential lock (EDL) ..	12	– Adding	45
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) ..	10	– Additives	46
Emergency		– Changing	46
– Starting	89	– Checking	45
– Towing	92	– Checking oil level	45
Emergency starting	89	– Grades	42
Emergency towing	92	– How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? ..	43
– Tips for towing	92	– What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? ...	42
Emergency triangle	62	– What kind of oil should I put in my engine	42
Emission control system	18	– When should I check the engine oil level?	44
Engine		– Where is the oil dipstick	45
– Compartment	40	Engine oil level, – When should I check the engine oil level?	45
– Cooling	48	Environment	
– Hood	39	– Brake fluid	52
– Oil	42	– Cleaning and protection	25
Engine battery	53	– Coolant	50
Engine compartment, – Precautions you should take when working inside the engine compartment ..	40	– Correct tire pressure	70
Engine compartmentre, – Precautions you should take before cleaning the engine compartment	34	– Disposing of old engine oil and other engine fluids	38
Engine coolant		– Driving at high speeds	16
– Additives	48	– Driving to minimize pollution and noise	16
– Can I add plain water to the engine coolant?	48	– Engine leaks	41
– Coolant loses, 49		– Engine oil	47
Engine hood, – How do I unlock the engine hood?	39		

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

F

- Fuel 3
- How can I drive my vehicle
and not pollute the
environment? 16
- Letting the vehicle stand
and warm up 16
- Maintenance 36
- Tire pressure 70
- Traffic jams 17
- Unleaded fuel 4
- Upshifting early 16
- Washing 26
- Washing your vehicle 26
- What should I do with an
old battery? 58
- What should I do with
drained coolant? 50
- What should I do with
used brake fluid? 52
- Cleaning the engine
compartment 34
- What should I do with old
engine oil? 47
- ESP (Electronic Stability Program) 10
- Exhaust system 18
- Expansion tank 49
- Vehicle care – Instrument panel .. 32
- Filler cap 3
- Filling
 - Brake fluid – see Adding
brake fluid 52
 - Engine coolant 49, 50
 - Engine oil 45
 - portable fuel container 3
 - Windshield washer fluid 59
- First aid kit 62
 - Checking the expiration date . 62
- Floor jack 94
- Fluid
 - Brake 51
 - Coolant 48
 - Windshield washer tank 59
- Fuel
 - Diesel 5
 - Lock fuel tank 2
 - Tank capacity 2
- Fuel consumption – How can
I save fuel? 16
- Fuel container 3
- Fuel containers, – How to fill and
transport properly 3

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Fuel economy	16
Fuel filler flap release	2
Fuel pump nozzle, – What does it mean when the fuel pump nozzle switches off by itself?	3
Fuel supply	
– What does "engine knock" mean?	4
– What kind of fuel does my vehicle take?	4
Fuel tank	2
– Filling	2
– How many gallons (litres) does my fuel tank hold?	2
– Refuelling	2
Fuses	87
– Where can I find the fuse listing?	87

G

Gas cans, – Filling correctly	3
Gas cans, – Filling correctly	3
Gasoline	
– Additives	5
– Blends	4
– Containing alcohol	4

– Does my vehicle take regular or premium?	4
– Premium	4
– Unleaded	4
– What if I purchase poor quality fuel?	5
– What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my vehicle? ..	4
– Winter tips	5
Regular	4

H

Hood release	39
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming?	43
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes?	7
How often should I check my tire pressures?	70
How to use this Manual	2
Hydroplaning	15

I

Installing a radio	61
Instrument panel, cleaning	32

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

J

Jack	83
– Where do I place the jack under my vehicle?	83
Jack and tool kit	
– Components	64
– Location and stowing	63
Jack and tools	63
Jack support positions	83
Jumper cables	89
– What is the correct way to connect jumper cables?	91

K

Plastic parts, cleaning	32
-------------------------------	----

L

Leather, – How to clean	32
Lifting	
– Floor jack	94
– Jack	80
– Workshop hoist	94
Lifting point	
– front	95
– rear	95
Lifting vehicle	94

Light bulbs	88
– Precautions when replacing ..	88
– Replacing	88
Locks, – Fuel tank	2
Lubricants	42

M

Maintenance	36
Mobile telephones	61
Modifications	60

N

Nozzle, – Fuel pump	3
---------------------------	---

O

Oil	
– Additives	46
– Change	46
– Specification	42
– What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle?	42
– What kind of oil should I put in my engine	42

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Oil dip stick	45
Oil for your engine	42
Oxtane rating	4

P

Parts replacement	60
Portable fuel container	3
Power washer	27
Premium gasoline	4
Protecting your vehicle	25

R

Radiator fan	51
Radio	61
– What should I know before I install a radio in my vehicle? ...	61
Rear window washer container ..	59
Refuelling the vehicle	2
Regular gasoline	4
Repair manuals, – Ordering on the Web	97
Replacing a fuse	87
Replacing a radio	61
Replacing batteries	
– Vehicle battery	58

Reporting safety defects	
– Canada – United States of America	96
Road salt	
– Removing from wheels	7

S

Safe driving hints	14
Safety belts	14
– Cleaning	33
Safety defects – Reporting	
– Canada – United States of America	96
Service kit	62
Snow chains, 79	
– On which wheels can I use snow chains?	79
Snow tires	77
Spare tire	65
Spare wheel	63, 65
– 16" spare wheel and 17" spare wheel	65, 66
– On which wheels can I use snow chains?	79
– Securing	65
– Vehicle with sport suspension	66
Speed range	13

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Starting with jumper cables	89
Steel wheels, – Cleaning	30
Stuck in mud or snow	68
Summer tires	74

T

Telephones – Using	61
Tire	
– Pressure	70
– Replacement	73
– Rotation	72
– Specification	74
– Wear	71
Tire designation code	74
Tire pressure	70
– Where can I find the tire pressures for my vehicle	70
Tire quality grading	75
Tires	69
Tires / Wheels	
– All season tires, factory equipped	75, 77
– Anti-theft wheel bolts	86
– Changing a wheel	80
– Changing a wheel, precautions	80
– How often should I check my tire pressures?	70

– How often should I check the condition of my tires?	69
– M+S tires	78
– New tires, breaking in	70
– Replacement	73
– Replacing, precautions	73
– Rotation	72
– Snow chains, correct use	79
– Spare tire	63
– Specifications	74
– Summer tires	74
– Tire pressures	70
– Uniform tire quality grading	75
– Vehicle jack mounting points	82
– What can contribute to tire wear?	70
– What sort of things can affect the life of my tires?	70
– Winter tires	77
Tires/Wheels	
– How often should I check my tire pressures?	70
– Replacing, precautions	74
Tools	63
Towing	92
– Distance	92
– Speed	92
– With a commercial tow truck	92

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

U

Towing a trailer	20	Undercoating	19, 31
– Bumper hitches	20	Uniform tire quality grading	75
– Driving tips	23	Unleaded fuel	4, 18
– Engine cooling	21	Unleaded gasoline	17
– Lights	22		
– Mirrors	21		
– Safety chains	21, 22		
– Trailer hitch	20		
– Trailer lights	21		
– Trailer load distribution	22		
– Trailer weights	21		

V

Towing eye	68	Valve extenders	70
– Attaching	68	Vehicle battery	55
Traffic jams, – Switching off the engine when caught in a traffic jam	17	Vehicle care	26
Trailer towing	20	– Exterior	26
– Driving instructions	22	– Interior	31
– Technical requirements	20	– Windows	29
– Tips	23	Vehicle jack	64
– Tire pressure	22	Volkswagen Service Manuals – Ordering	97
– Tongue load	22		
– Trailer brakes	21		

W

Warning triangle	62
Warranties on your vehicle	20
Warranty booklet	20
Warranty coverages	20

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

Washer jets – Adjusting	59	Winter operation	
Washer reservoir	59	– Battery	54
Waxing your vehicle		– Cooling system	48
– How often should I wax		– Diesel fuel	6
my vehicle?	28	– Snow chains	79
– Where not to use car wax	28	– Tires	77
What is the correct brake		– Vehicle care	26
fluid level?	51	– Windows	29
What kind of engine oil should		– Windshield washer system ...	59
I put in my vehicle?	42	Winter tires	77
What should I do if I want to		Workshop hoist	94
add an accessory to my vehicle? .	60		
What should I do if the brake warning			
light comes on?	52		
What should I do with an			
old battery?	58		
Wheel bolts	72		
– Removing anti-theft			
wheel bolts	86		
Wheels	69		
– valve extenders	70		
Wheels replacement	73		
Windows	29		
Windows, – Cleaning	29		
Windshield washer container	59		
– Capacity (quarts / litres)	59		
Winter driving – Battery	54		

It has always been VOLKSWAGEN's policy to continuously improve its products. VOLKSWAGEN, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of VOLKSWAGEN AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice

© VOLKSWAGEN AG



Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable). Printed in Germany



3.5 2004 Jetta Wagon
Technical Data

Please read this important information before reading your booklet.

WARNINGS



WARNINGS

concern safety and are highlighted like this throughout this manual.

Texts printed in bold type refer to possible damage to your vehicle, or to other important information.

Vehicle Equipment



Please note that items marked with an asterisk may be standard on certain models, optional on others or not available on your model.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

General Information	2
Vehicle identification	3
115 hp engine	4
180 hp engine	8
100 hp Diesel engine	10

General Information

Weights

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the left door jamb.

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which combines passenger (150 lbs / 68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight.

Luggage weight is not increased by the use of a roof rack, unless the passenger capacity is reduced accordingly.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle.



WARNING

● **The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

● **Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.**

Notes

● **The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.**

● **Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight.**

Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.

● **Always observe local regulations.**

● **Do not exceed the weight limitations of your trailer hitch.**

Roof weight

The maximum permissible roof weight is 165 lbs (75 kg).

Only use the roof rack system specifically designed, tested and approved by VOLKSWAGEN.

Distribute the load evenly and do not exceed the **Permissible Roof Weight** (including the weight of the roof rack system) or the **Gross Vehicle weight**.

For more details see "Roof racks / Roof railings," chapter "SEATS AND STORAGE".

See Booklet 3.1.

Dimensions

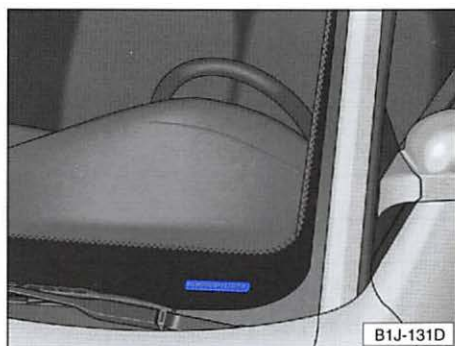
The specifications refer to the basic model. Differences may occur depending on the model type and options ordered, for example, tire sizes.

Note

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground.

Be careful not to damage them.

Vehicle identification



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

is located on the instrument panel on the driver's side so that it is visible from the outside through the windshield – see illustration above.

The safety compliance sticker

is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the left doorjamb.

It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

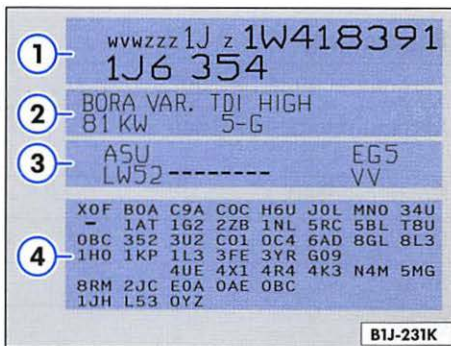
The high voltage warning label

is located on the lock carrier.

The spark ignition system meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.



Always heed all WARNINGS in chapter "Engine compartment" and chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING". See Booklet 3.4.



The vehicle identification label

is located on the left side under the carpeting on the luggage compartment floor. The label contains the following information:

- 1 - Vehicle identification no.
- 2 - Type code number / designation
Engine output in **Kilowatts**
- 3 - Engine and transmission code letter
Paint no. / Interior
- 4 - Optional equipment numbers

You can also find vehicle data in your Maintenance booklet.

115 hp engine

Engine data		
Maximum output SAE net		115 hp at 5200 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net		122 ft. lbs. at 2600 rpm (165 Nm at 2600 rpm)
No. of cylinders		4
Displacement		121.1 CID (1.984 cm ³)
Stroke		3.65 in (92.8 mm)
Bore		3.25 in (82.5 mm)
Compression ratio		10.0 : 1
Fuel ¹⁾		Premium ¹⁾ or Regular unleaded
Capacities		
Fuel tank	<i>in gal. / liters</i>	14.5 / 55
Reserve (included in total capacity)	<i>in gal. / liters</i>	1.9 / 7.0
Windshield washer container	<i>in quarts. / liters</i>	3.2 / 3.0
Engine oil ²⁾	<i>in quarts. / liters</i>	4.2 / 4.0

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights ³⁾	Automatic transmission	Manual transmission
Trailer without brakes	1000 / 454	1.320 / 600
Trailer with brakes	1000 / 454	1.500 / 680
Tongue load	165 / 75	165 / 75

1) For maximum engine performance, unleaded Premium is recommended.

Further details see "Fuel tank," chapter "FILLING YOUR TANK". See Booklet 3.4.

2) The engine oil level should be checked while topping up.

Do not overfill – see "Engine oil," chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING". See Booklet 3.4.

3) See also "Trailer towing," chapter "DRIVING AND PROTECTING OUR ENVIRONMENT".

See Booklet 3.4.

Note

The spark ignition system meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Dimensions		
Wheelbase	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	99.0 / 2515
Length	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	173.6 / 4409
Width	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	68.3 / 1.735
Height (unladen)	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	58.5 / 1.485
Ground clearance	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	5.2 / 131
Turning circle diameter (wall to wall)	<i>in ft. / m</i>	35.7 / 10.9
Weights		Automatic transmission Manual transmission
Total permissible weight	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	4189 / 1.900 4145 / 1.880
Maximum front axle load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	2072 / 940 2028 / 920
Maximum rear axle load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	2138 / 970 2138 / 970

180 hp engine

Engine data		
Maximum output SAE net		180 hp at 5500 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net		174 ft. lbs. at 3200 rpm (235 Nm at 1950 rpm)
No. of cylinders		4
Displacement		108.7 CID (1.781 cm ³)
Stroke		3.4 in (86.4 mm)
Bore		3.19 in (81.0 mm)
Compression ratio		9.5 : 1
Fuel ¹⁾		Premium ¹⁾ or Regular unleaded
Capacities		
Fuel tank	<i>in gal. / liters</i>	14.5 / 55
Reserve (included in total capacity)	<i>in gal. / liters</i>	1.9 / 7.0
Windshield washer container	<i>in quarts. / liters</i>	3.2 / 3.0
Engine oil ²⁾	<i>in quarts. / liters</i>	4.7 / 4.5

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights³⁾		Automatic transmission	Manual transmission
Trailer without brakes	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	4)	1000 / 454
Trailer with brakes	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	4)	1000 / 454
Tongue load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	4)	165 / 75

1) For maximum engine performance, unleaded Premium is recommended.

Further details see "Fuel tank," chapter "FILLING YOUR TANK". See Booklet 3.4.

2) The engine oil level should be checked while topping up.

Do not overfill – see "Engine oil," chapter "CHECKING AND FILLING". See Booklet 3.4.

3) See also "Trailer towing," chapter "DRIVING AND PROTECTING OUR ENVIRONMENT". See Booklet 3.4.

4) Information not available at time of printing.

Note

The spark ignition system meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Dimensions			
Wheelbase	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	99.0 / 2515	
Length	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	173.6 / 4409	
Width	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	68.3 / 1.735	
Height (unladen)	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	58.5 / 1.485	
Ground clearance	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	5.2 / 131	
Turning circle diameter (wall to wall)	<i>in ft. / m</i>	35.7 / 10.9	
Weights		Automatic transmission	Manual transmission
Total permissible weight	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	4321 / 1.960	4211 / 1.910
Maximum front axle load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	2205 / 1.000	2094 / 950
Maximum rear axle load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	2138 / 970	2138 / 970

100 hp Diesel engine

Engine data		
Maximum output SAE net		100 hp at 4000 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net		177 ft. lbs. at 1800 rpm (240 Nm at 1800 rpm)
No. of cylinders		4
Displacement		115 CID (1.896 cm ³)
Stroke		3.76 in (95.5 mm)
Bore		3.13 in (79.5 mm)
Compression ratio		19 : 1
Fuel		Diesel
Capacities		
Fuel tank	<i>in gal. / liters</i>	14.5 / 55
Reserve (included in total capacity)	<i>in gal. / liters</i>	1.9 / 7.0
Windshield washer container	<i>in quarts. / liters</i>	3.2 / 3.0
Engine oil ¹⁾	<i>in quarts. / liters</i>	4.8 / 4.5

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights²⁾		Automatic transmission	Manual transmission
Trailer without brakes	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	1000 / 454	1320 / 600
Trailer with brakes	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	1000 / 454	1500 / 680
Tongue load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	165 / 75	165 / 75

- 1) The engine oil level should be checked while topping up.

Do not overfill – see “Engine oil,” chapter “CHECKING AND FILLING”. **See Booklet 3.4.**

- 2) See also “Trailer towing,” chapter “DRIVING AND PROTECTING OUR ENVIRONMENT”. **See Booklet 3.4.**

Dimensions			
Wheelbase	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	99.0 / 2.515	
Length	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	173.6 / 4409	
Width	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	68.3 / 1.735	
Height (unladen)	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	58.5 / 1.485	
Ground clearance	<i>in inch. / mm</i>	5.2 / 131	
Turning circle diameter (wall to wall)	<i>in ft. / m</i>	35.7 / 10.9	
Weights		Automatic transmission	Manual transmission
Total permissible weight	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	4.267 / 1.940	4.167 / 1.890
Maximum front axle load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	2.205 / 1000	2.205 / 950
Maximum rear axle load	<i>in lbs. / kg</i>	2.095 / 950	2.095 / 950

It has always been VOLKSWAGEN's policy to continuously improve its products. VOLKSWAGEN, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of VOLKSWAGEN AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice

© VOLKSWAGEN AG

 Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable). Printed in Germany



Volkswagen models

Insert to Owner's Manual



Tether Strap Installation

Always keep this Insert with your other vehicle literature. If you still have questions about this feature or any other features on your vehicle, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Tether strap installation

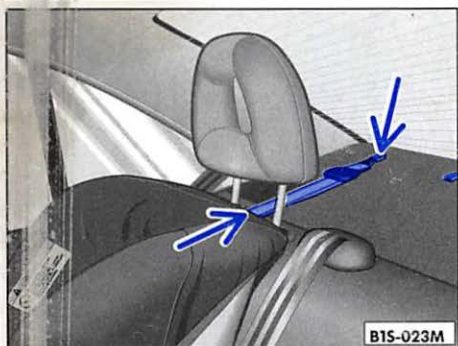


Fig. 1 The illustration above shows the the proper way to route a tether strap under the rear seat head restraint and attach it to the tether anchorage on the **(Sedan models)**

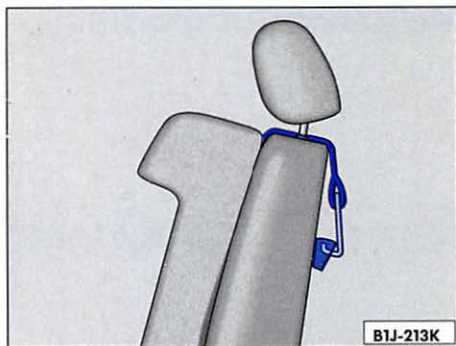


Fig. 2 The illustration above shows the the proper way to route a tether strap under the rear head restraint and attach it to the tether anchorage located on the back of the rear seat back. (**Passat Wagon, Golf, Jetta Wagon and New Beetle**)

Attaching a child restraint tether strap to the tether anchor

- Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's usage instructions.
- Guide the tether strap **under** the rear seat head restraint (raise the head restraint slightly if necessary) and attach the tether anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchor. Pull on the anchorage hook so that it is held on the tether anchor by the spring catch of the hook.
- Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

- To release the tether strap, loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the tether anchor.



WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

- **Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.**